



CMS

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

AUCKLAND 2014–2024, Volume I
Operative 17 November 2014



Department of
Conservation
Te Papa Atawhai



CMS

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT STRATEGY

AUCKLAND 2014–2024, Volume I

Operative 17 November 2014

Cover image: Trampers admire the view from Hirakimatā (Mount Hobson) on the multi-day walk, the Aotea Track, on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island). *Photo: Andris Apse*

November 2014, New Zealand Department of Conservation

ISBN 978-0-478-15027-8 (print)

ISBN 978-0-478-15029-2 (online)



This document is protected by copyright owned by the Department of Conservation on behalf of the Crown. Unless indicated otherwise for specific items or collections of content, this copyright material is licensed for re-use under the Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 New Zealand licence. In essence, you are free to copy, distribute and adapt the material, as long as you attribute it to the Department of Conservation and abide by the other licence terms.

To view a copy of this licence, visit creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/nz

This publication is produced using paper sourced from well-managed, renewable and legally logged forests.

Contents

FOREWORD	5
<hr/>	
INTRODUCTION	7
<hr/>	
Purpose of conservation management strategies	7
CMS structure	9
CMS term	9
Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools	9
Relationship with other planning processes	10
Legislative tools	11
Exemption from land use consents	11
Closure of areas and access restrictions	11
Bylaws and regulations	11
Conservation management plans	11
International obligations	12
<hr/>	
PART ONE	13
<hr/>	
1 The Department of Conservation in Auckland	13
2 Departmental vision	13
3 Vision for Auckland–2064	14
3.1 Long-term vision for Auckland–2064	14
4 Distinctive features, values and issues of Auckland	15
4.1 Biodiversity refuges surrounding a growing metropolis – Te whakaruruhau koiora rereketanga e karapotingia te taone nui a Ākarana	15
4.2 A diverse and rich marine environment under pressure – Te makurutanga o Tangaroa, Te pukukai a Te Manuhauturuki	17
4.3 Treasured islands – Ngā motu taonga	19
4.4 A land loved by many people – Tāmaki Makaurau	20
4.5 More than a gateway to New Zealand – He ko atu i te puaha o Aotearoa	21
5 Treaty of Waitangi partnerships	22
5.1 Treaty of Waitangi objectives	24
6 Auckland by 2024	26
6.1 The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored	26
6.2 Our history is protected and brought to life	32
6.3 More people participate in recreation	34
6.4 More people engage with conservation	36
6.5 Conservation gains from business partnerships	39
7 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park	41
8 Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato	44
8.1 Waikato River objectives	46

PART TWO—PLACES	47
9 Marine Reserves Place	48
9.1 Description	49
9.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Marine Reserves Place	52
10 Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) Place	55
10.1 Description	55
10.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) Place	57
11 Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island Place	60
11.1 Description	60
11.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island Place	62
12 Kermadec Islands Place	65
12.1 Description	65
12.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Kermadec Islands Place	66
13 Mokohinau Islands Place	68
13.1 Description	68
13.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Mokohinau Islands Place	69
14 Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place	71
14.1 Description	72
14.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place	76
15 Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai/Pakiri Place	80
15.1 Description	80
15.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai/Pakiri Place	84
16 Kawau Island Place	88
16.1 Description	88
16.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Kawau Island Place	90
17 Motuora Island Place	93
17.1 Description	93
17.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Motuora Island Place	93
18 Tiritiri Matangi Island Place	95
18.1 Description	95
18.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Tiritiri Matangi Island Place	97
19 Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands Place	101
19.1 Description	101
19.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands Place	104
20 Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga Place	110
20.1 Description	110
20.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga Place	111
21 Browns Island (Motukorea) Place	114
21.1 Description	114
21.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Browns Island (Motukorea) Place	115
22 Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place	116
22.1 Description	116
22.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place	119

23 Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland Place	122
23.1 Description	122
23.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Firth of Thames/ Tikapa Moana Wetland Place	125
 PART THREE	 129
<hr/>	
24 Specific policy requirements for Auckland	129
24.1 General	129
24.2 Authorisations (General)	130
24.3 Vehicles	132
24.4 Animals	139
24.5 Private accommodation and related facilities	141
24.6 Marine mammals	143
24.7 Commercial eeling	143
24.8 Sports fish and game bird hunting	144
24.9 Mining	144
24.10 Sand and shingle extraction	145
24.11 Commercial filming and photography	146
24.12 Collection of material	146
24.13 Wild animal control activities	147
24.14 Game animals (see also wild animals)	148
24.15 Fire management	149
24.16 Kauri dieback disease	149
24.17 Grazing and farming	150
24.18 Milestones—Outputs	150
 PART FOUR	 151
<hr/>	
25 Implementation, monitoring and reporting, and review	151
25.1 Introduction	151
 GLOSSARY	 152
<hr/>	
APPENDICES	169
<hr/>	
Appendix 1	171
Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that may meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents	
Appendix 2	179
Important ecosystems and habitat types within Auckland	
Appendix 3	185
Islands over 1 ha administered by the Department of Conservation in Auckland	
Appendix 4	188
Priority ecosystems in Auckland identified by the Department through the application of its natural heritage prioritising processes in September 2013	

Appendix 5	191
Threats or pests and wild animals present in Auckland	
Appendix 6	200
Threatened and at risk indigenous flora and fauna present in Auckland	
Appendix 7	205
Nationally iconic species in Auckland	
Appendix 8	206
Marine habitats and ecosystems in Auckland	
Appendix 9	212
Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Auckland	
Appendix 10	222
Recreation destinations in Auckland	
Appendix 11	224
Prescriptions for the management of visitor management zones	
Appendix 12	227
Actively conserved historic places on public conservation land or managed by the Department in Auckland	
Appendix 13	232
Te Uri O Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002	
Appendix 14	241
Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012	
Appendix 15	249
Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei Claims Settlement Act 2012	
Appendix 16	263
Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Claims Settlement Act 2013	
Appendix 17	286
Te Ture Whaimana o Te Āwa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River	
Appendix 18	288
Criteria for which the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana wetland was nominated as a Wetland of International Importance.	
Appendix 19	289
Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Deed of Settlement	
INDEX	306

Foreword

Tāmaki Makaurau

Herenga waka

Herenga Tangata

He waka eke noa

Naku te rourou nau te rourou ka ora te iwi

Whāia te iti kahurangi ki te tūohu koe me he maunga teitei.

Tāmaki of many lovers

Destination of waka

Destination of people

We share this journey

By sharing our resources (foodbaskets) all the people are sustained

Aspire to and reach for the stars and lofty heights will be achieved.

The major issues identified in this Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) are the opportunities arising from the settlement of Treaty of Waitangi claims, protection of the marine environment, partnering with others to deliver conservation, and the restoration of islands and their biosecurity protection. The increasing population and diverse demographic makeup of Tāmaki Makaurau is important to our context and our efforts to grow conservation. Broader community involvement and education are important throughout the life of this strategy.

The Tāmaki Collective settlement and the settlement of claims from individual iwi will bring significant new opportunities for conservation. Many of the places managed by the Department hold special significance for iwi. The Department will be working to support iwi achieve their aspirations in relation to these places and to implement settlements.

Auckland is unique as a conservation area for its strong marine focus and large population base. This poses both opportunities and challenges. Taking a lead in working with others to achieve increased protection for significant places in the marine environment will be a focus for the Department. Implementing outcomes from the Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan (Sea Change – Tai Timu Tai Pari) process is a priority early in the term of the CMS.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park contains many special places for Aucklanders. Supporting the efforts of iwi and the wider community to restore and protect the islands of the Gulf will be critical. Maintaining high quality biosecurity is necessary to protect the valuable progress achieved on pest free islands and in pest free sanctuaries. Preventing the spread of kauri die-back is an additional priority for both public conservation land management and private land use.

This CMS has been developed through a lengthy public process and is the result of input from many in the community. Their input, and enthusiasm and support for conservation, is acknowledged and has helped to direct the future of conservation in Tāmaki Makaurau over the next ten years and beyond.

Dr Warren Parker
Chairman, NZ Conservation Authority

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Warren Parker', with a horizontal line underneath.

Ross Aitken
Chairman, Auckland Conservation Board

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Ross Aitken'.

Markerita (Meg) Poutasi
Director, Conservation Partnerships
Department of Conservation.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Meg Poutasi'.

Chris Jenkins
Director, Conservation Services
Department of Conservation

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Chris Jenkins'.

Introduction

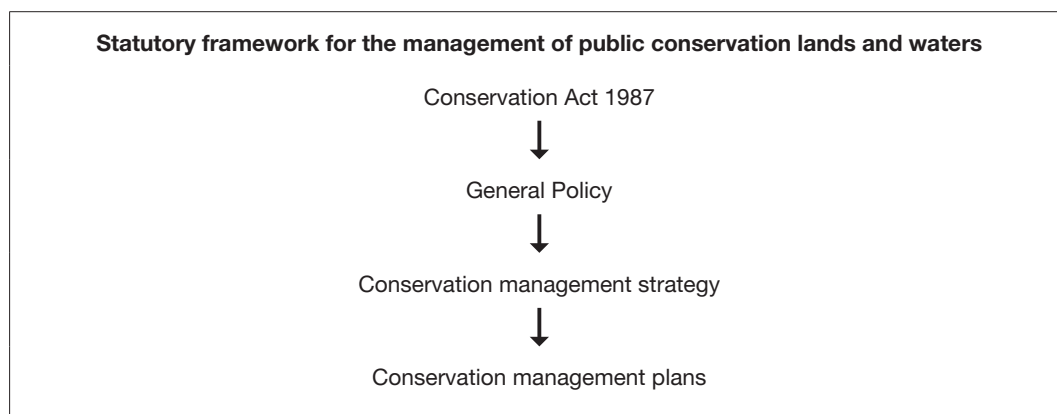
Purpose of conservation management strategies

Conservation, as defined under section 2 of the Conservation Act 1987 (the Act), is ‘the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations’.

The functions of the Department of Conservation (the Department) are, for the most part, identified in section 6 of the Act and in other Acts listed in the First Schedule of the Act.

The purpose of a conservation management strategy (CMS), as defined by section 17D of the Act, is to implement general policies (including the Conservation General Policy 2005), and to establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including species managed by the Department, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes.

The Act creates a hierarchy of documents to guide the Department in its management. The Act is at the top, the General Policy is next, and below that are the CMSs and conservation management plans. In Auckland (refer Volume II, Map 1), there are two operative conservation management plans: Leigh Reserves Complex and North Head Historic Reserve. In addition, the conservation component of the integrated river management plan for the Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato (required under Treaty settlement legislation) has dual status both as a conservation management plan and a freshwater fisheries management plan (section 17J) under the Conservation Act.



The general policies relevant to this CMS are as follows:

- Conservation General Policy 2005, which applies to all conservation lands, waters and resources managed by the Department under the following Acts: the Conservation Act 1987, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.
- Sections 7 and 8 of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000.
- The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River—the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010.

Other legislation under which the Minister of Conservation has a role or that is relevant to this CMS includes the: Electricity Act 1992; Freedom Camping Act 2011; Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014; Protected Objects Act 1975; State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986; Crown Minerals Act 1991; Walking Access Act 2008; and the Game Animal Council Act 2013.

All public conservation lands and waters must be managed in accordance with the legislation under which they are held. All operative provisions of this CMS must be interpreted and applied in line with that legislation.

The parts of this CMS which have legal effect are the objectives, outcome statements policies and glossary.

- Objectives describe the goals that we want to achieve across Auckland, and support national directions and community aspirations to achieve integrated management.
- Outcomes describe the future state of a 'Place', including its values and expected changes at that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used for conservation management and decision-making. This applies whether or not there is a specific policy for a Place.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used for conservation management and decision-making. Policies are included in Part Two and where it is necessary to constrain or enable an activity in order to achieve an outcome for a Place.
- The glossary defines terms and phrases.

All other text is provided as supportive background material.

Each CMS is prepared with public participation, according to the process set out in the Conservation Act 1987. Preparation of this CMS has involved two phases of pre-statutory consultation. The first pre-statutory consultation occurred during 2007 and 2008, and involved meetings and hui with communities throughout Auckland. Feedback on the future management of public conservation lands and waters was sought through a survey (to which 67 responses were received), four public meetings, and more than 40 targeted meetings and hui with tangata whenua and key stakeholders.

The second phase of pre-statutory consultation was held during 2011 and sought mainly to fill any gaps in the earlier phase. A survey on key issues and future management of places was promoted online, through local events and directly to over 300 stakeholders. Face-to-face meetings were held with a range of stakeholders, including local and central government agencies, recreation clubs and organisations, and conservation groups. Iwi authorities were informed on several occasions and were provided with copies of draft sections of this document for comment during its development, and some face-to-face hui were held. The Auckland Conservation Board was involved throughout, including through attendance at meetings and briefings to their own board meetings. Stakeholder groups have been given the opportunity to view and comment on drafts under development.

The draft Auckland Conservation Management Strategy was publicly notified for public submission on 5 December 2012 and hearings held in May 2013. The CMS was amended by the Department and sent to the Auckland Conservation Board for consideration. The Board reviewed responses to submissions made; then sent the revised draft to the New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA) for approval on 9 April 2014. The CMS was approved by the NZCA on 8 October 2014. Once approved the Board has an ongoing role in advising on the implementation of the CMS and providing advice to the NZCA.

CMS structure

This CMS describes the conservation values present in Auckland, and provides guidance for the Department's work in the form of a vision, objectives, outcomes for Places, policies and milestones, translating the Department's Strategic Outcomes to Auckland. The Places described in Part Two of this CMS have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management and require some specific management direction.

This CMS has two volumes:

Volume I comprises:

- A vision for Auckland, and whole region objectives and milestones (Part One)
- Outcomes, policies and milestones for Places within the region (Part Two)
- Other specific whole region policies that address legislative and general policy requirements (Part Three)
- Implementation, monitoring and reporting, and review (Part Four)
- The glossary
- Appendices

Volume II contains maps and a public conservation land inventory.

Sites not covered by a Part Two Place are of no lesser value or importance but require less detailed management direction. Conservation management will still be undertaken in these areas in line with the vision, objectives, policies, milestones and related provisions in Parts One, Three and Four of the CMS.

Further guidance for interpretation is provided at the start of Parts One, Two and Three, in Policy 24.1.1.1 and in the glossary.

CMS term

This CMS will have effect for 10 years or until formally amended or reviewed in full or in part. The term of this CMS is from 2014 to 2024 but may be extended with ministerial approval.

Relationship with other Department of Conservation strategic documents and tools

This CMS must be read in conjunction with the Conservation General Policy 2005, as this is the key statutory tool directing the content of conservation management strategies. Relevant provisions of the Conservation General Policy are not repeated in this CMS.

The Conservation General Policy 2005 provides clear direction that each CMS should integrate the management of Places to achieve national conservation outcomes and coordinate planning between Places in other CMSs. To help achieve this integration towards national conservation outcomes, the high-level outcomes of the Department's Statement of Intent 2013-17, and national priorities identified through the Department's national decision-making support tools are reflected in this CMS. These tools, including those for natural heritage and destination management, identify national priorities for the delivery of the Department's biodiversity, historic and recreation functions. National

priorities for ecosystem and recreation are identified in Volume II, Map 2 (Ecosystem priorities and Icon and Gateway destinations).

In this CMS, the term ‘priority ecosystem unit’ refers to a site where conservation work will most effectively contribute to protecting the full range of ecosystems nationally and the threatened and at risk species associated with them. These sites have been identified through the application of the Department’s natural heritage prioritisation processes. Research and increased knowledge will result in adaptations to management approaches.

Threatened species are referred to by their status according to their level of threat of extinction identified in the New Zealand Threat Classification System (2008). ‘Iconic species’ are those that the public has told the Department help define New Zealand’s identity.

References to recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters have been categorised as a suite of destinations to reflect known and potential demand, and to capture people’s outdoor leisure preferences. ‘Icon destinations’ are those that the Department has identified as inspirational and unique places that are crucial to domestic and international tourism. ‘Gateway destinations’ are places that the Department will promote as suitable for people’s first adventures in the outdoors, or repeat adventures of a gentle nature. ‘Local treasures’ are nearby destinations valued by the local community and managed to grow community connections with and use of those places. ‘Backcountry’ opportunities are more challenging recreation opportunities in the backcountry. ‘Historic icon sites’ are an important part of New Zealand’s history and identity, and will be the focus of the Department’s storytelling to bring history to life.

CMSs integrate the Department’s national priorities with local priorities that have been identified through consultation with the community. They guide the Department’s management of places, business planning and the Statement of Intent, decisions on concessions and other authorisations, and identify opportunities for collaborative efforts to achieve more conservation.

Relationship with other planning processes

CMSs are part of a wider planning framework. In preparing CMSs, the Conservation General Policy (2005) requires that regard be had to local government planning documents. In turn, local government planning processes are required to have regard to the Department’s statutory plans when preparing documents under the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). Planning for natural and historic resources cannot be undertaken in isolation from the wider regional, local government and iwi planning processes. Integration of this planning framework will ensure that plans and policies work as building blocks to deliver good conservation and environmental outcomes at a regional scale.

Under the Biosecurity Act 1993, regional councils are responsible for preparing regional pest management strategies and pathway plans to ensure that a coordinated approach to pest control is taken. The Department will work with the Auckland Council and Waikato Regional Council on the preparation of these strategies and plans.

Legislative tools

Exemption from land use consents

Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) exempts the Department from obtaining district council land use consents where activities are consistent with a CMS, conservation management plan or similar document and do not have significant adverse effects beyond the boundary of public conservation lands. Appendix 1 of this CMS lists many activities that the Department considers meet the requirements for an exemption under section 4(3)(a) and (b) of the RMA. The facilities and activities listed in Appendix 1 are listed for the sole purpose of enabling the exemption under section 4(3) of the RMA and do not represent an undertaking in terms of the provision of these facilities.

Further, while certain activities may be exempt from land use consent, this does not remove the need to comply with other regulatory requirements of the RMA and other legislation, such as the archaeological provisions of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014.

Closure of areas and access restrictions

Section 13 of the Conservation Act 1987 enables the Minister of Conservation to close areas administered under that Act for reasons of public safety or emergency. Section 13 also enables the Minister to close areas if a CMS provides for the closure for conservation purposes (see Part Three, Policy 24.1.1.7). Access to reserves may also be restricted under the conditions for use of the reserve by Gazette notice or signage.

Bylaws and regulations

Bylaws can be established for reserves under the Reserves Act 1977, and regulations can be made for conservation areas and other conservation purposes under the Conservation Act 1987. The Hauraki Gulf Maritime Park Bylaws 1984 apply to 15 reserves in the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana, and reserves on Kawau Island and Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island). New bylaws and regulations will be developed during the term of this CMS to replace these bylaws and extend the area covered.

Conservation management plans

Sections 17E and 17G of the Conservation Act 1987 provide for the preparation of conservation management plans for the purpose of implementing a CMS, and establishing detailed objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources for a place, and for recreation, tourism or other conservation purposes. The Act provides for the intention to prepare a conservation management plan to be identified in a conservation management strategy.

This does not preclude the preparation of conservation management plans that may come about as a requirement in Treaty Settlement Acts, e.g. that required by the Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012 or Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014.

International obligations

New Zealand is a signatory to many international agreements that are relevant to conservation. The Department implements these agreements in accordance with its functions and has responsibilities for a number of species under these agreements. Examples of important international agreements of most relevance within Auckland include the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity
- Convention Concerning the Protection of the World's Cultural and Natural Heritage (World Heritage Convention)
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wildlife Flora and Fauna (CITES)
- International Convention for the Regulation of Whaling
- Convention on Migratory Species
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat (Ramsar Convention)
- Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict
- Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property

Part One

1 The Department of Conservation in Auckland

This section contains a vision, objectives and milestones that apply to all public conservation lands, waters and resources in Auckland (refer Volume II, Map 1). Where there is a more specific provision in Part Two or Part Three, the more specific provision prevails.

This section, along with Part Two, guides the Department when it advocates for conservation off public conservation lands and waters.

2 Departmental vision

The Department of Conservation has a long-term vision:

New Zealand is the greatest living space on earth

Kāore he wāhi i tua atu i a Āotearoa, hei wahi noho i te ao

This vision is aspirational, a great deal bigger than conservation and a great deal bigger than the Department. It challenges the Department to connect with others to achieve it, often in ways that expand the traditional view of the Department's role and who its partners are. In doing so, it requires the Department to build empathy, trust and understanding, so that both traditional and non-traditional audiences engage in a common vision.

Conservation is an investment in New Zealand's future prosperity—with 'prosperity' defined in the broadest environmental, heritage, cultural, social and economic terms. The aim is to shift perceptions of conservation as a cost, to conservation as an investment. The Department wants to inspire and involve others to work together to achieve more conservation than it could achieve alone.

It means changing the way people perceive a healthy environment, so that they understand and value spending on nature conservation, seeing that it delivers a broad range of benefits, such as healthy soils, clean air and fresh water. The benefits nature provides are also multi-faceted and broad—they feed our social, physical, cultural and spiritual health, and our wealth. This allows people to be drawn to making *New Zealand the greatest living space on Earth* through many pathways.

Neither the ecological nor social environment of New Zealand will be the same in 100 years as they are today. The Department will adapt its management as the decades pass in response to climate and demographic changes so as to maintain relevance to New Zealanders and to demonstrate inspirational conservation leadership. Future revisions of the CMS will reflect those adaptations.

3 Vision for Auckland–2064

The 50-year Vision sets the long-term picture for the conservation of natural and historic resources of the Auckland region. It goes well beyond the 10-year life of this CMS and may change over time.

Working towards the long-term vision for the Department and the 50-year vision for Auckland, the Department aims to increase the amount of conservation work achieved over the 20-year period from 2014 to 2034 by building strong local partnerships with tangata whenua, communities, other agencies and business.

3.1 Long-term vision for Auckland—2064

At the dawn of 2064, Auckland’s 2.25 million residents wake to the chatter of kākārīki and the haunting song of the kōkako. Nationally significant and community-valued ecosystems, species and marine protected areas are no longer threatened or declining, or at risk from people’s actions. Aucklanders value and contribute to conservation outcomes that enhance and sustain the biological diversity of their natural environment, and protect their historic and cultural heritage. Having settled historical Treaty claims in the early part of the 21st century, tangata whenua of Tāmaki Makaurau are actively participating in the management of natural, historic and cultural resources on public conservation land and elsewhere, in turn enhancing the identity and well-being of Auckland. Healthy ecosystems and well-conserved historic and cultural heritage are viewed as being an inseparable part of our prosperity.

On the mainland, partnerships with tangata whenua, communities, local government and others are achieving renewed health of our ecosystems, including kauri forests, dune lands, wetlands and indented harbours, and lasting protection for indigenous and migratory birdlife and marine mammals such as Māui dolphin. Auckland’s emblematic volcanic cones are being managed as a World Heritage cultural and natural heritage site. The Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana, our lived-in ‘national park of the sea’, is alive with a mosaic of restored islands, where indigenous wildlife thrives, and our past is conserved and celebrated. The environmental benefits of the islands also spill over onto the mainland, inspiring Aucklanders to improve the connectivity and diversity of remnant natural areas, and the biodiversity found in their backyards and farmlands.

Less effort is required to control and eradicate invasive plant species on nature reserve islands. Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, the Mokohinau Islands, and the Kermadec Islands and their surrounding marine protected areas are managed as World Heritage natural heritage sites.

People value the network of marine protected areas created across the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, and recognise the contribution that it makes to the health of the Gulf and the prosperity of the region. A nationally representative range of marine ecosystems and habitats is protected on both the west and east coasts of Auckland and a contiguous marine protected area encompasses all islands within Kermadec Islands group.

Historic and cultural heritage sites are protected and provide a tangible link to the past. People understand and appreciate these sites and are committed to ensuring that they remain as a legacy to future generations.

Auckland is a sought-after destination for international visitors to New Zealand, with public conservation land and marine protected areas in and adjacent to the Gulf making a significant contribution to its attractiveness. The accessibility of Icon and Gateway destinations, such as Goat Island Bay, Motutapu, Rangitoto, Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga and Tiritiri Matangi islands, contrast with wilder places such as Great Barrier Island, enabling

people to experience and connect with the natural, historic and cultural heritage of Auckland. Tangata whenua, communities and businesses are at the heart of creating great places for people to recreate and enjoy Auckland's heritage.

4 Distinctive features, values and issues of Auckland

Ranginui heke ki nga maunga, rere ki nga awa puta atu ki a hinemoana raua ki Tangaroa.

From the sky father descending upon the mountains, flowing into the rivers that run out to the goddess of the foreshore and god of the sea.

Auckland is the largest urban area in New Zealand, with a population of around 1.4 million (2013 Census). It contains the largest population density within the country while being located within a dynamic and nationally significant landscape. A defining feature of Auckland is the many iwi who have overlapping rohe and are in the midst of settling historical Treaty claims with the Crown. Auckland is home to a quarter of New Zealand's Māori population, two-thirds of New Zealand's Asian and Pacific ethnic populations and half of its Middle Eastern, Latin American, and African ethnic group populations. Auckland's Asian population has seen significant growth since the last census, increasing from 19% of the total population in 2006 to 23% in 2013. By 2031, Auckland is expected to grow to nearly 2 million people and will be home to 38% of New Zealand's population as a result of immigration and a steady northwards drift within the country.

Key themes for managing and contributing to conservation in Auckland include:

- Working with the large, multicultural and dynamic population, which offers challenges as well as opportunities to increase support for conservation.
- Achieving positive conservation outcomes within Auckland's fragmented and depleted natural heritage, which is significantly reliant on working with tangata whenua, communities, local government and others.
- Recognising the particular cultural values of tangata whenua in regard to the conservation of the natural environment in the Auckland region.
- Raising awareness of and managing island refuges in the Gulf that contain significant natural, historic and cultural heritage.
- Providing easily accessible, well-managed visitor destinations that showcase the conservation values that are quintessentially Auckland.

4.1 Biodiversity refuges surrounding a growing metropolis – Te whakaruruhau koiora rereketanga e karapotingia te taone nui a Akarana

The links between population change, economic activity and environmental degradation are well recognised both in regional state of environment reporting and as a broader global trend. In Auckland, population growth led to the former regional, city and district councils needing to agree on a strategy for how they would manage the urban form of the city so that it did not continue to sprawl into the countryside, impacting on significant natural areas. Nonetheless, the rising cost of land outside the metropolitan limits coupled with increasing demand for countryside living has led to some rural landowners seeking to divest parts of their farms through subdivision. Increasing coastal subdivision has also been a trend that has seen a decline in water quality and increasing sedimentation of rivers and coastal waters.

Loss and fragmentation of native land cover, and introduced species are considered to be the main threats to Auckland's biodiversity. Auckland has lost a disproportionately large amount of the biodiversity from its ecosystems, with only 22% of its native cover remaining¹, and yet paradoxically it still has some large and ecologically significant ecosystems, including a number of islands in the Gulf that the Department manages. Two-thirds of the land that the Department administers in Auckland is on islands in the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park and the Kermadec Islands, with the rest being scattered among some 300 protected areas on the mainland.

With a major international port and airport, Auckland is a gateway for plant and animal pests, and other invasive pathogens. The Department carries out pest control and advocacy to protect ecosystems, habitats and species at the highest risk of loss on public conservation land. Within Auckland, islands are a particularly vulnerable ecosystem. Biosecurity measures concentrate on ensuring that plant and animal pests and diseases are not introduced to islands with high biodiversity values or dispersed through the translocation of species. A current threat to kauri forests is the fungus-like kauri dieback disease *Phytophthora* taxon *Agathis* (or PTA).

Unlike other areas, Auckland is relatively free of wild animals, having only localised feral deer, pig and goat populations, together with possums. This has in part limited the adverse effects on biodiversity and ecosystem values. The Department works with the Auckland Council and landowners to manage these animals focusing in particular on priority ecosystems and surrounding buffer areas with priority given to Gulf islands, and the Waitakere and Hunua Ranges. Auckland is home to 20% of New Zealand's threatened vertebrate fauna and 19% of its threatened plant species. These include tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern (*Sterna nereis davisae*), pāteke/brown teal (*Anas chlorotis*), tāiko/black petrel (*Procellaria parkinsoni*) and niho taniwha/chevron skink (*Oligosoma homalonotum*); and Great Barrier Island kānuka (*Kunzea sinclairii*)². Appendices 2–6 identify priority ecosystem units, threatened fauna and flora, geological features, and pressures and threats to these resources.

The Auckland mainland and islands have small river and stream catchments, and so rivers are also small with relatively low flows. The Hoteo, Mangatawhiri, Wairoa and Kaipara Rivers are the largest rivers, and it is estimated that there are 9400 km of rivers and streams in Auckland, with around 21% of Auckland's waterways located in indigenous forest³. The water and ecological quality of waterways is high where they flow through natural cover, but is incrementally reduced in pastoral and urban areas as a result of nutrient and sediment runoff. Significant barriers to fish passage such as dams, culverts and fords also exist.

Many wetlands have been drained (only 4% of their original extent remains in the region), and wetland and lake water quality is also compromised. Significant wetlands can be found on public conservation land on Great Barrier Island and the South Kaipara Peninsula, and at Te Henga (Bethells Beach). Freshwater bodies contain significant threatened species; for example, it is estimated that one-third of nationally threatened plants in the Auckland region survive in wetlands, along with a number of birds, e.g. matuku/Australasian bittern (*Botaurus poiciloptilus*) and fish, e.g. black mudfish (*Neochanna diversus*). Many native fish species also require connectivity with the sea for parts of their lifecycles.

Many of the threatened ecosystems and much of the remaining indigenous vegetation are not located on land or water managed by the Department. This clearly demonstrates that

1 Ministry for the Environment 2002: Land Cover Database II.

2 Auckland Regional Council 2010: State of the Environment Report.

3 Auckland Regional Council 2010: State of the Environment Report.

conservation effort in Auckland cannot be undertaken by the Department alone if the status of the region's biodiversity is to be improved. The protection and recovery of threatened ecosystems and species is a key challenge that will require the Department to broaden its engagement and collaboration with tangata whenua, communities, businesses, local government and other organisations.

With increasing urban intensification and coastal development, undeveloped and natural areas in Auckland will become increasingly important to the well-being of Aucklanders and visitors to the city owing to their landscape, natural biodiversity, amenity, recreation and other values. Public conservation lands and waters contribute significantly to a wider mosaic of public natural spaces and other open spaces. Auckland Council is an even more significant contributor to the provision of public natural spaces in Auckland, particularly on the mainland. The focus for the Department is to ensure that the places and resources it manages fit well in this mosaic, to complement and support initiatives by others, and to undertake advocacy that contributes to the enhancement of natural areas.

4.2 A diverse and rich marine environment under pressure – Te makurutanga o Tangaroa, Te pukukai a Te Manuhauturuki

The connection between land and sea is a defining feature of Auckland, shaping the way settlements have developed in the region and contributing to high levels of recreational boat ownership (16% of households) by international standards. Auckland has around 2000 km of coastline, which includes a great variety of landscape features such as estuaries, islands, reefs, rocky shorelines, spits and dunes. It is also home to three major harbours: Kaipara, Manukau and Waitemata.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 recognises that the natural and historic features of the Gulf are of national and international importance. It established the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park in order to integrate the management of the Gulf, its islands and catchments. The catchments of the Park encompass the most intensively developed parts of New Zealand –metropolitan Auckland and the Hauraki-Piako lowlands (the latter being within the Waikato region)—but also contains areas of significant natural and historic value, many of which are located on public conservation land. The islands of the Gulf are its centrepiece, with many being under active restoration that will increase the biodiversity of Auckland by providing refuges for threatened species. The Gulf is also rich in historic sites, with Māori settlement sites, shipwrecks, baches and coastal military defences.

The west coast of Auckland is characterised by exposed sandy beaches, and extensive dune systems and cliffs that are broken only at the narrow Manukau and Kaipara Harbour entrances. Both harbours are large and shallow with broad intertidal mudflats.

Despite a high degree of urbanisation and modification of the coastal environment in the Auckland region, a great deal of its natural character remains. Parts of Auckland's coastal environment are of national and international significance as a seasonal home to tens of thousands of migratory wading birds from the Arctic and Subarctic regions and from the South Island, as well as a permanent home to many more birds. Manukau and Kaipara Harbours and the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana are the most important roosting and feeding areas, but other harbours and estuaries also form part of a regional network of feeding and roosting sites. The longest stretch of undeveloped coastline on the east coast runs between Pakiri and Te Arai in the north-east of Auckland. This coastline is significant as one of two breeding sites of the tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern in the Auckland region. The other is Papakanui on South Kaipara Head.

The most degraded parts of Auckland's coastal environment are in sheltered coastal areas such as the inner Waitemata and Manukau Harbours, which receive sediment and contaminant runoff from urban areas. Declining water quality and ecological health in more rural areas have been noted as emerging issues⁴. For example, the high level of nutrients and sediment entering the Firth of Thames from the Waihou and Piako Rivers has been raised as a key issue for the Firth and the wider Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana⁵. Similarly, on the west coast, Kaipara Harbour has also been identified as being under stress from increased sedimentation and loss of biodiversity. These issues reinforce that the Department will need to work cooperatively with others to improve the condition of nationally and regionally significant marine and intertidal habitats and, thereby, conservation outcomes.

Auckland is home to a wide variety of marine mammal species, with 22 different species of cetacean having been sighted in the waters of the Gulf. Aihe/common dolphins (*Delphinus*) and Bryde's whales (*Balaenoptera brydei*) are likely to be resident species, while other regular visitors include terehu/bottlenose dolphins (*Tursiops truncatus*) and kera wēra/orca (*Orcinus orca*). Whale (tohorā) species, including sei (*Balaenoptera borealis*), fin (*Balaenoptera physalus*), Antarctic minke (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis*), humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*), long-finned pilot (*Globicephala melas*), Arnoux's beaked (*Berardius arnouxii*), blue (*Balaenoptera musculus*) and southern right (*Eubalaena australis*), have all been reported on a less regular basis. Kekeno/New Zealand fur seals (*Arctocephalus forsteri*) haul out along the east and west coasts, especially at Oaia Island, near Muriwai.

Particular focus is placed on the recovery of the threatened Māui dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori maui*), a subspecies of Hector's dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori hectori*). Māui dolphin, which is the world's smallest and rarest marine dolphin, is found only on the west coast of the North Island of New Zealand and has a population size of around 55 individuals over the age of one year. Hector's dolphin individuals have also been found amongst the Māui dolphin population. Entanglement in set nets poses a major threat to both subspecies, as do trawling, seabed mining, marine pollution and disease. The Department has also focused on reducing collisions between vessels and whales in the Gulf, particularly the highly threatened Bryde's whale.

There are currently six marine reserves in Auckland: Motu Manawa-Pollen Island, Long Bay-Okura, Te Matuku, Cape Rodney-Okakari Point and Tāwharanui, all located in the Gulf; plus the Kermadec Islands, the largest and most remote marine reserve in New Zealand. Cape Rodney-Okakari Point Marine Reserve faces the greatest pressure from increasing use, with over 300 000 visitors each year. It is also an important site for marine education and research. The process of creating marine reserves has often been contentious in Auckland, even though only 0.16% of Auckland's territorial sea (excluding the Kermadec Islands) is protected as marine reserves. The Department has recognised that a more inclusive and holistic approach to marine protection is required to improve the number of marine protected areas and is working with agencies such as the Hauraki Gulf Forum on new approaches.

4 Auckland Regional Council 2010: State of the Environment Report.

5 Hauraki Gulf Forum 2011: State of our Gulf, Tikapa Moana—Hauraki Gulf, State of the Environment Report.

4.3 Treasured islands – Ngā motu taonga

Islands are significant for their high natural values, as sites for ecological restoration programmes, as mammalian pest-free sanctuaries for threatened species, as sources for the translocation of species to other places, as places where restoration methods can be tested and applied elsewhere, as sites for monitoring the effects of climate change, and as places where the public can be involved and learn more about conservation.

There are hundreds of islands or island groups in Auckland, including tiny rock stacks, large forested islands, tidal sand islands, and extinct and active volcanoes. Many islands are privately owned. The Department administers 19 islands over 1 ha (see Appendix 3): Beehive (Taungamaro), Browns Island (Motukorea), Casnell, Drury Creek, Te Hāwere-a-Maki/Goat Island, Kakaraea, Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier, Manukapua, Millets, Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, Motuora, Moturekareka, Moturemu, Motutapu, Motutara, Rakitu (Arid), Rangitoto, Te Haupa (Saddle) and Tiritiri Matangi. The Department also administers two island groups—the Kermadec Islands and the Mokohinau Islands; approximately 60% of Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island); and significant areas on Kawau, Rakino and Waiheke islands.

Islands provide a dramatic backdrop to mainland landscapes, and most contain important geological features. Islands each have their own unique landscape, ranging from steep forested peaks, to dramatic volcanic cones and low-lying farmland landscapes. Many island landscapes are changing through restoration, creating a wider variety of settings for visitors to experience.

Islands in Auckland have a long history of human settlement, and contain important archaeological landscapes and cultural and historic features. Tangata whenua have a special spiritual, cultural and historical relationship with ngā motu/islands, and many islands are considered taonga. Islands were utilised for many purposes, and continue to be a source of mahinga kai/food gathering. Islands are increasingly forming part of cultural redress under Treaty of Waitangi settlements and this will lead to tangata whenua having a significantly greater role in the management of islands.

Islands also have associations with European settlement, including sites of early farming, military use and industry, and ‘ship graveyards’, places where unwanted ships were scuttled.

Much of New Zealand’s biological heritage has been saved by offshore island refuges. Islands also contain unique or distinctive species because of their geological history. Over 80% of New Zealand’s islands are continental or former land bridge islands, which have relatively recently (in geological terms) been connected to the mainland during periods of low sea level. Some of these islands contain the most complete examples of communities that were once widespread on the mainland. Other islands, such as the islands in the Kermadec group, have never been connected to the mainland, and often harbour distinctive and endemic species.

Species unique to islands in Auckland include the Mokohinau stag beetle (*Geodorcus ithagnis*), niho taniwha/chevron skink and Kermadec red-crowned kākārīki (*Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae cyanurus*). Relic plant distributions found on islands include pua o Te Rēinga/woodrose (*Dactylanthus taylorii*) and tawairauriki/black beech (*Fuscospora solandri*) on Hauturu. Islands can provide suitable habitat for the translocation of species that are threatened by predators or loss of habitat on the mainland, increasing the security of their populations.

A distinctive feature of Auckland is the many community conservation projects that are flourishing successfully on islands. Community trusts and their volunteers partner with the Department through activities such as tree planting, weed control, restoration and conservation of historic structures and sites, maintenance of facilities, and awareness

raising. Through engagement people gain an understanding of the importance of islands for conservation in New Zealand and become champions for them.

Mammalian pest-free islands are in short supply and great demand as threatened species refugia. Mammalian predators have been eradicated from the majority of the islands in Auckland: Hauturu, Te Haupa (Saddle), Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, Browns (Motukorea), Motuora, Moturemu, Motutapu, Rangitoto, Beehive (Taungamaro) and Tiritiri Matangi, and the Kermadec and Mokohinau groups. Other islands such as Great Barrier are significant in never having had some mammalian pests that are found on the mainland, such as paihamu/possums (*Trichosurus vulpecula*) and mustelids.

The maintenance of the mammalian pest-free status of islands is of great importance and is achieved through vigilant biosecurity measures, including entry restrictions to some islands, effective quarantine processes, and surveillance and monitoring to detect predators using tracking tunnels, trained dogs and observations by the public. Domestic dogs arriving on vessels are a particular management concern as they may threaten shorebirds and species such as kiwi if uncontrolled. Biosecurity measures also focus on preventing the spread of weeds and other invasive organisms from one island to another and from the mainland.

4.4 A land loved by many people – Tāmaki Makaurau

Auckland is the largest urban settlement in New Zealand and has been a population centre since the earliest human contact. As one of the areas of New Zealand most densely populated by Māori, and a focal point for European settlement from the late 1830s, it is one of the most archaeologically and historically diverse and rich regions in New Zealand. Many of these important historic sites reflect activities during the period of early settlement and resource use in New Zealand, and a large number of these are also associated with some of the country's most important people and historic events.

The Eastern Polynesian ancestors of the present-day Māori landed at sites in Auckland 800–1000 years ago. The earliest recorded sites, which date back 600–700 years, are predominantly coastal settlement sites, notably on Motutapu, Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, Tiritiri Matangi, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) and Browns Island (Motukorea). Mainland sites occupied during this period have been documented at Maioro and South Manukau Head. Raoul Island (Rangitāhua) in the Kermadec Island group appears to have been settled later, probably during the late 13th and early 14th centuries AD.

Being an isthmus, the Tāmaki-Otahuhu portage was an important link between the west and east coasts of the North Island. Māori settlers in the Tāmaki area were attracted by the wealth of marine resources and volcanic soils for gardening. Stone resources, including the Motutapu greywacke for tool manufacture and obsidian for cutting blades, were easily obtained from Great Barrier and the Mokohinau Islands. This early pattern of settlement manifests itself in the significant archaeological landscapes found in Auckland, some of which the Department is responsible for actively conserving on public conservation land.

Auckland is an important place with respect to New Zealand's nation-building, with a number of significant historic sites found on public conservation land, including relics of the copper mining industry on Kawau, and places where timber harvesting, mining and whaling occurred on Great Barrier. One of the country's early and most influential governors, Sir George Grey, resided on Kawau Island between 1862 and 1888, and his legacy is the stately Mansion House and exotic gardens where he experimented with planting. As a prelude to the New Zealand Land Wars, a string of redoubt sites were built along Great South Road to the Waikato, including St Johns Redoubt, remnants of which have survived.

Fear of a Russian invasion during the 1870s prompted the establishment of substantial coastal defences to protect the rapidly growing Auckland settlement. Forts were built at Maungauika (North Head), Fort Takapuna and other strategic locations around the periphery of the city. The outbreak of World War II led to the expansion of the coastal defence system that extended to Whangaparaoa Peninsula in the north, and included defences on many islands in the Gulf.

The main threats to historic heritage are: incomplete information and knowledge, lack of recording of the location of archaeological sites, degradation from natural processes (e.g. sea level rise, coastal erosion), inappropriate use, and inappropriate conservation techniques and insufficient maintenance of buildings or structures resulting in their deterioration. Although there are more than 10 000 recorded archaeological sites within Auckland, only around 10% of the land has been surveyed by archaeologists. On public conservation lands, 1900 archaeological sites have been documented⁶. Nearly 85% of these sites are pre-contact Māori sites and approximately 14% are associated with the historic period.

The proximity of Auckland City provides considerable opportunities for increased public engagement with significant historic sites on public conservation land, providing opportunities for the public to learn about, experience and appreciate these sites' values and settings, which in turn builds a sense of place, identity and pride. There are also a myriad of opportunities for tangata whenua and community involvement to contribute directly to conserving the values and fabric of these sites. This has the potential to improve the condition of historic features, whilst at the same time enabling the community to engage more directly with places, their values and their stories.

4.5 **More than a gateway to New Zealand – He ko atu i te puaha o Aotearoa**

For both international and domestic visitors, Auckland's harbours and Gulf islands are consistently identified among the top six things that they find special about Auckland as a destination. However, many visitors view Auckland simply as a short stop or gateway to the rest of New Zealand, and so encouraging visitors to stay longer or return to Auckland is important.

Auckland Council has developed a visitor plan to accelerate growth in the visitor economy as part of its aspiration to transform Auckland into the world's most liveable city. Complementary to this, the Department is seeking to prioritise its investment in recreation facilities and services at places where visitor use is likely to grow or where visitor demand is highest. Research suggests that participation in outdoor recreation will continue to grow in Auckland, despite certain sectors of Auckland's population not being inclined towards physical activity outside urban spaces. Access to opportunities closer to home and increased public awareness of these is also becoming ever more important⁷.

While site-based visitor surveys show that the majority of visitors to public conservation land come from within the Auckland region, they often bring friends and family who are visiting them from overseas and other parts of New Zealand. Destinations allied with tourism products, e.g. Rangitoto Island, attract a significantly greater proportion of international visitors. Easily accessible sites on the mainland and on islands close to the city are expected to experience continuing growth in visitor numbers, for which the

6 As at December 2006.

7 Visitor Solutions Ltd 2010: Informal outdoor recreation on Auckland regional open space study. Prepared for ARPASS, October 2010.

Department will need to plan facilities and services, monitor visitor satisfaction, and guard against potential adverse effects on natural, historic and cultural heritage. At the same time, the Department has been working with the Hauraki Gulf Forum and with community conservation groups, commercial operators and non-governmental organisations to raise the profile of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, and to pitch it as a destination to the tourism sector and operators.

Commercial ferry operators have a critical role in providing public access to islands in the Gulf that are managed by the Department. Over the past decade, ferry passenger numbers to the inner Gulf islands of Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga and Tiritiri Matangi have substantially increased, and they are expected to continue to do so as the conservation values of these islands are restored and recreation opportunities are improved. Active destination marketing by ferry operators is also driving growth in visitor numbers. Other islands in the Gulf that are not serviced by ferry operators or are further away from Auckland City have substantially lower visitor numbers and therefore provide a contrasting experience for visitors.

On Great Barrier, the Department identified significant market potential for a relatively easy, high-quality multi-day walk. This led to the building of a hut on Mt Heale, and forming a flagship overnight walk that takes in the sites of historic kauri dams, scenic vistas of the Gulf, wildlife and natural hot springs. The Department has a key role to play in supporting the island economy through providing recreation opportunities that underpin the tourism product provided on the island.

5 Treaty of Waitangi partnerships

The Conservation Act 1987 and all the Acts listed in its First Schedule must be so interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Conservation Act 1987: section 4). The Department also has specific responsibilities under Treaty settlement legislation.

The Department recognises the role of tangata whenua as kaitiaki and acknowledges their mana whenua, the special relationship they have with the land and its resources. Some of the most important wāhi tapu sites and places of ancestral significance in Auckland are on public conservation lands and waters. The Department is committed to recognising iwi and hapū who are at various stages of the Treaty settlement process. The Department will provide for iwi involvement in kaitiakitanga irrespective of whether they have settled their historic grievances or not.

Effective partnerships with tangata whenua also help to achieve conservation of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage. Relationships with tangata whenua vary, and take a unique form with each iwi or hapū, or with respect to individual places, species or resources. The Crown's Treaty of Waitangi settlement process is creating enhanced relationships with Māori. The special and traditional relationships of claimant groups with the natural environment are often explicitly recognised in settlements, and claimant groups are better able to participate in decision-making processes.

The next 10 years will see important changes in the relationships between tangata whenua and the Department with the settlement of many of the historical grievances with the Crown.

Settlement processes are underway with most iwi in Auckland/Tāmaki Makaurau. The Department has a contributing role in the settlement of historical claims and the ongoing results of settlements will have to be taken into account in the ongoing management and

implementation of this CMS. During the life of this CMS, it is anticipated that all iwi and hapū will have settled their historical grievances with the Crown.

The Department acknowledges that during the development of the CMS many iwi have had a primary focus on Treaty settlements and other needs. The Department also acknowledges the changing nature of the relationships with iwi and the implications of increasing numbers of, and overlaps between, Treaty settlements. This will have to be factored into the monitoring and implementation of this CMS.

Te Kawerau ā Maki initialled their Deed of Settlement on 12 December 2013. Redress includes an overlay classification/whenua rāhui and transfer of around half a dozen sites. There is no protocol separate from the Tāmaki Makaurau Collective relationship agreement.

As at the date of approval of this CMS, legislation implementing settlements with the following iwi had been enacted:

Te Uri o Hau, a hapū of Ngāti Whātua. Its rohe is the northern Kaipara District. The Te Uri o Hau Settlement Act 2002 transferred 14 areas of cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau, including part of the Okahukura and Oruawharo River Conservation Areas. In addition a 'kirihipi' (overlay classification) was put over the Manukapua Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve, acknowledging the important values it holds for Te Uri o Hau. Both the Department and Te Uri o Hau are committed to developing a strong working relationship to protect conservation values and public access (Appendix 13).

Ngāti Manuhiri. It is based at Omaha Marae near Leigh. Its rohe extends along the eastern coast of North Auckland from Bream Tail in the north to Whangaparaoa in the south, and includes Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island. Its rohe is covered by the CMS except for the section between Mangawhai and Bream Tail. The Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012 provides for the preparation of a joint conservation management plan over Hauturu, transfer of five sites, two whenua rāhui overlay classifications and statutory acknowledgements for a number of sites. A conservation protocol sets out how the Department will work with Ngāti Manuhiri in fulfilling conservation objectives across its area of interest (Appendix 14).

The Ngāti Whātua o Orakei Claims Settlement Act 2012 provided for the transfer of the Pourewa Creek site and a conservation protocol outlining how the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Orakei will work together (Appendix 15).

The Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Settlement Act, passed in 2013, provided for the return or vesting of several sites, and a relationship document known as Te Kawenata o Taiao o Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara (Appendix 16).

There are 13 iwi/hapū with historical Treaty claims in Tāmaki Makaurau whose shared interests in tūpuna maunga (volcanic cones), motu (islands) and lands are being settled through collective redress. The members of the Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau are (in alphabetical order): Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki, Ngāti Maru, Ngāti Pāoa, Ngāti Tamaoho, Ngāti Tamaterā, Ngāti Te Ata, Ngāti Whanaunga, Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei, Te Ākitai Waiohua, Te Kawerau ā Maki, Te Patukirikiri, and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Whātua.

The Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014 provides recognition of the traditional, historical, cultural and spiritual associations of the iwi/ hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau. Of particular significance in relation to public conservation lands and waters are:

- the vesting of 14 maunga, including Maungauika (North Head) (which is currently managed by the Department) in the Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Limited (the Trustee) on behalf of the 13 iwi/ hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau;

- the vesting of Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga and Tiritiri Matangi in the Trustee on behalf of the 13 iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau for a one month period, after which the Trustee will vest back the motu to the Crown;
- the permanent vesting of the summit of Rangitoto, Ngā Pona-toru-a-Peretū and two sites at Islington Bay on Rangitoto in the Trustee on behalf of the 13 iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau;
- the development of a Conservation Relationship Agreement between the Minister of Conservation, the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau to promote the conservation of natural and physical resources and historical and cultural heritage across public conservation land and waters and to give effect to Te Tiriti o Waitangi/ the Treaty of Waitangi (refer Appendix 19); and
- the development of a conservation management plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana inner motu (Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motukorea (Browns) and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga).

The Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014 does not settle all of the historical claims of the iwi/hapū of the Collective. Settlement of the specific claims of each of these iwi/hapū is progressing separately but in some cases has been completed as outlined above.

5.1 Treaty of Waitangi objectives

5.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 5.1.1.1 Maintain and strengthen relationships with tangata whenua to enhance conservation and recognise mana. These relationships should be based on mutual good faith, cooperation and respect.
- 5.1.1.2 Formalise relationships, where appropriate, through agreements with tangata whenua to enhance and support those relationships.
- 5.1.1.3 Actively consult and work with tangata whenua, ensuring consultation is early, ongoing, informed and effective.
- 5.1.1.4 Consider customary practices and the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species by tangata whenua, consistent with kaitiakitanga, the relevant legislation, regulations, general policies and the purposes for which the land concerned is held.
- 5.1.1.5 Encourage tangata whenua involvement and participation in conservation management on public conservation lands and waters.
- 5.1.1.6 Promote integrated conservation management for areas adjoining public conservation lands or waters that have been returned to tangata whenua through Treaty of Waitangi settlements.
- 5.1.1.7 Work with tangata whenua to advocate for the protection of mahinga kai, wāhi tapu and other cultural resources located outside public conservation lands, in accordance with Treaty settlement outcomes.
- 5.1.1.8 Work with tangata whenua to establish formal protocols to:
 - a) enable the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species consistent with Objective 5.1.1.4; and
 - b) guide the management of marine mammal strandings and burials.

- 5.1.1.9 Implement relevant Treaty of Waitangi settlements consistent with the Department's statutory role.
-

5.1.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 5.1.2.1 Report on the satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them to maintain their cultural relationships with taonga on public conservation lands and to implement Treaty of Waitangi settlements.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 5.1.2.2 Report on the satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them to maintain their cultural relationships with taonga on public conservation lands and to implement Treaty of Waitangi settlements.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 5.1.2.3 Report on the satisfaction of tangata whenua with the Department's activities to assist them to maintain their cultural relationships with taonga on public conservation lands and to implement Treaty of Waitangi settlements.

6 Auckland by 2024

This section outlines national and regional conservation objectives for natural heritage, history, recreation, public engagement and conservation gains from business partnerships to be delivered by management of conservation resources within Auckland over the next 10 years (refer section 4).

The national conservation objectives are linked to the outcomes in the Department's Outcome Statement and long-term Vision, as detailed in the Department's Statement of Intent 2013–2017.

Volume II, map 2 demonstrates the national ecosystem and destination priorities in Auckland, as part of the jigsaw of national priority ecosystem and recreation outcomes identified by the Department.

6.1 The diversity of our natural heritage is maintained and restored

Section 4 of this CMS outlines the key themes that have shaped Auckland into being a significant place for natural heritage, the pressures that make it vulnerable to further decline and the opportunities that need to be pursued into the future.

Key places the Department considers nationally important for natural heritage management in Auckland include:

- **Marine ecosystems:** Auckland's marine environment encompasses all of the Kermadec Islands coastal marine bioregion, and parts of the northeastern and west coast North Island bioregions (see Appendix 8).

The isolated Kermadec Islands marine environment is internationally significant as a centre of marine endemism and as one of relatively few near-pristine marine ecosystems globally; for its seabird populations and as part of the migratory corridor for the recovering South Pacific humpback whale population. This bioregion is characterised by the only self-sustaining populations of tropical coral reef species in New Zealand waters and a high biomass of predatory fishes such as sharks, jacks and groupers.

The Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana forms a substantial part of the northeastern coastal marine bioregion and is characterised by highly productive outer Gulf waters driven by seasonal upwelling along the edge of the continental shelf, and the large, sheltered estuarine ecosystems of Waitemata Harbour and Firth of Thames. The diversity of habitats and productivity of the Hauraki Gulf result in high marine and wildlife biodiversity values. Coastal and marine habitats of Auckland's west coast are characterised by the extensive estuarine environments of Manukau and Kaipara Harbours, both of which contain nationally and internationally significant bird habitats.

The ecological and biodiversity values of the northwest North Island continental shelf are poorly known but this area is the only habitat for the Māui dolphin which has a threat classification of nationally critical.

Specific components of Auckland's marine ecosystems are contained within a number of the other key places listed below.

- **Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island):** This possum- and mustelid-free island is home to an array of threatened species, including being a stronghold for pāteke/brown teal, tāiko/black petrel and niho taniwha/chevron skink. It also has significant volcanic uplands, and kauri (*Agathis australis*) forest, dune land and wetland ecosystems. The community is highly engaged in work to protect and enhance biodiversity both on and off public conservation land.

- **Nature reserve islands: Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Kermadec Islands, Mokohinau Islands:** Collectively, these islands are internationally significant as refuges for threatened species, particularly seabirds, but also threatened and at risk reptile and plant species. All these islands are regenerating naturally as a result of the removal of mammalian pests and ongoing control of invasive plants.
- **Inshore islands of the Gulf:** From Motuora to Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, these islands have actively engaged community groups undertaking restoration and nationally important species reintroductions. The Department is partnering with these groups by keeping islands free of mammalian pests, providing technical advice and supporting translocations of species.
- **Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve:** The vegetation on Rangitoto Island is internationally significant as an area of forest that is naturally colonising young basaltic lava flows. The island contains the largest area of pōhutukawa (*Metrosideros excelsa*) forest in New Zealand, as well as threatened plant species such as pinaki/New Zealand carrot (*Daucus glochidiatus*). A key focus for this island is removing invasive plants and maintaining its mammalian pest-free status.
- **West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary:** This contains a small population of Māui dolphin, which has been in serious decline and has a population of around 55 individuals over the age of one year.
- **South Kaipara Peninsula:** The dune lands and lakes provide habitat for the tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern, tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel (*Charadrius obscurus*), taranui/Caspian tern (*Sterna caspia*), ngutuparore/wrybill (*Anarhynchus frontalis*) and matuku/Australasian bittern.
- **Harbours and estuarine areas:** Lying between terrestrial and marine ecosystems and habitats, Auckland's harbour edges and estuaries are part of the intertidal zone. Harbours and estuaries provide rich feeding grounds for numerous bird species, both rare and commonplace, particularly wading birds. Kaipara and Manukau Harbours and the Firth of Thames are of national and international significance for migratory and indigenous birds.
- **Marine reserves:** Refer to Part Two, sections 9 and 10.
- **Waitakere Ranges Heritage Area:** Auckland Council manages most of the Waitakere Ranges, including areas of kauri forest that have never been logged. The ranges are a hotspot for nationally important fungi and threatened plants.
- **Hunua Ranges:** Auckland Council manages a large area of the Hunua Ranges, with public conservation land located to the north and south. The ranges contain naturally uncommon kauri, podocarp and tawhairaunui/hard beech (*Fuscopora truncata*) forest (at its northern limit). It is a stronghold for pepeketua/Hochstetter's frog (*Leiopelma hochstetteri*) and North Island kōkako (*Callaeas cinerea wilsoni*).
- **Auckland Volcanic Field:** The Field, which contains a full range of vents and explosion craters, is a significant landscape, geological and cultural feature of Auckland. The resources afforded by the cones supported a long period of Māori settlement, use and occupation. Many cones in the Auckland region have been modified in recent times; however many have survived due to their iconic status and their protection as public reserves and remain a defining feature of the Auckland region. Collective Treaty settlement processes provide for the iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau to have a significantly greater role in their governance/management (refer to section 5 and Part Two).

Within these places, the Department has an important role in implementing the international Convention on Biological Diversity and the New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy (2000). The international Convention aims to help stem the loss of biodiversity worldwide and the purpose of the Strategy is to establish a strategic framework for action, to conserve and sustainably use and manage New Zealand's biodiversity.

Four of the places above have been included on New Zealand's tentative list for World Heritage Area status: the Kermadec Islands and Marine Reserve; the Mokohinau Islands, and Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, as part of the Whakarua Moutere (or North East Islands) site; and the Auckland Volcanic Field.

A number of these places also form part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer to Section 7).

Through community consultation, the Department has also identified other places that are regionally and locally important for restoring and protecting natural heritage.

In the north, Te Arai beach is one of the least developed parts of Auckland's east coast and is home to tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern. Bordering Kaipara Harbour, Atuanui/Mt Auckland is the largest single area of protected forest in the north, while Okahukura Peninsula has a variety of habitats that are highly representative of this harbour.

On the east coast, Tawharanui and Shakespear Regional Parks, which are managed by Auckland Council, have become predator-free mainland refuges that contain reintroduced threatened species. Mahurangi Peninsula has been identified as a place where increasing efforts to remove animal pests would greatly benefit inshore islands managed by the Department that are predator-free but close to the mainland.

In the southwest of Auckland, Awhitu Peninsula contains an outstanding natural and cultural landscape, with the community leading restoration work, and the control of animal and plant pests. The marine environment on the west coast and within the Gulf has also been identified as needing greater protection.

A number of the nationally, regionally and locally important places above extend across administrative boundaries of the Department and other agencies. A coordinated and multi-agency approach to the management of the natural resources in these places is important in order to achieve integrated conservation management.

The Important Bird Area (IBA)⁸ programme uses a set of standard criteria for identifying sites based on the IUCN (International Union for Conservation of Nature) threat rankings of birds and a set of population parameters (numbers of birds present based on their threat status). The IBA sites are used to encourage protection of sites of importance to wildlife. A process is underway to list IBA sites in New Zealand. Sites in Auckland include: Kermadec Islands, Mokohinau Islands, Mangawhai, Motuora, Pakiri Beach, Hauturu, North Auckland seabird flyway, Kaipara Harbour, Kotuku Peninsula, Mahiku Island, Horuhoru Rock, Muriwai, Manukau Harbour, and the Firth of Thames.

A current threat to kauri forests is kauri dieback disease or PTA, a soil-borne fungus-like organism that kills kauri trees. It poses a significant risk to the health and functioning of kauri forest ecosystems, and can be spread by human activity as well as by animals. At the time of writing this CMS, PTA had been confirmed at several sites managed by the Department on Great Barrier and in the former Rodney District. Important areas for kauri dieback prevention in Auckland are Te Hauturu-o-Toi/ Little Barrier Island and Mataitai Forest, Kohukohunui and Mangatawhiri-Vinings in the Hunua Ranges. Since 2008 when PTA was declared an unwanted organism, the Department has been working with Auckland Council, Waikato Regional Council, the Ministry for Primary Industries, iwi and others on

8 IBA is an initiative of Birdlife International, a partnership of Non-governmental Organisations.

a Kauri Dieback Joint Agency Response (KDJAR). The KDJAR has formulated a number of measures (refer Part Three) as part of a long-term management programme which the Department will implement.

6.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 6.1.1.1 Contribute to building a national network of representative ecosystems conserved to a healthy functioning state, focusing on priority ecosystem units listed in Appendix 4, and support the work of others to protect and restore the ecosystems identified in Appendix 2.
- 6.1.1.2 Contribute to efforts to ensure the persistence⁹ of nationally threatened species as listed in Appendix 6.
- 6.1.1.3 Contribute to efforts to maintain or restore the nationally iconic species listed in Appendix 7 that occur locally.
- 6.1.1.4 Build partnerships with others, including Auckland Council and tangata whenua, to maintain or restore locally treasured natural heritage.
- 6.1.1.5 Promote the protection of marine and coastal habitats, particularly marine mammal and seabird habitats, and work with the community, including tangata whenua, regional agencies, landowners and business to minimise or remove threats to these habitats.
- 6.1.1.6 Engage in and support collaborative processes with the Ministry for Primary Industries, Hauraki Gulf Forum, Auckland Council, local communities and others to build a nationally representative network of marine reserves and marine protected areas, taking into account the marine ecosystems listed in Appendix 8.
- 6.1.1.7 Focus on integrated conservation management to improve the quality and functioning of the representative range of priority ecosystem units.
- 6.1.1.8 Avoid or mitigate biosecurity threats to islands managed by the Department in Auckland.
- 6.1.1.9 Advocate for and work with the Auckland Council, Waikato councils and the community (including landowners), to protect natural heritage off public conservation lands and waters within Auckland at risk of permanent degradation, such as priority ecosystems for conservation, threatened and at risk species and significant geological features, landforms and landscapes selected from Appendix 9.
- 6.1.1.10 Foster and develop positive and cooperative working relationships with tangata whenua and the community to achieve greater natural heritage outcomes on islands.
- 6.1.1.11 Work with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local government, tangata whenua, fishers, shipping companies and others to implement the Māui Dolphin Threat Management Plan and manage threats to other marine mammals, particularly, Hector's dolphin and Bryde's whale, to ensure their recovery and protection.
- 6.1.1.12 Maintain the mammalian pest-free status of islands where this exists, and explore and encourage the creation of more mammalian pest-free islands, including those that are inhabited, to allow people to experience living in a thriving indigenous ecosystem.

⁹ 'Persistence' is achieved when there is a 95% probability of a species surviving over the next 50 years or three generations (whichever is longer).

- 6.1.1.13 Work with Auckland Council and others to undertake strategic and integrated catchment management around harbours and estuaries; seek further protection of harbours and estuaries; restore intertidal ecosystems and habitats, and protect threatened and at risk indigenous and migratory species.
- 6.1.1.14 Build partnerships to reduce the impact of habitat fragmentation, develop ecological corridors and protect migratory flyways for indigenous wildlife.
- 6.1.1.15 Advocate for integrated management between those agencies that have a statutory role in the management of land, water and resources within the area covered by this CMS including the Kaipara and Manukau Harbours and their catchments.
- 6.1.1.16 Progress the nomination of the Kermadec Islands and Marine Reserve, Whakarua Moutere (North East Island) and Auckland Volcanic Field for World Heritage Area status, through working with tangata whenua, communities, local government and others.
- 6.1.1.17 Progress the re-classification of public conservation land identified in Part Two where required to more effectively manage its values.
- 6.1.1.18 Seek to include foreshore areas as public conservation land where natural, historic, cultural or recreational values are adversely affected by activities occurring on the foreshore—primarily those areas identified in Part Two.
- 6.1.1.19 Collaborate with agencies and communities to prevent the establishment of the plant, animal and invertebrate pests listed in Appendix 5 in Auckland.
- 6.1.1.20 Prevent wild animals establishing in areas where they have been historically absent.
- 6.1.1.21 Contain or control plant and animal pests and wild animals including those identified in Appendix 5 through a targeted strategic and sustainable multi-threat management approach.
- 6.1.1.22 Recognise that the Hunua Ranges are geographically a single entity despite being divided by Department of Conservation and local government jurisdictions, and liaise closely with the Auckland Council, Waikato councils, tangata whenua and others to achieve integrated and compatible decision making about the protection, enhancement and recreational use of them.
- 6.1.1.23 Work with the Auckland Council, Waikato Regional Council and the Ministry for Primary Industries to manage the spread and effects of kauri dieback disease and increase community understanding of the disease and recommended measures for disease prevention.
- 6.1.1.24 Work with landowners, Auckland Council and Waikato councils, and advocate for:
 - a) the protection of freshwater fish habitat and fish passage,
 - b) the preservation of threatened and at risk indigenous species and
 - c) the maintenance of habitat connectivity and water quality from the headwaters of waterways to the coast.
- 6.1.1.25 Contribute to multi-agency management of freshwater ecosystems and habitats including catchment and river management programmes, wetland accords and associated programmes, and conservation accords with tangata whenua.
- 6.1.1.26 Contribute to the protection of the quality of ecosystem services, and support research into ecosystem services provided by public conservation land and waters to better understand and quantify these services and convey this information to the public.

6.1.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 6.1.2.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for priority ecosystem units identified in the milestones in Part Two and at the following sites: Kohukohunui (Hunuas), Lake Wainamu, the Cascades (Waitakere Ranges) and the Noises Islands. Part Two milestones include those ecosystem units which are being worked on at the time the CMS is approved.
- 6.1.2.2 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened and at risk species outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway: Bryde's whale, copper beard orchid (*Calochilus* aff. *Herbaceus*), Māui dolphin, kōwhai ngutu-kākā/kakabeak (*Clianthus puniceus*), piritā/green mistletoe (*Ileostylus micranthus*), *Leptinella rotundata*, native musk, Maori musk (*Mimulus repens*), *Parahebe jovellanooides*, kōhihi/fireweed (*Senecio scaberulus*), and tuturuatu/shore plover (*Thinornis novaeseelandiae*).
- 6.1.2.3 The Research Advisory Group for Māui dolphin established.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 6.1.2.4 Report on the number of additional priority ecosystem units that have work programmes implemented.
- 6.1.2.5 Scheduled outputs for nationally threatened and at risk species outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway.
- 6.1.2.6 Collaborative restoration opportunities for ecosystems and threatened and at risk species identified in conjunction with tangata whenua, the community and others.
- 6.1.2.7 Report on progress towards increases in the number and extent of marine protected areas.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 6.1.2.8 Report on the number of additional priority ecosystem units that have work programmes implemented.
- 6.1.2.9 Report on the number of nationally threatened and at risk species outside priority ecosystem units for which a work programme is underway.
- 6.1.2.10 Report on the outcomes of collaborative restoration projects.
- 6.1.2.11 Report on progress towards increases in the number and extent of marine protected areas.
- 6.1.2.12 Māui dolphin population stable or increasing.

6.2 Our history is protected and brought to life

In Auckland, the Department has identified 52 significant historic and cultural places for active conservation management (see Appendix 12). Forty of these sites are located within Places. Active conservation management means that the Department will undertake a planned programme of work that takes into account threats, condition, technical feasibility, future-use and resource levels. In developing these programmes, the Department will work with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga which has a statutory role in identifying, protecting, preserving and conserving the historic and cultural heritage of New Zealand, as appropriate.

Places where the Department will focus effort to ensure that history is protected and brought to life are:

- **Motutapu and Rangitoto islands:** These islands offer a range of themes including the significant cultural landscape of Motutapu, baches and other historic buildings on Rangitoto, and the coastal defences of both islands.
- **Kawau Island:** Significant historic landscape associated with early copper mining and Sir George Grey.
- **Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place:** This is located on mainland and island reserves, including Maungauika/North Head, Fort Takapuna and Stony Batter.
- **Tiritiri Matangi Island:** The lighthouse complex is one of the most complete in New Zealand, and the island's archaeological landscape is evidence of early Māori settlement.
- **Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island):** The island has a unique assemblage of historic and cultural sites spanning 700 years of continuous settlement including sites of significance to tangata whenua, and timber harvesting, whaling and mining sites.
- **Browns Island (Motukorea):** The island has an outstanding, near-intact cultural landscape.

The Auckland Volcanic Field, which includes three of these Places, has been included on New Zealand's Tentative List for World Heritage status—for both cultural and natural heritage values.

In other areas the Department will support community and other groups on local initiatives.

The Department will work cooperatively with iwi and Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga to protect and, if appropriate, interpret sites of significance to tangata whenua, especially where Treaty settlements have identified specific obligations for the Department. In addition, the history of sites that are more difficult to reach, such as Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island and the Kermadec Islands, will be brought to life in other ways; such as through publications.

6.2.1 OBJECTIVES

- 6.2.1.1 Identify and understand the location, value, significance and condition of historic places on public conservation land, and ensure that records of the location, value, significance and condition of these places are up to date.
- 6.2.1.2 Profile the historic icon sites, and selected actively conserved historic places listed in Appendix 12, through quality interpretation on- and off-site, to enable visitors to identify with historic sites and their stories.

- 6.2.1.3 Prioritise, conserve and protect the actively conserved places listed in Appendix 12 on the basis of their historical, cultural and physical significance, their value to tangata whenua and the wider community, and their conservation need.
 - 6.2.1.4 Understand the expectations of tangata whenua, communities and others regarding the conservation and management of historic places on public conservation land.
 - 6.2.1.5 Build relationships with tangata whenua, communities and business to increase understanding, skill and active support for historic places.
 - 6.2.1.6 Undertake conservation work (repair and maintenance) at actively conserved historic places (Appendix 12) having regard to conservation plans, national and international best practice and the ICOMOS NZ Charter.
 - 6.2.1.7 Encourage collaborative efforts between tangata whenua, communities and others to protect, restore and interpret historic and cultural heritage sites.
 - 6.2.1.8 Work with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, community heritage interest groups and others to protect historic and cultural heritage sites on public conservation lands and waters, and utilise expertise to provide an integrated and enhanced visitor experience.
 - 6.2.1.9 Support the Ministry for Culture and Heritage to develop the nomination of Auckland Volcanic Field sites for World Heritage Area status.
-

6.2.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 6.2.2.1 Heritage assessments completed and published for all actively managed historic places listed in Appendix 12.
- 6.2.2.2 Report on the condition of the actively managed historic places listed in Appendix 12.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 6.2.2.3 Report on the condition of actively managed places listed in Appendix 12.
- 6.2.2.4 Report on progress for those sites where connecting people with the historic and cultural heritage is being actively interpreted and promoted.
- 6.2.2.5 Collaborative historic and cultural heritage restoration opportunities identified on public conservation lands and waters in conjunction with tangata whenua, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, the community and others.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 6.2.2.6 Report on the condition of actively managed places listed in Appendix 12.
- 6.2.2.7 Report on progress for those sites where connecting people with the historic and cultural heritage is being actively interpreted and promoted. Report on the outcomes of collaborative historic and cultural heritage restoration projects.

6.3 More people participate in recreation

The focus for Auckland will be integrating the management of places so that they provide high-quality experiences that meet the expectations of visitors, particularly at Icon and Gateway destinations. This means that as well as protecting and restoring the natural and historic values of sites, the Department will ensure that visitor facilities, on-site interpretation and concessionaire activities provide a quality experience that meets visitor expectations. However, it also recognised that not all recreation and tourism activities are appropriate in all locations and that the range of opportunities provided in a location must be consistent with the values of the location and purpose for which the land is held.

Auckland Council manages 26 regional parks that complement the Department's recreation opportunities. In recognition of this, the Department's focus will be on managing recreation opportunities on the Gulf islands, where it will offer a spectrum of recreational experiences.

The Department will also work collaboratively with Auckland Council to:

- position and promote the Gulf as a world-class destination
- facilitate and support the sustainable development of harbour and Gulf visitor opportunities and experiences
- advocate for the enhancement of transport services to island destinations and work with Auckland Transport and the private sector to achieve this
- identify opportunities to develop joint initiatives to enhance visitor experience and manage the effects of visitor use where public conservation lands and waters either adjoin or are in close proximity to council-managed parks and reserves with a view to moderating and smoothing visitor pressures on destinations and ecosystems.

The following places will be managed to ensure that visitors have a high-quality experience that supports the growth of international and domestic tourism in Auckland and New Zealand generally.

Icon destinations:

- Cape Rodney-Okakari Point Marine Reserve
- North Head Historic Reserve
- Rangitoto summit track and short walks near the Rangitoto Wharf
- Tiritiri Matangi Island

It is anticipated that once the Department reaches particular milestones for the Kawau Island Place, this reserve will become a Historic Icon site.

Key places where the Department will encourage more people to participate in recreation include:

Gateway destinations:

- Aotea Track, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
- Kawau Island Historic Reserve
- Other places on Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve (e.g. Islington Bay)
- Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve

It is expected that further gateway destinations will be developed over the term of the CMS, including Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga and Te Henga Walkway (which forms part of the Hillary Trail).

Increased participation in recreation will also be pursued at other destinations where the Department can partner with others, or at places that experience moderately high visitor numbers and can expect continuing demand. Existing examples of these include Motuora,

Fort Takapuna and Stony Batter Historic Reserves, the Te Araroa Trail (various locations on the Auckland mainland), Te Henga Walkway/Goldie Bush Walkway combination, and campsites on Great Barrier.

6.3.1 OBJECTIVES

- 6.3.1.1 Understand demand for recreation and provide recreation opportunities where demand is evident and expected to be sustained, and is consistent with the protection of indigenous natural resources and historic and cultural heritage, and the purpose for which the land concerned is held.
 - 6.3.1.2 Contribute to a national network of visitor opportunities by promoting the Icon and Gateway destinations listed in Appendix 10 as strategic attractions within the network of opportunities offered on public conservation land in Auckland.
 - 6.3.1.3 Build partnerships with others to plan for, maintain and/or better develop, locally treasured and backcountry recreation destinations.
 - 6.3.1.4 Provide visitors with the opportunity for a positive social, physical and learning experience on public conservation lands.
 - 6.3.1.5 Avoid, minimise or otherwise manage conflicts between users, including people undertaking different types of activities in the same location, in particular by:
 - a) providing guidance on appropriate shared-use etiquette;
 - b) using one-way direction of travel or specified single-use tracks;
 - c) placing seasonal restrictions on some activities.
 - 6.3.1.6 Enhance visitors' understanding and appreciation of natural, historic and cultural heritage, particularly at Icon and Gateway destinations.
 - 6.3.1.7 Work with Auckland Council, tangata whenua and others to position Auckland as a world-class visitor destination.
 - 6.3.1.8 Provide improved opportunities for disabled visitors to access and appreciate natural, historic and cultural values on public conservation land.
 - 6.3.1.9 Work with ferry and other transport operators, Auckland Council, Auckland Transport and other agencies to enhance transport services to the Gulf islands.
 - 6.3.1.10 Work with Auckland Council, Walking Access Commission, Te Araroa Trust, landowners and others to progressively enhance linkages between public conservation lands and other public open space.
 - 6.3.1.11 Monitor the quality of visitor experiences and the effects of visitor activity on natural resources, historic and cultural resources and other values.
-

6.3.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 6.3.2.1 Report on visitor satisfaction with visits to Icon and Gateway destinations.
- 6.3.2.2 Assessment of Icon and Gateway destinations by an accreditation scheme for excellence in the management of public space completed and achieved.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 6.3.2.3 Report on visitor satisfaction with visits to Icon and Gateway destinations.
- 6.3.2.4 Assessment of the success of Icon and Gateway destinations in increasing the number of people recreating on public conservation land.
- 6.3.2.5 Accreditation achieved by 2017 maintained.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 6.3.2.6 Report on visitor satisfaction with visits to Icon and Gateway destinations.
- 6.3.2.7 Assessment of the success of Icon and Gateway destinations in increasing the number of people recreating on public conservation land.
- 6.3.2.8 Accreditation achieved by 2017 maintained.
- 6.3.2.9 Assessment of the success of Icon and Gateway destinations in increasing the number of people recreating on public conservation land.

6.4 More people engage with conservation

The Department has an important role in facilitating partnerships and supporting others to engage in conservation. There are already a large and increasing number of active community conservation groups involved in conservation and recreation activities both on and off public conservation lands and waters. In Auckland, a particular feature is the number of established community and landowner groups that are actively involved in restoration work on many of the islands in the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, as well as on the mainland. Twenty-one percent of Auckland residents surveyed in 2011 reported that they had actively contributed to conservation in the last 12 months¹⁰.

Many other agencies also focus on supporting and encouraging tangata whenua and community involvement in and awareness of sustainability and conservation issues. There are huge opportunities to develop new partnerships or grow existing ones, particularly with Auckland Council and other agencies in areas where cooperative relationships are most needed to enhance conservation and contribute positively to sustainable development.

In general terms, as a population ages, an increasing proportion have the time and motivation to actively engage in conservation. In addition there is a global trend of growing interest in the environment by young people and business. However, despite this, increasing urbanisation appears to be resulting in many New Zealanders becoming disconnected from the natural world, particularly young people and new immigrants.

Finding new and innovative ways to counteract this trend and engage Auckland's large urban population and diverse communities in conservation will be an ongoing challenge. A good example of how the Department may do this is to build on proven partnerships and existing programmes to develop a deep understanding of environmental issues and foster leadership skills in young people. In addition, the Department will continually look for new and innovative opportunities to create new partnerships with iwi, business, local authorities and communities, to bring about successful conservation outcomes.

The fast pace of growth in the region presents additional challenges, such as pressure from development, habitat fragmentation, and increasing impacts and demands on the region's natural resources. However, Auckland is also in a unique position in that it represents an

¹⁰ Department of Conservation 2011: National Survey Report No. 5 Conservancy Comparison of Attitudes to Conservation.

unparalleled opportunity to engage the majority of New Zealanders in conservation and showcase New Zealand as an international tourist hot spot.

The size of the conservation task will not diminish over time and so, in order to increase the resources available for conservation, the Department must capture and progress the rising public interest in conservation and willingness to do conservation work.

Around 86% of New Zealanders surveyed value conservation and recognise its contribution to their prosperity and well-being. However, despite this, the majority still need encouragement to take advantage of the many recreation opportunities available to them on public conservation lands and waters. For conservation to flourish in Auckland, its wider relevance and the contribution it makes to the region's social, cultural, economic and environmental well-being must be demonstrated. To do this, the Department needs to understand the different and rapidly changing needs and values of tangata whenua and the community, communicate effectively, and be creative and targeted in its public awareness and education.

In addition, as individuals, we must understand and embrace the notion that conservation is not carried out by the Department alone. Developing collaborative partnerships with iwi, business, local authorities and communities is essential if we are to halt the loss of biodiversity and support prosperity through industries such as tourism and agriculture, which rely on natural resources and ecosystems.

In the Auckland region, emphasis will be placed on four priority programmes: the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, biosecurity, biodiversity, and marine conservation. These will not only provide significant conservation gains, but will also connect people to special places, and provide opportunities for people to see the value of, and benefit from, conservation.

In key areas, the Department will seek to develop and encourage communities to initiate and lead conservation programmes.

The Department works with a wide range of other statutory agencies to achieve common objectives and mutually agreed priorities. Examples are:

- Auckland Council and council-controlled organisations on a wide range of issues including the protection and restoration of indigenous biodiversity and historic heritage, plant and animal pest management, transport, tourism, and coastal and marine planning
- NZ Transport Agency on transport services and funding
- Walking Access Commission on facilitating public access across private land
- Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga on historic and cultural heritage
- Auckland/Waikato and Northland Fish and Game Councils on sports fish and game bird-related issues
- New Zealand Police and Search and Rescue, and
- Game Animal Council on improving hunting opportunities.

6.4.1 OBJECTIVES

- 6.4.1.1 Focus relationship building on those areas where cooperative relationships are most needed to support priority conservation outcomes, particularly those that:
- a) enhance the special natural, historic and cultural values of Auckland and the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park;
 - b) develop support for, and appreciation of, marine and wetland protection;
 - c) develop support for, and appreciation of, the need for biosecurity;

- d) create ecological corridors to reduce the impact of fragmentation on biodiversity;
 - e) enhance the well-being of tangata whenua and communities;
 - f) contribute positively to the future of Auckland; and
 - g) support work, programmes and partnerships that target sectors of the community that are not currently engaged in conservation.
- 6.4.1.2 Formalise agreements and relationships with tangata whenua, local government, other organisations and the community, and endeavour to maintain, strengthen and support those relationships.
- 6.4.1.3 Support collaboration between, and coordination of, community conservation projects.
- 6.4.1.4 Develop, maintain and coordinate education strategies, programmes and education resources designed to:
- a) incorporate conservation issues more broadly within the national curriculum;
 - b) increase awareness, understanding and empathy for the natural environment; and
 - c) increase conservation knowledge, values, skills and leadership abilities in young people.
- 6.4.1.5 Actively identify and support partnerships that target key sectors of the community that are not fully engaged with conservation, with a focus on young people and the diverse ethnic communities in Auckland.
- 6.4.1.6 Raise public awareness that intact functioning ecosystems underpin New Zealand's economy both directly and indirectly.
- 6.4.1.7 Achieve recognition of the contribution that public conservation lands and waters within the region make to the well-being and economic prosperity of the Auckland region and beyond.

6.4.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 6.4.2.1 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation in Auckland including for young people and Māori.
- 6.4.2.2 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with others in Auckland.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 6.4.2.3 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation in Auckland including for young people and Māori.
- 6.4.2.4 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with others in Auckland.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 6.4.2.5 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing engagement in conservation in Auckland including for young people and Māori.
- 6.4.2.6 Report on outcomes from programmes aimed at increasing the amount of conservation achieved with others in Auckland.

6.5 Conservation gains from business partnerships

Auckland is the major economic centre of New Zealand and has a critical role to play in contributing to the national economy and improving economic performance. There is significant potential to increase the level of engagement and investment by business in conservation in Auckland. The Department will seek to identify and promote new business opportunities and partnerships that deliver conservation gains and enhance prosperity.

The current key internationally competitive sectors in Auckland include marine, tourism, food and beverage, high tech, screen and creative, finance, and tertiary education and training. Major events are a priority for increasing visitation and the international profile of the city, and new growth sectors around innovation are also emerging. Historic heritage remains a powerful visitor attraction to public conservation lands in Auckland.

The significance of the world class Hauraki Gulf Marine Park is recognised in the Auckland Visitor Plan¹¹ as one of the key opportunities to grow the visitor economy, including the sustainable development of Gulf island tourism products and attractions.

Businesses are increasingly seeking to demonstrate how they can contribute to sustaining a healthy environment and support a vibrant society. The potential to engage in conservation partnerships increasingly makes sense for business, as it can significantly improve business worth, value and brand/reputation, while helping to conserve natural and cultural heritage values.

Places where outcomes identify new business opportunities include Great Barrier Island, Kawau Island Historic Reserve, and Tiritiri Matangi, Rangitoto, Motutapu and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga islands.

6.5.1 OBJECTIVES

- 6.5.1.1 Work with concessionaires to enhance the conservation experience of their customers and build support for conservation.
- 6.5.1.2 Work with regional tourism organisations, other promotional groups, tangata whenua, businesses and other key partners to create and develop opportunities to promote conservation products and services.
- 6.5.1.3 Seek opportunities to work with businesses that are looking for ways to demonstrate their commitment to, and engagement with, conservation.
- 6.5.1.4 Work with relevant agencies to avoid duplication of regulatory control on public conservation lands and waters.
- 6.5.1.5 Continue to work with other relevant agencies to streamline and seek efficiencies in statutory processes.
- 6.5.1.6 Ensure that the degree to which visitors' experiences would be enhanced by a cultural dimension is taken into account when proactively offering recreation and tourism concessions opportunities.

11 Auckland Tourism, Events and Economic Development Ltd 2011: Auckland Visitor Plan, December 2011.

6.5.2 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 6.5.2.1 Report on the conservation outcomes achieved due to conservation partnerships with businesses in the area covered by this CMS.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 6.5.2.2 Report on the conservation outcomes achieved due to conservation partnerships with businesses in the area covered by this CMS.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 6.5.2.3 Report on the conservation outcomes achieved due to conservation partnerships with businesses in Auckland.

7 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (Marine Park) was established by special legislation in February 2000. It covers an area of 1.2 million ha, and includes islands, and coastal and marine environments on the doorstep of Auckland. The Marine Park is an innovative concept in New Zealand, applying principles derived from the National Parks Act 1980 to an urbanised environment; protecting important natural areas within a lived-in, worked-in environment. Its purposes are to:

- recognise and protect in perpetuity the international and national significance of the land and the natural and historic resources within the Marine Park:
- protect in perpetuity and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the people and communities of the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana (the Gulf) and New Zealand, the natural and historic resources of the Marine Park including scenery, ecological systems, and natural features that are so beautiful, unique, or scientifically important to be of national significance, for their intrinsic worth:
- recognise and have particular regard to the historic, traditional, cultural, and spiritual relationship of tangata whenua with the Gulf, its islands and coastal areas, and the natural and historic resources of the Marine Park:
- sustain the life-supporting capacity of the soil, air, water and ecosystems of the Gulf within the Marine Park.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 provides for integrated management of the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana across 21 statutes, including the Conservation Act 1987, the Resource Management Act 1991 and the Fisheries Act 1996. The Marine Park includes the following land within the Gulf (refer to Volume II, Map 5):

- all conservation areas, wildlife refuges, wildlife sanctuaries, reserves, marine mammal sanctuaries and marine reserves held, managed or administered by the Department
- any reserve controlled or managed by an administering body under the Reserves Act 1977
- all of the common marine and coastal area within the Gulf other than foreshore and seabed held for defence purposes
- all seawater
- the Firth of Thames Wetland of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention (refer to Part Two, section 23)

Local authorities can add their reserves, regional parks, or any other open space or building managed to protect its natural or historic values to the Marine Park, while retaining ownership and control. Protected private or Māori land can also be included at the owner's request. Mātaitai or taiāpure local fisheries may also be included. Some reserves in private ownership on Waiheke Island and a number of Auckland Council reserves have already been added.

The Gulf has a natural richness, environmental quality, biological diversity and landscape that make it outstanding and distinctive in New Zealand. The islands of the Gulf are valued as the habitats of plants and animals, once common, now rare and often the only places in the world where these species exist naturally. The Marine Park also provides excellent recreation opportunities for residents and visitors.

There are seven marine reserves (six of which are found in Auckland) and more than 50 islands in the Marine Park, and huge numbers of seabirds and 22 species of marine mammals have been observed within it. Thanks to pest control and eradication programmes, an increasing number of islands in the Marine Park are mammalian pest-free sanctuaries, providing safe homes for many of New Zealand's rarest native species and an opportunity

for visitors to connect with nature, and appreciate threatened species and the value of preserving and restoring islands ecosystems.

There is growing recognition of the need to protect and enhance the unique values of the Marine Park, and to ensure that people have the opportunity to benefit from it and enjoy it now and in the future. Throughout the Marine Park, the Department, iwi, community trusts, agencies and organisations are working together to enhance its conservation values and to provide visitor opportunities.

The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 also established the Hauraki Gulf Forum (Forum). The key functions of the Forum are to integrate and promote the sustainable management of the Gulf, its islands and catchments, and to recognise the relationship that tangata whenua have with those areas. Forum members comprise representatives of all local authorities adjoining the Gulf or its catchments, representatives of the Ministers of Conservation, Primary Industries and Māori Affairs, and six tangata whenua representatives.

The Forum's vision for the Gulf is of a place that is 'celebrated and treasured', which is 'thriving with fish and shellfish, kaimoana', which has 'a rich diversity of life', and which supports a 'sense of place, connection and identity' and a 'vibrant economy'.

The Forum prepares 3-yearly State of the Environment reports for the Gulf. This report measures progress towards achieving the Forum's vision, including information on progress towards integrated management and responses to strategic and prioritised issues.

The most recent report in 2011¹² demonstrated that the Gulf has undergone incredible transformations over two human life spans and concluded that most environmental indicators either show negative trends or remain at levels which are indicative of poor environmental condition. It also concluded that the work of the myriad of agencies involved in managing the Gulf needs to be integrated if many of the issues facing the Gulf are to be addressed and the environmental decline halted.

Accordingly, the Forum is developing a marine spatial plan for the Gulf. The overarching goal of the plan will be to restore and enhance the environmental health of the Gulf and enable appropriate use and development. The plan will provide non-statutory recommendations to be considered by statutory agencies for incorporation into their planning documents, including revisions of this CMS and conservation management plans.

The objectives below and provisions in Part Two—Places identify the contribution that the Department seeks to make to the Marine Park.

7.5.1 OBJECTIVES

- 7.5.1.1 Implement sections 7 and 8 of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 (which have the same effect as a statement of general policy by virtue of section 11 of the same Act), insofar as implementing the sections does not derogate from the provisions of the Conservation Act 1987.
- 7.5.1.2 Support the Hauraki Gulf Forum, and particularly the development and implementation of a marine spatial plan, to promote and improve integrated conservation management within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.

12 State of our Gulf: Tikapa Moana – Hauraki Gulf State of the Environment Report 2011.

- 7.5.1.3 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other organisations and the community to:
- a) raise the profile of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park and increase awareness of its special values;
 - b) identify potential opportunities to include new areas of land within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park;
 - c) advocate for giving effect to the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act through policies and plans; and
 - d) build partner support for the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park based on shared values.
- 7.5.1.4 Work with councils and other organisations to ensure that the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 is taken into account in statutory planning and decision-making processes.
- 7.5.1.5 Manage public conservation lands and waters within the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park to enhance conservation values and visitor opportunities in accordance with outcomes, objectives and policies in Parts One, Two and Three.
- 7.5.1.6 Work with Auckland Council, tangata whenua and others to position the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park as a world-class visitor destination.
- 7.5.1.7 Provide information and interpretation, particularly at sites identified in Part Two of this CMS, to enhance the understanding and appreciation of the special values of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.

8 Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato

The Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato is the longest river in New Zealand. It is of great significance to iwi and has high conservation value. Part of the river’s northern catchment is located in Auckland.

The Waikato River is the ancestral river (tūpuna awa) for some iwi, representing the mana and the mauri of the people. It is central to tribal identity, and to spiritual and physical well-being. For Waikato-Tainui, it is a living entity, encompassing its bed, banks and waters, streams, lakes, catchments and flood plains, flora and fauna, and metaphysical being. Waikato-Tainui have a duty to past, present and future generations to protect the river.

The Waikato River has sustained tangata whenua for many generations as a place to live, a source for food and other resources, and a transport corridor. It represents a way of life, with much historical, spiritual and cultural significance for iwi and their mana.

This river has also shaped many wetland and river systems along its path, both past and present. The highly valued waterways and wetlands of the Hauraki Plains and lower Waikato basin are two examples. The Waikato River provides a range of habitats for native fauna and flora, supporting significant native fisheries and nationally threatened species, and priority ecosystem units in the Hunua Ranges.

The development and use of the Waikato River over time has led to degradation of its ecosystem and associated wetland systems. This has had significant adverse effects on native habitats, indigenous plants and animals, and cultural and spiritual values and the associated mana of iwi, including their ability to exercise kaitiakitanga and conduct their tikanga and kawa. Effective and productive partnerships with iwi are the key to restoring and managing the river’s ecosystems, habitats and species, which the Department has a role in managing and advocating for.

The iwi with a direct interest in and special relationship with the part of the Waikato River catchment within Auckland is Waikato-Tainui.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 gave effect to the 2009 Deed of Settlement for the Raupatu claims of Waikato-Tainui concerning the Waikato River. The Deed of Settlement established co-governance and co-management arrangements over the river, with an overarching purpose to restore and protect its health and well-being for future generations.

A primary component of the above Treaty settlement legislation is Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato—the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River (Appendix 17). The Vision and Strategy sets the management direction for the Waikato River and its catchments.

Tōku awa koiora me ōna pikonga he kura tangihia o te mātāmuri.

The river of life, each curve more beautiful than the last.

Our vision is for a future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.

The Vision and Strategy has the same status as a general policy in terms of the Conservation General Policy 2005 by virtue of section 16 of the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, which this CMS implements and cannot be inconsistent with. Appendix 17, which outlines the Vision and Strategy, demonstrates how the CMS implements the Department’s responsibilities to achieve the Vision and Strategy.

The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 also established the Waikato River Authority, which is a statutory body, under both that Act and the Ngati

Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010. The purpose of the Authority as set out in both Acts is to:

- set the primary direction through the Vision and Strategy to achieve the restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River for future generations
- promote an integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to the implementation of the Vision and Strategy and the management of the Waikato River
- fund rehabilitation initiatives for the Waikato River in its role as trustee for the Waikato River Clean-up Trust

Another primary component of the above legislation is the integrated river management plan for the Waikato River. This plan sets the framework for co-management of the Waikato River and its purpose as stated in legislation reads:

To achieve an integrated approach between Waikato-Tainui, relevant departments, relevant local authorities, and appropriate agencies to the management of aquatic life, habitats, and natural resources within the Waikato River consistent with the overarching purpose of the settlement.

As noted in the introduction to this CMS, the conservation component of this plan has status both as a conservation management plan and a freshwater fisheries management plan under the Conservation Act 1987, and must be jointly approved by Waikato-Tainui and the Minister of Conservation.

Other mechanisms related to the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 are outlined below.

In carrying out their functions or exercising powers under the conservation legislation in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment, departmental staff must have particular regard to iwi environmental plans to the extent to which their contents relate to the Department's functions or powers, or the Minister's functions or powers when exercised under delegation.

The Minister and Director-General of Conservation entered into a Conservation Accord with Waikato-Tainui on 20 October 2008. The Accord gives effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River in respect of lands, species and resources the Department manages on behalf of the Crown and the New Zealand public (refer to Volume II, Map 6). The Accord is based on the following principles, the first three (in bold) being overriding principles:

- **Te Mana o Te Awa—The spiritual authority, protective power and prestige of the Waikato River**
- **Mana Whakahaere—Authority and rights of control**
- **Co-management**
- Health and well-being
- Integration
- Treaty of Waitangi
- Honour and integrity
- Conservation

The Director-General of Conservation and Waikato-Tainui jointly signed the Conservation Accord Implementation Strategy (CAIS) on 17 June 2011. The CAIS was developed cooperatively, and sets out 17 objectives and 14 mechanisms for implementing the three overriding principles of Te Mana o Te Awa, Mana Whakahaere and Co-management.

The area covered by the Accord and the CAIS (the Accord Area) is shown in the Waikato-Tainui Co-Management Area map in Volume II. Appendix 17, which outlines the Vision and Strategy, demonstrates how this CMS implements the Department's responsibilities under the above legislation, the Accord and the CAIS.

8.1 Waikato River objectives

8.1.1 OBJECTIVES

- 8.1.1.1 Implement the directions and outcomes in the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River where it applies to the Department under conservation legislation.
- 8.1.1.2 Work with Waikato River Iwi to achieve the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.
- 8.1.1.3 Recognise and work with Waikato River Iwi who have an interest in, and a special relationship with, the natural and historic resources, freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats of the Waikato River managed by the Department under conservation legislation.
- 8.1.1.4 Uphold and promote the principles of the Accord in partnership with Waikato-Tainui.
- 8.1.1.5 Work with Waikato-Tainui to achieve the restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River for future generations through the objectives and mechanisms in the CAIS.
- 8.1.1.6 Ensure that all Department of Conservation staff who work within the Accord Area (Area A) understand the Department's responsibilities in respect of the implementation of the Accord.
- 8.1.1.7 Work cooperatively with all parties in regard to requests for the Department's participation on the Waikato River Authority.
- 8.1.1.8 Have particular regard to iwi environmental plans¹³ in relation to the Waikato River and its catchment where required by Treaty legislation when carrying out functions or exercising powers under conservation legislation.

13 Waikato-Tainui Te Kauhanganui Incorporated 2013: Waikato-Tainui Environment Plan – Te Mahere AA – Taiao Ā Waikato-Tainui. Waikato-Tainui Te Kauhanganui Incorporated, Hamilton, New Zealand, www.waikatotainui.com.

Part Two—Places

This section addresses Places in Auckland (refer Volume II, Map 7) that have been identified for the purposes of integrated conservation management and which require some specific management direction. Each Place has a description, an outcome statement (outcome), policies and milestones:

- Outcomes describe the future state of a ‘Place’, including its values and expected changes at that Place over the 10-year term of the CMS, and will be used when making decisions. This applies whether or not there is a specific policy for a Place.
- Policies describe the course of action or guiding principles to be used for conservation management and decision-making. Policies in Parts Two and Three are included where it is necessary to constrain or enable an activity in order to achieve an outcome for a Place.
- Milestones are specific actions that are measurable steps towards achieving an objective or outcome statements.

Part Two must be read in conjunction with Parts One and Three. Where the outcomes and policies in Part Two are more specific than the objectives in Part One and/or the policies in Part Three, or there is an ambiguity between them, the provisions of Part Two prevail.

The Places in Auckland are:

- 9 Marine Reserves Place
- 10 Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) Place
- 11 Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island Place
- 12 Kermadec Islands Place
- 13 Mokohinau Islands Place
- 14 Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place
- 15 Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai/Pakiri Place
- 16 Kawau Island Place
- 17 Motuora Island Place
- 18 Tiritiri Matangi Island Place
- 19 Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands Place
- 20 Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga Place
- 21 Browns Island (Motukorea) Place
- 22 Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place
- 23 Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana Wetland Place

Note that Places, collectively, do not cover all of Auckland. Sites not covered by a Part Two—Place are of no lesser value or importance but require less detailed management direction. Conservation management will still be undertaken in these areas in line with the vision, objectives, policies milestones and related provisions in Parts One, Three and Four of the CMS.

9 Marine Reserves Place

Marine reserves are areas of the sea and foreshore that are set aside for preservation and scientific study. They provide long-term legal protection for marine ecosystems, habitats and species assemblages or communities. At present, less than 5% of New Zealand's territorial sea is fully protected as marine reserves, with 0.163% protected in Auckland (excluding the Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve).

Compared with terrestrial ecosystems, the marine environment is poorly understood. Marine reserves are free from many of the disturbance effects that are found in the wider marine environment, and so are extremely valuable as places to further scientific knowledge and increase understanding of marine processes. All marine reserves in Auckland are regularly utilised for scientific research. Monitoring and research in marine reserves is essential for determining how marine ecosystems behave naturally, and for assessing and managing the impacts of fishing, development, pollution, pests and climate change. Monitoring is also crucial for understanding whether protection and other management strategies are effective in mitigating these impacts and providing support for these initiatives.

The long-term viability of marine reserves requires the cooperation and support of all users, including tangata whenua, research institutions, the community, recreational fishers and commercial operators, to ensure adherence to regulations and provisions. As well as education and awareness, law enforcement activities are essential for the protection and recovery of marine reserves. In addition to the Department, honorary rangers, the New Zealand Defence Force, New Zealand Customs and feedback from the public play an integral part in these activities.

As kaitiaki, navigators and harvesters of the sea, tangata whenua recognise the importance of marine reserves as a mechanism for the ongoing protection of marine resources and the environment. Māori traditional beliefs associate the sea with Tangaroa, who is viewed as both an ancestor and deity. Likewise, all marine species are considered ancestors, and are often incorporated into tribal histories and stories. Marine reserves, which are a bastion of refuge for marine species, are therefore considered of significant cultural and spiritual importance to tangata whenua in Auckland.

Recreational activities are popular in marine reserves but less so in marine reserves with limited public access such as Motu Manawa-Pollen Island and Te Matuku, and infrequent in the isolated Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve. Activities include boating, swimming, snorkelling, diving and other water sports, underwater photography, and watching marine life.

Marine reserves provide a forum for increasing public awareness, understanding and support for marine conservation. This is achieved through the provision of high-quality information obtained from monitoring and research activities, interpretation and educational activities, promoting the social and economic benefits of marine reserves, and working with others to deliver education and awareness programmes.

The management of adjacent terrestrial reserves and activities on other land is important for the maintenance of water quality and the functioning of natural processes in marine reserves.

This Place encompasses five out of the six marine reserves in Auckland (refer to Volume II, Maps 7.1 to 7.6). It is comprised of five geographically and biologically distinct areas (Table 1).

Table 1: Marine reserves in the Auckland region covered by this Place

MARINE RESERVE (GAZETTED)	LOCATION	SIZE (HA)
Kermadec Islands (1990)	Approximately 1000 km northeast of Auckland. Extends 12 nautical miles (22.4 km) from MHWS on the islands in the Kermadec group.	745 000
Long Bay-Okura (1995)	Approximately 20 km north of Auckland City on the east coast adjacent to Long Bay Regional Park.	518
Motu Manawa-Pollen Island (1995)	In the inner reaches of Waitemata Harbour, surrounding Motu Manawa-Pollen Island Scientific Reserve and Traherne Island.	500
Tāwharanui (2011)	On the northern coast of the Tokatu Peninsula, adjacent to Tawharanui Regional Park; about 1.5 hours from Auckland.	394
Te Matuku (2005)	In the southeast corner of Waiheke Island. Includes all of Te Matuku Bay (Mcleods Bay) (apart from a small marine farm) and extends into deeper water across Waiheke Channel.	700

Cape Rodney-Okakari Point Marine Reserve was New Zealand's first marine reserve and is commonly known as the Leigh or Goat Island Marine Reserve. This Marine Reserve is addressed as part of the Leigh Reserves Complex in section 10.

9.1 Description

KERMADEC ISLANDS MARINE RESERVE

Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve surrounds the Kermadec Islands, which are part of a chain of enormous deep-sea volcanoes that make up the Kermadec Ridge. The volcanoes forming the islands rise more than 1000 m above the ridge, while to the east the Kermadec Trench, the second deepest place on earth, plunges to depths of 8000–10 000 m. The Kermadec Trench and Ridge have been formed by intense tectonic activity associated with the subduction of the Pacific Plate under the Indo-Australian Plate. The seamounts (or underwater mountains), including several within the Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve, are of international scientific interest. Many provide habitat for endemic species and biological communities, and those with active hydrothermal vents provide renowned opportunities for studying their chemistry and the formation of the geological features they produce. There is also interest in mining these mineral-rich structures and deposits on seamounts outside and adjoining the Marine Reserve.

Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve protects one of the most isolated and least modified marine ecosystems in the world. As such, it contains a unique unbroken sequence of oceanic marine habitats, ranging from intertidal rock and sandy shores to deepwater reefs, tallus fields, hydrothermal vents and sediment slopes at over 3000 m depth. Other factors contributing to the national and international significance of this marine reserve are the overlap of tropical, subtropical and temperate marine flora and fauna, its location at or near the southern limit of reef-building corals in the southwest Pacific, high levels of endemism in some groups of animals, and its size. Being located approximately midway between New Zealand and Tonga, as well as at the end of a series of island stepping stones extending eastward from Australia, the Kermadecs also provide an almost globally significant opportunity to study the role that dispersal ability and colonisation events play

in structuring marine biological communities. Protected species occurring in the marine reserve include hard and soft corals, spotted black grouper (*Epinephelus daemeli*), small tooth sandtiger (*Odontaspis ferox*) and great white (*Carcharodon carcharias*) sharks, green (*Chelonia mydas*) and hawksbill (*Eretmochelys imbricata*) turtles, at least five cetaceans (most notably an apparently resident population of terehu/bottlenose dolphins and large numbers of migrating humpback whales), and a diverse seabird fauna (including several endemic subspecies).

Although access to Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve is constrained by its isolation and so visitor numbers are low, it is visited by passing yachts, expedition and resupply vessels, and occasionally sheltering fishing vessels. Ship visits create the potential for accidental introductions of exotic marine species and illegal fishing within the reserve. Although the marine reserve spans 2° of latitude (29.2-31.30°S) it is discontinuous and some fishing occurs in the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ) waters between the islands. Little is known about movement and dispersal of marine organisms between the islands and different parts of the marine reserve. The Department intends to work with others to investigate statutory protection measures for significant marine habitats and species in the EEZ adjacent to and between sections of the Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve.

The national and international significance of the Kermadec Islands provides an opportunity to increase the public's understanding of this marine reserve through collaborative research, and off-site information and interpretation.

LONG BAY-OKURA MARINE RESERVE

Long Bay-Okura Marine Reserve includes a variety of coastal habitats typical of the relatively sheltered inner Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana: sandy beaches, rocky reefs, mānawa/mangrove (*Avicennia marina*) forest, saltmarsh, sandflats and mudflats. Due to its coastal, inner Gulf location, the water in the marine reserve is often murky. Remnant coastal forest patches are found adjacent to the marine reserve, providing a good sequence from bush to sea.

The estuarine, rocky intertidal and subtidal habitats support biological communities that are representative of those found elsewhere in the inner Gulf. Fish present in the marine reserve include tāmure/snapper (*Pagrus auratus*), pātiki/flounder (*Rhombosolea plebeian*) and aua/yellow-eyed mullet (*Aldrichetta forsteri*).

This marine reserve and Motu Manawa-Pollen Island Marine Reserve are the only ones that are accessible by public transport in Auckland. Long Bay-Okura Marine Reserve borders the Okura Estuary Scenic Reserve, with its popular walking track, and adjoins Long Bay Regional Park, which is managed by Auckland Council. The park is popular for its open space and picnic spots, and attracts around a million visitors a year¹⁴. The marine reserve's easy accessibility means that ongoing compliance and enforcement of relevant statutes, regulations and bylaws is required. The rocky reefs are popular with school and university groups, and so it is important to manage their activities to minimise the level of disturbance to marine life and habitats.

Residential development inland from the Long Bay Regional Park and future development of Weiti Station are posing new management challenges around the protection of the biodiversity and water quality in the Long Bay-Okura Marine Reserve. The Department is working with Auckland Council, land developers and adjoining communities to monitor the effects of new development and minimise the impact of sedimentation on the marine reserve.

14 Auckland Council: 2012–2013 Visitor monitoring programme.

MOTU MANAWA-POLLEN ISLAND MARINE RESERVE

Motu Manawa-Pollen Island Marine Reserve is characterised by extensive soft and sandy sediments, which are covered by loose shell material in many areas. The intertidal flats to the west of Motu Manawa-Pollen Island provide a breeding area and rich feeding grounds for wading birds, including tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel, matuku-moana/white-faced heron (*Ardea novaehollandiae novaehollandiae*), pūweto/spotless crane (*Porzana tabuensis*) and mohopereru/banded rail (*Rallus philippensis*). These estuarine wetlands are equally important for non-waders, particularly for one of the few remaining mainland populations of the mātātā/North Island fernbird (*Bowdleria punctata*) in the Auckland region. The outer flats are regularly visited by migratory birds such as kuaka/bar-tailed godwit (*Limosa lapponica*), huahou/lesser or red knot (*Calidris canutus*), ngutu-parore/wrybill and tōrea/South Island pied oystercatcher (*Haematopus finschi*).

Knowledge of the processes affecting the natural values and marine life within this marine reserve is limited. However, surveys planned in association with the widening of SH16 will address some of these knowledge gaps. The location of the reserve within the receiving environment of a heavily urbanised catchment presents particular challenges to its management. Many of the activities that potentially adversely affect the habitats and marine life within the reserve occur well beyond its boundaries. In addition to the relatively well-known impacts of sedimentation and physical disturbance on estuarine biodiversity, research by the National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA) has shown that invertebrates occurring within the reserve exhibit sub-lethal effects of exposure to toxins contained in run-off and other discharges to the upper Waitemata Harbour. Such impacts can only be managed by improving overall management of the entire harbour ecosystem.

During the term of this CMS, this marine reserve will reduce in area by 3.24 ha (0.6%) as a result of widening the SH16 motorway. Conditions of this public work will include requiring pest control to be undertaken, native plants restored, and public awareness of the values of the marine reserve to be increased. The Motu Manawa-Pollen Island Scientific Reserve, an open scientific reserve, is one of two islands within the marine reserve (the other being Traherne Island). The scientific reserve is one of the few unmodified estuarine mangrove areas left in the upper Waitemata Harbour, and provides a habitat for the *Bactra n.* species moth. Access to this island is limited by the tidal nature of the area, mangroves and SH16, protecting its values. The motorway widening has highlighted the importance of advocacy to protect and enhance the marine reserve's values.

There is the potential to increase public access to and appreciation of the marine reserve through the creation of a boardwalk along its south-eastern border, which adjoins the suburb of Waterview. This will be investigated by the Department in conjunction with Auckland Council. Scientific research, particularly that addressing physical and biological processes relevant to the management of the wider harbour ecosystem, will be encouraged.

TĀWHARANUI MARINE RESERVE

Tāwharanui Marine Reserve has extensive intertidal and subtidal reefs that are typical of the moderately exposed coasts of northeastern New Zealand. It is scientifically important due to its proximity to Cape Rodney-Okakari Point Marine Reserve and its ability to support research findings across a larger area. The marine reserve contains a range of habitats, including rock platforms, reefs with overhangs, tunnels and caves. More than 50 species of fish have been recorded in the marine reserve, including stingray (*Dasyatis brevicaudata*), eagle ray (*Myliobatis tenuicaudatus*), and moray (*Gymnothorax prasinus*) and conger (*Conger verreauxi*) eels. Schools of goatfish (*Upeneichthys lineatus*), bigeye (*Pempheris adspersa*), red moki (*Cheilodactylus spectabilis*), blue maomao (*Scorpius violaceus*), spotty (*Notolabrus celidotus*) and kōheru (*Decapterus koheru*) are commonly seen. Tāmure/

snapper and kōura/spiny lobster (*Jasus edwardsii*) are more common and larger inside the marine reserve than outside. Oysters, mussels (*Perna canaliculus*), kina (*Evechinus chloroticus*), catseyes and topshells are found in the rock pools along the coastline, and there are scallop beds out in Omaha Bay.

The adjoining Tawharanui Regional Park receives up to 150 000 visitors¹⁵ each year. As a predator-free open sanctuary, the park provides opportunities for exploring a wider range of ecosystem functions and educational opportunities, e.g. kororā/little penguin (*Eudyptula minor*) breeding. The marine reserve (part of which was formerly a marine park) is popular for surfing, snorkelling, swimming and diving. The 2010 Regional Parks Management Plan¹⁶ sets out how Tawharanui Regional Park is managed and this CMS seeks to align the management of the marine reserve with this plan. The Department will work cooperatively with Auckland Council and Ngāti Manuhiri on its management, including the provision of interpretation.

TE MATUKU MARINE RESERVE

Te Matuku Marine Reserve protects estuarine systems that are typical of northern New Zealand, including saltwater wetlands, broad intertidal mudflats, low-lying islands, shell spits and rocky shorelines. Shell spits on the eastern side of Te Matuku Bay (McLeods Bay) are important roosting and nesting areas for the threatened taranui/Caspian tern and tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel. Matuku/Australasian bittern has also been recorded in the reserve.

This marine reserve provides habitat for a variety of species, such as tuangi/cockle (*Austrovenus stutchburyi*) and pipi/clam (*Paphies australis*). On subtidal reefs, sponges, anemones and nudibranchs (sea slugs) are found. Extensive beds of kupa/horse mussels (*Atrina pectinata zelandica*) and large seaweeds, common in the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana, grow around Passage Rock, where kōura/rock lobster (*Jasus edwardsii*) and tāmure/snapper are also found.

Te Matuku Bay was an important food gathering and waka landing site for early Māori living in coastal settlements and the nearby mountain pā of Maunganui, as evidenced by thick shell middens in the bay.

The rate of sedimentation in Te Matuku Bay has been steadily increasing at a similar rate to the increase in urbanised catchments. The surrounding catchment and Wairoa River, which is located across the Tamaki Strait from Te Matuku Bay, are considered to be the most likely sources of sediment flowing into the Marine Reserve. Such impacts can only be managed through a catchment-wide approach.

9.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Marine Reserves Place

9.2.1 OUTCOME

The ecosystems and habitats of the Auckland marine reserves sustain diverse populations of indigenous flora and fauna. Their conservation values are recognised and appreciated for their contribution to the biodiversity of the wider marine environment. Visitors leave marine reserves with an enhanced appreciation of the value of long-term protection of the marine environment. Scientific research is encouraged in marine reserves.

15 Auckland Council 2012–2013: Visitor monitoring programme.

16 Auckland Regional Council 2010: Regional Parks Management Plan.

Human activities in marine reserves and on adjoining public conservation lands are not detrimental to scientific study or conservation values, and do not detract from the visitor experience. The Department advocates for the appropriate use of land within catchments that affect marine reserves to reduce land-based effects on them. Biosecurity measures that are established in conjunction with others prevent the establishment of viable populations of new marine pests within marine reserves.

Tangata whenua and communities are actively involved in the management of marine reserves, and marine reserves contribute to their socio-economic well-being.

The Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve is the least modified marine reserve Auckland, and is managed in cooperation with government agencies and others. Knowledge of its internationally significant natural values is enhanced through collaborative research and monitoring, and is promoted through off-site opportunities. Natural values in the EEZ adjacent to and between sections of the marine reserve are protected through working with government agencies and others.

Long Bay-Okura Marine Reserve protects coastal habitats typical of the inner Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana. High numbers of visitors continue to be attracted by its accessibility, urban coastal setting and adjacent regional park, and it is well utilised for educational activities. Educational and visitor opportunities are well managed and integrated across the marine reserve and the regional park, and minimise adverse effects on marine life and habitats.

Motu Manawa-Pollen Island Marine Reserve's intertidal estuaries, which are a priority ecosystem unit, continue to provide habitats and breeding areas for a wide variety of bird species, including migratory birds. The nature and diversity of marine species is clearly understood. While recreation opportunities are restricted by the marine reserve's predominantly estuarine and tidal nature, non-motorised water sports and bird watching are enjoyed by visitors. Public access to the marine reserve is enhanced and visitors are able to appreciate its natural values from different vantage points.

Tāwharanui Marine Reserve protects extensive intertidal and subtidal reefs that are typical of the moderately exposed coasts of northeastern New Zealand. Fish numbers in the marine reserve are flourishing. High visitor numbers are attracted by its outstanding surf beaches, marine-based recreation activities, and rapidly increasing biodiversity values found both in the marine reserve and the adjoining open sanctuary of the regional park. Interpretation deepens visitors' understanding and appreciation of the values of the Marine Reserve.

Te Matuku Marine Reserve remains an intact estuarine ecosystem protecting a sequence of significant natural areas that link native forest with freshwater and coastal wetlands, which are a priority ecosystem unit. Historic and cultural heritage within the marine reserve is protected and interpreted. The reserve is accessed by boat or foot, and visitors experience and enjoy bird watching and water-based activities.

9.2.2 POLICIES

- 9.2.2.1 Work with tangata whenua to enhance opportunities for them to exercise their kaitiakitanga.
- 9.2.2.2 Involve other organisations and the community in the protection and management of marine reserves.
- 9.2.2.3 Provide high-quality interpretation to increase the public's protection, appreciation and awareness of the natural, historic and cultural values of marine reserves and adjacent public conservation land.

- 9.2.2.4 Undertake and encourage research and monitoring in marine reserves that supports and informs their management, and increases knowledge of the wider marine environment.
 - 9.2.2.5 Ensure human activities and visitor facilities do not negatively impact on opportunities for scientific research, the natural, historic and cultural values of marine reserves, or other visitors.
 - 9.2.2.6 Ensure effective compliance and law enforcement within marine reserves, working with tangata whenua, other agencies and the local community where appropriate.
 - 9.2.2.7 Work with tangata whenua, communities and other agencies to achieve statutory protection of significant marine habitats and species in the EEZ adjacent to and between sections of the Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve.
 - 9.2.2.8 Work with Auckland Council to integrate management between Long-Bay Okura Marine Reserve and Tāwharanui Marine Reserve and adjacent regional parks.
 - 9.2.2.9 Work with the New Zealand Transport Agency and others to manage threats to native species in the coastal margin of the Motu Manawa-Pollen Island Marine Reserve, Motu Manawa Pollen Island Scientific Reserve and Traherne Island.
-

9.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 9.2.3.1 Report on the effectiveness of compliance and law enforcement in marine reserves.
- 9.2.3.2 Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem unit work programme for Motu Manawa-Pollen Island.
- 9.2.3.3 Biological monitoring programme initiated to assess changes to the marine environments within marine reserves.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 9.2.3.4 Report on the effectiveness of compliance and law enforcement in marine reserves.
- 9.2.3.5 Report on outcomes of biological monitoring programme.
- 9.2.3.6 Investigation into statutory protection measures for significant habitats and species in the EEZ adjacent to and between sections of the Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 9.2.3.7 Report on the effectiveness of compliance and law enforcement in marine reserves.
- 9.2.3.8 Report on outcomes of biological monitoring programme and identification of management actions required to assess changes.

10 Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) Place

A Conservation Management Plan for the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) was approved by the Auckland Conservation Board in June 2002. Regard has been given to this plan during the preparation of this section of the Auckland CMS. It is intended that the Conservation Management Plan will be revoked once this CMS is approved.

The Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) encompasses the following three areas (Table 2) (refer to Volume II, Map 7.6).

Table 2: Areas within the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua)

AREA	LOCATION	SIZE (HA)
Cape Rodney-Okakari Point Marine Reserve (1975)	Spans approximately 5 km from Cape Rodney to Okakari Point. The 547-ha reserve includes the waters around Te Hāwera-a-Maki/Goat Island.	547
Te Hāwera-a-Maki/Goat Island Scientific Reserve	Island in the middle of the marine reserve, approximately 150 m offshore in Goat Island Bay.	9.3
Leigh Recreation Reserve	At the end of Goat Island Road. The west bank of Wakatūwhenua Stream forms the eastern boundary of the reserve.	3.03*

* The area of Leigh Recreation Reserve excludes land (5,4670 ha) vested in Ngāti Manuhiri under the Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012 and now named Wakatūwhenua Recreation Reserve.

10.1 Description

Cape Rodney-Okakari Point Marine Reserve was New Zealand's first marine reserve and remains one of the most popular reserves, receiving over 300 000 visitors each year. The accessibility of the reserve to Auckland, as well as its underwater scenery, natural values and marine life, attracts visitors in ever increasing numbers. It offers some of the best snorkelling and diving opportunities close to Auckland, and is one of the few marine reserves where there is easy public access to view reef ecosystems without needing a boat. Swimming, boating and educational activities are also popular.

The marine reserve contains a variety of habitats that are representative of the outer Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana coastal environment: rocky shores, deep reefs, underwater cliffs, canyons and sandflats. Prior to its establishment, the effects of fishing had significantly reduced the range and abundance of its marine species. As at 2012, 30 years since its establishment, nearly 1000 different marine species have been recorded, including rāwaru/blue cod (*Parapercis colias*), nanua/red moki, kina/sea urchin, kōura/rock lobster and tāmure/snapper, as well as sea squirts, anemones, corals and sponges in deeper waters.

The information obtained from monitoring and research programmes has significantly increased international scientific knowledge of the ecological functioning of temperate rocky reefs, and the benefits and effects of 'no-take' marine reserves. It has also enabled a greater understanding of the trophic cascade effect in a protected area, where predators in a food web suppress the abundance of their prey, thereby releasing the next trophic

level down from predation; for example, kina barrens that resulted from overfishing in the area have developed into kelp forests. This information is also used at a national level to promote understanding of marine protection. The marine reserve is notable for its clean, largely silt-free environment, which contrasts with much of the inner Gulf.

The ancestors of the Ngāti Manuhiri arrived on the Moekakara waka, which landed at Wakatūwhenua, adjoining Te Hāwera-a-Maki/ Goat Island. The commander of the waka, Tahuhunui, settled at Te Arai Point (Te Arai o Tahuhu). Physical evidence of past Māori occupation in the form of archaeological deposits of shell midden occurs within Wakatūwhenua and along the adjacent coastline.

The longer traditional name, Te Hāwera-a-Maki, means ‘the ear pendant belonging to Maki’. This name is associated with Maki, who led the conquest of the area in the late 17th century. Maki was the father of Manuhiri, the eponymous ancestor of Ngāti Manuhiri. The mana and mauri of this name and landmark, and the waters that surround it, are thus of immense significance to the iwi. The island, which according to tradition was occupied as a fortified pā, is now covered with regenerating coastal forest, and is home to breeding petrels, penguins and other seabirds. The island is very fragile and foot traffic causes erosion and seabird burrows to cave in; grey-faced petrel burrows in particular are shallow and prone to collapse. It is classified as a scientific reserve.

The Leigh Recreation Reserve (Recreation Reserve) has been developed primarily as a gateway to the marine reserve, providing facilities such as car parking, toilets and changing rooms. The Recreation Reserve is subject to considerable pressure from the large number of visitors, and it is acknowledged that it will never be able to accommodate the increasing number of people who want to visit the Marine Reserve on public holidays and during the peak summer months; there is physically not enough room to continue to expand facilities due to the small area at the road end and hilly topography. Therefore, rather than continuing to expand facilities, the Department will encourage off-site parking and promote alternative recreation destinations.

High-quality visitor facilities in the Recreation Reserve have been designed to cater for up to 1500 people at any one time, with a maximum daily capacity of 4000. This number reflects the carrying capacity of the reserve complex, as determined by the limited physical space. The complexity of land tenure surrounding the Recreation Reserve highlights the importance of working closely with Ngāti Manuhiri, Auckland Council, University of Auckland and other adjoining landowners to ensure that a unified approach is taken to land management in the catchment. In the future, the Department will work with Auckland Council to rationalise land tenure in the amenity area adjacent to the turning bay near the vehicle bridge across Wakatūwhenua Stream, so that all visitor facilities are on public conservation land.

To the east of the Recreation Reserve and adjacent to the marine reserve is the University of Auckland’s Leigh Marine Laboratory and farm. The university land is primarily in pasture, and is managed under a joint agreement between the Department and the University to provide a buffer area that protects the land abutting the marine reserve from subdivision and inappropriate use. The Goat Island Walkway crosses the university land, taking in coastal vegetation and rural coastal views.

Leigh Marine Laboratory is a centre for the study of the marine environment in the northeast Rodney area and the outer Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana. Within this facility, a visitor centre provides information on the wider marine ecosystems of the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana and focuses on current research projects. Its presence adds to the prestige of the area, and provides opportunities for cooperation between the Department and the University.

Commercial and educational use of the marine reserve is high, and includes dive schools, equipment hire outlets, educational providers and a glass-bottomed boat. The variety of activities undertaken in the reserve and the relative inexperience of some visitors can result in conflicts and safety issues. It is important to ensure that activities within the reserve do not adversely affect its natural or scientific values, or put visitors' safety at risk; and it is equally important that activities within the Recreation Reserve and adjacent catchment do not generate effects that impact adversely on the values and water quality of the reserve.

10.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) Place

10.2.1 OUTCOME

Cape Rodney-Okakari Point Marine Reserve continues to support a healthy, functioning marine ecosystem, where natural, physical and ecological processes predominantly influence the behaviour, distribution and biology of indigenous marine species. It continues to be a site where internationally significant scientific research is undertaken.

The Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) is an Icon destination that is enjoyed for its outstanding rural coastal setting, accessibility and abundant marine life. Large numbers of visitors enjoy diving, snorkelling, swimming and boating in the Marine Reserve, and picnicking and carrying out family activities in the Leigh Recreation Reserve. The Marine Reserve continues to feature as a significant opportunity for educational visits from schools in Auckland and beyond. High-quality visitor facilities that are consistent with the physical and social carrying capacity of Wakatūwhenua provide a well-managed and integrated experience between land and sea.

The relationship of Ngāti Manuhiri with the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) is recognised, and their values are protected and interpreted. The Department works cooperatively with Ngāti Manuhiri, the University of Auckland, Auckland Council and other adjoining landowners to achieve integrated management and protection of the complex.

The Marine Reserve is recognised for its contribution to the local community, and provides an excellent example of the scientific, socio-economic and biological benefits of marine reserves.

10.2.2 POLICIES

- 10.2.2.1 Manage the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua) as an Icon destination, where visitors can experience and have interpreted for them the effects and benefits of 'no-take' marine reserves.
- 10.2.2.2 Work cooperatively with the University of Auckland, tangata whenua and others to facilitate research and educational opportunities, and the effective management of the Cape Rodney-Okarari Point Marine Reserve, Goat Island Walkway and adjacent protected land.
- 10.2.2.3 Support joint interpretative and other learning opportunities with tangata whenua, commercial operators and the University of Auckland, in keeping with the status of the Cape Rodney-Okarari Point Marine Reserve.

- 10.2.2.4 Manage site and facility design and visitor flows at Goat Island Bay in a manner that:
- a) ensures the preservation of the values of the Cape Rodney-Okarari Point Marine Reserve;
 - b) minimises congestion and overcrowding within the Leigh reserves during the peak summer months;
 - c) provides for a maximum of up to 1500 people at a time within the Leigh reserves; and
 - d) maintains visitor satisfaction with the Cape Rodney-Okarari Point Marine Reserve.
- 10.2.2.5 Undertake visitor monitoring to calculate the number of visitors per year and determine the level of visitor satisfaction. If monitoring indicates that visitor satisfaction is decreasing, and it appears to the Department that the measures identified in Policy 10.2.2.4 are not being achieved, consider management options to address this, including working with Auckland Council and adjacent landowners to more actively manage vehicle movements and parking, and promoting alternative sites for exploring marine ecosystems.
- 10.2.2.6 Monitor impacts of visitors and structures on intertidal and subtidal marine species and habitats within the Cape Rodney-Okarari Point Marine Reserve to ensure the protection and well-being of marine life.
- 10.2.2.7 Work with Auckland Council, Ngāti Manuhiri and University of Auckland and other adjacent landowners to ensure that land adjacent to this Place is managed in support of the outcome and policies for this Place.
- 10.2.2.8 Work with Auckland Council and others to address public safety and conflicts between different recreational users on the beach and in the Cape Rodney-Okarari Point Marine Reserve.
- 10.2.2.9 Seek bylaws and amendments to regulations to control commercial activities and surface water activities of vessels in the Marine Reserve, whilst providing for the protection of public safety and enjoyment, and the values of the Cape Rodney-Okarari Point Marine Reserve.
- 10.2.2.10 Should not allow aircraft landings in the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua).
- 10.2.2.11 Should not allow concessions that generate the following adverse effects:
- a) threats to the natural, historic, cultural or scientific values of the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua);
 - b) demand for additional visitor facilities or infrastructure;
 - c) increased visitor congestion or crowding within the Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua);
 - d) on visitor satisfaction, public access to and along the beach, and safety of other users; or
 - e) on the natural and cultural values arising from public access to Te Hāwera-a-Maki/ Goat Island Scientific Reserve above the rock platforms.
- 10.2.2.12 Revoke the Leigh Reserves Complex Management Plan (2002) following this CMS becoming operative.

10.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 10.2.3.1 Initiation of visitor monitoring programme to measure visitor satisfaction and establish the carrying capacity.
- 10.2.3.2 Initiation of biological monitoring programme to assess whether the natural character, health and ecosystem functioning of the marine environment has been maintained or improved.
- 10.2.3.3 Revocation of the Leigh Reserves Complex Conservation Management Plan (2002).

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 10.2.3.4 Report on outcomes of the biological and visitor monitoring programmes.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 10.2.3.5 Report on outcomes of the biological and visitor monitoring programmes and identification of management actions required to assess changes.
- 10.2.3.6 Approval of bylaws and amendments to regulations to control commercial activities and surface water activities of vessels in the Marine Reserve.

11 Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island Place

11.1 Description

Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island (Hauturu)—the windblown summit of Toi—was New Zealand’s second formally protected island nature reserve (after Resolution Island in Fiordland) (refer to Volume II, Map 7.7). The island contains one of the largest remaining areas of northern New Zealand forest that is free from mammalian pests. As the highest island in the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana (722 m), Hauturu has a well-developed cloud forest and is home to a number of plant species that are otherwise restricted to a small number of high peaks in northern New Zealand. Most of the island has never been logged or browsed (except by kiore/rat (*Rattus exulans*)). The distinctive altitudinal sequence and ecological associations, the presence of species as outliers, and unexpected species absences make its forests outstandingly important.

The island has one of the highest levels of fauna species diversity for forest habitat in New Zealand and is a site of international significance. Significant populations include the New Zealand storm petrel (*Pealeornis maoriana*) the only naturally occurring population of hihi/stitchbird (*Notiomystis cincta*), the largest known population of tīti/Cook’s petrel (*Pterodroma cookii*), two species of pekapeka/bat (long-tailed, *Chalinolobus tuberculatus*; and short-tailed, *Mystacina tuberculata*), and wētāpunga/Little Barrier giant wētā (*Deinacrida heteracantha*) and niho taniwha/chevron skink (*Oligosoma homalonotum*). It is also home to a growing population of northern tuatara (*Sphenodon punctatus punctatus*), a significant number of which have been released from captivity in recent years after the island was declared free from cats and kiore/rat (*Rattus exulans*).

Hauturu is a place of iconic importance for Ngāti Manuhiri and those other iwi who also share ancestral ties to it. Until 1896, the island was a permanent home for Ngāti Manuhiri, a refuge and an important burial place for Ngāti Manuhiri rangatira. Gardens on the island and the resources from the surrounding sea sustained many generations of Ngāti Manuhiri. Historically and culturally significant remains include stone structures, terraces, middens, burial sites and seven pā.

Kauri was felled on parts of Hauturu from the 1860s. Timber felling ceased with the Crown’s compulsory purchase of the island in 1894, and the following year the island was set aside as a nature reserve. The circumstances of the sale and the eviction of tangata whenua from the island have been acknowledged by the Crown as being unreasonable and unfair.

The Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012 vested Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island in Ngāti Manuhiri. Seven days after the settlement, on 26 November 2012, the gift area was re-vested in the Crown as a gift back to the Crown by the Ngāti Manuhiri trustees for the people of New Zealand. (The island’s other former owners of Ngāti Rehua and Ngāti Wai descent are acknowledged.) The island continues to be managed by the Crown as a nature reserve. A 1.2370 ha site, known as Te Maraeroa and located between the Ranger’s house and the bunk-house, has been vested in Ngāti Manuhiri, subject to a conservation covenant.

Hauturu and Te Maraeroa are subject to a whenua rāhui¹⁷. A conservation management plan for the area gifted back to the Crown will be developed with Ngāti Manuhiri and the

17 A whenua rāhui acknowledges the traditional, cultural, spiritual and historical association of iwi with a specific site of significance administered by the Department of Conservation. The whenua rāhui requires the Minister of Conservation and Ngāti Manuhiri to develop and publicly notify a set of protection principles that will assist the Minister to avoid harming or diminishing values of the Ngāti Manuhiri group with regard to that land. The New Zealand Conservation Authority and relevant Conservation Boards will be required to have particular regard to the statement of Ngāti Manuhiri values and the protection principles and consult with Ngāti Manuhiri over the areas subject to the whenua rāhui.

Auckland Conservation Board. In preparing this CMS, particular regard has been given to the views of Ngāti Manuhiri in respect of their values and the protection principles in the Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012 (Appendix 14).

Hauturu has an active community conservation group. The Little Barrier Island (Hauturu) Supporters Trust, established in 1997, supports a number of key work programmes on the islands. In particular, it raises funds for weed eradication, tuatara recovery and for selected research purposes. The Trust raises public awareness of the island including facilitating volunteer weekends.

Hauturu's largely unmodified environment and high diversity of species provide a visitor experience that is unique in the upper North Island. As a nature reserve, maintaining ecological integrity takes priority over public access and advocacy on the island. Visitation is by permit only. All those visiting the island are required to follow strict biosecurity measures to prevent the introduction of diseases, including kauri dieback disease, which has not yet been detected, and plant and animal pests that would adversely affect the island's ecological values. Aircraft require prior approval from the Department to fly into the airspace above the island (3500 feet above the surface). Further measures to protect the island's values may include prohibiting the mooring and anchoring of boats within up to half a nautical mile of the island, unless a permit has been granted.

The number of visitors to Hauturu has remained relatively stable over the last decade, rising by approximately 14% over this period. Of the 329 recorded visitors in 2010, 31% were independent or guided day visitors, visiting the island for nature appreciation or recreation. Visitors can be divided into two main groups: those on commercial guided tours; and non-commercial specialist conservation, recreation and education groups looking for an independent nature viewing experience. In 2011, only two concessions for guided tours had been granted. The remaining 69% visited the island for other purposes, including management, research or volunteering, and most stayed overnight.

Visitors travel to Hauturu by commercial charter boat, landing on the beach at Te Maraeroa flat. With its rugged coastline, exposed nature and lack of landing facilities, accessing the boulder-lined shores can be challenging for visitors. Activities on the island include day tramps and wildlife viewing. Visitors are allowed access to a limited number of tracks originating from the island's field base at Te Maraeroa flat, as well as the landing area and bunkhouse. The bunkhouse sleeps 14 people, and is used for management purposes by department staff, researchers, contractors and volunteers. A limited opportunity may exist for overnight stays under a guiding concession; however, this would need to be carefully assessed against the current demand for space by department staff, researchers, contractors and volunteers, and if not able to be achieved, concession applications would have to be declined, or the capacity of the bunkhouse would have to be increased.

Although visitor numbers have not increased greatly over the last 10 years, it is anticipated that the demand to visit the island will increase over the next decade. To protect conservation values, maintain a low-key visitor experience and ensure that visitors do not adversely impact on management activities, visitor numbers will be limited to 600 visitors per year, with a maximum of up to 20 day visitors on any one day. These numbers are consistent with other nature reserve islands where tourism activities and visits take place on a limited scale. Entry permits will continue to be required for all visitors. Researchers, volunteers, iwi and other persons supporting the island's management will continue to require permits to access the island. These will be assessed on a case-by-case basis outside the cap of 600 day visitors per year.

The limit of 600 visitors per year introduces a Limited Supply Concession situation for the following commercial activities:

- Guided walk concession(s) for day visitors, and
- Potential overnight stay concession(s) for overnight visitors

In managing visitor access to the island, the Department's preference is that all visits are managed under one or two concession operators that would provide a quality visitor experience, and ensure that pre-trip and on-island biosecurity measures are met. This will be investigated through the conservation management plan process in consultation with Ngāti Manuhiri. In the meantime, an appropriate balance between commercial guided tour groups and volunteer-led organised groups will be retained within the limit of 600 visitors per year.

Since relatively few people will ever visit the island, it is important that the Department promotes the island's significant natural values and raises awareness of the threats to its ecological integrity through a variety of different media. The Department occasionally receives requests to film on Hauturu. These are usually connected with media coverage of specific events, such as species introductions, or for the purposes of developing documentary programmes. In such instances, filming is considered to be supporting the island's management by heightening public understanding of its values.

11.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island Place

11.2.1 OUTCOME

Hauturu remains a priority ecosystem unit due to its unique assemblage of indigenous plants and animals. Active plant pest control supports the island's ecosystem in recovering naturally from the effects of introduced mammals, and species that historically existed on the island are gradually being reintroduced. It provides a benchmark for monitoring long-term ecological change or recovery in New Zealand. Naturally occurring threatened species and ecosystem processes on the island are protected from invasive species.

The relationship between the Department and Ngāti Manuhiri and their involvement in the management of Hauturu is substantially enhanced. Ngāti Manuhiri has strengthened their cultural footprint on the island, and integrated management of Te Maraeroa flat and the wider island is being achieved. The interests of Ngāti Wai and Ngāti Rehua who have an affiliation with Hauturu are actively protected and provided for.

The Department works cooperatively with Ngāti Manuhiri and the Little Barrier Island (Hauturu) Supporters Trust on continued recovery and protection of the island, scientific research and forming strategic relationships with others to advance the outcomes for Hauturu.

Landing by boat, visitors experience Hauturu's remoteness, outstanding scenic beauty, abundant birdlife, and largely unmodified natural environment through exploring Te Maraeroa flat and a limited number of tracks. The island's ecological integrity is maintained by restricting the number of visitors and implementing stringent biosecurity measures. Visitors and others gain an understanding and appreciation of Ngāti Manuhiri's values and association with Hauturu. All buildings and facilities are sensitively sited and designed in keeping with the natural, historic and cultural values of the landscape. There are limited opportunities for visits to the island for wildlife viewing and nature appreciation, including overnight stays if accommodation capacity permits.

11.2.2 POLICIES

- 11.2.2.1 May allow out-of-range threatened species to be transferred to Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island if the transfer is temporary or in the national interest.
- 11.2.2.2 Should limit public access to Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island to a maximum of 600 day visitors per year. To manage public access, the following will apply:
 - a) permits will only be issued for up to 20 day visitors on any one day; and
 - b) visitor access will be restricted to Te Maraeroa flat and defined tracks.
- 11.2.2.3 Manage access by permit for volunteers, researchers and others supporting the island's management outside the daily and annual allocations set out in Policy 11.2.2.2.
- 11.2.2.4 Limit concessions for nature tourism visits to a maximum of 420 day visitors per year (within the annual 600 day visitor permits limit).
- 11.2.2.5 May allow nature tourism visit concessions, subject to the activity:
 - a) not requiring the development of landing facilities;
 - b) avoiding adverse effects on natural values, particularly the introduction of pest plants and animals, impacts on threatened flora and fauna, and changes to ecological processes; and
 - c) fostering an appreciation of the island's natural, historic and cultural values.
- 11.2.2.6 Investigate amending Policies 11.2.2.2 and 11.2.2.3 to require all nature tourism visits to be controlled under concession.
- 11.2.2.7 May set aside days where no visitor access is permitted to Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island to provide for Department of Conservation management purposes.
- 11.2.2.8 Monitor the impacts of visitation on the resources and values of the Island.
- 11.2.2.9 If monitoring shows that the natural values of Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island are not being sufficiently protected, investigate, in consultation with tangata whenua and the community, options for increasing the protection of this island including seeking to prohibit mooring and anchoring of boats within up to half a nautical mile of Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, other than by way of an entry permit.
- 11.2.2.10 Maintain the current range of basic backcountry visitor facilities on Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island.
- 11.2.2.11 May allow concessions for overnight stays, subject to departmental accommodation capacity being available, and the activity avoiding adverse effects on natural values and having a minimal impact on research and management activities.
- 11.2.2.12 May allow concessions for filming, subject to the activity avoiding adverse effects on natural values, minimising impacts on research and management activities, and fostering an appreciation of the island's conservation values.
- 11.2.2.13 May allow aircraft landings for approved filming and scientific research purposes where the activity cannot be achieved without the use of aircraft. The criteria listed in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three should be used when assessing applications for helicopter landings and landings should only be permitted on Te Maraeroa flat.
- 11.2.2.14 Work with Ngati Manuhiri and other iwi who have an affiliation with Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island to ensure that visitors gain an understanding of the island's natural, historic and cultural values.

- 11.2.2.15 Maintain strict biosecurity measures to prevent the introduction of diseases, and plant and animal pests that would adversely affect the island’s ecological values including undertaking actions to prevent the establishment of kauri dieback disease in accordance with Policy 24.16.1.1 in Part Three.
-

11.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 11.2.3.1 Identification of scheduled outputs in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem unit within this Place: Te Hauturu-o-Toi/ Little Barrier.
- 11.2.3.2 Preparation and approval of joint conservation management plan with Ngāti Manuhiri and the Auckland Conservation Board.
- 11.2.3.3 Investigation to bring all nature tourism visits under a concession regime.
- 11.2.3.4 Initiation of a monitoring programme to assess the environmental impacts of visitation on the resources and values of the island.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 11.2.3.5 Report on the outcomes of visitor monitoring programme.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 11.2.3.6 Eradication of climbing asparagus (*Asparagus scandens*) and sustained control of other pest plants that disrupt ecosystem processes and threaten indigenous species.
- 11.2.3.7 Report on the outcomes of the visitor monitoring programme and identification of management actions to address changes.

12 Kermadec Islands Place

12.1 Description

The Kermadec Islands (Kermedecs), which lie between 800 and 1100 km northeast of the North Island, are true ‘oceanic islands’, never having been connected to the New Zealand mainland (refer to Volume II, Map 7.8). The islands are the eroded remains of volcanic seamounts rising 8000 m from the sea floor. They contain steep cliffs, terraces, and ridge and valley systems.

The isolation of the Kermadecs has led to the development of a unique range of biological communities of subtropical and temperate origins, which mostly comprise endemic species. The islands are significant for their extensive seabird communities, including 35 bird species, five of which are found nowhere else in the world. The Meyer Islands host one of the few remaining strongholds of the threatened Kermadec petrel (*Pterodroma neglecta*); the endemic white-naped petrel (*Pterodroma cervicalis*) is found only on Macauley Island; and Hazard Islet, adjacent to Macauley Island, is the only known breeding location of the takahikare-moana/Kermadec white-faced storm-petrel (*Pelagodroma marina albiclunis*).

The Kermadecs’ flora is reasonably restricted in diversity, consisting of local endemics or species that disperse widely. Species are either widespread Pacific Island species or closely related to species from mainland New Zealand, Norfolk Island, Australia and Tonga. Several threatened plant species have their strongholds on Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), such as sickle fern (*Pellaea falcata*) and Kermadec fireweed (*Senecio kermadecensis*). Many plants are now recovering following the eradication of goats (*Capra hircus*) and rats.

The Kermadec’s marine environment has been included on New Zealand’s Tentative List for World Heritage Area Status in recognition of the area’s natural values. See also Part Two Marine Reserves Place and in particular Policy 9.2.2.7.

Much is still unknown about the nature and significance of the history of human activity on the Kermadecs. Based on archaeological evidence, it is likely that Raoul Island was settled from New Zealand during the late 13th and early 14th centuries. There is evidence of settlement on the island, including communities that were based on coastal fishing, and the harvesting of seabirds and marine mammals. Raoul Island (Rangitāhua) is especially significant to Te Aupōuri, Ngāti Kuri and other Māori, in that it served as one of the only stop-over points that allowed migratory waka to make the long and dangerous journey between the Cook Islands and New Zealand.

Raoul and Macauley Islands were used extensively for provisioning by whaling vessels from the early to mid-19th century, when goats were liberated as a food source. From 1836 onwards, a number of attempts were made to resettle Raoul, which focused mainly on Denham Bay and the raised terraces along the northern coastline. The New Zealand Government annexed the Kermadec Islands in 1887. Most of Raoul and all other islands in the group were set aside as a flora and fauna reserve in 1934. The New Zealand National Meteorological Service established a permanent base on Raoul in 1937 and retained a presence until the Department took over the island’s management from the Meteorological Service in 1989.

Maintaining a presence on Raoul has strategic importance, as it is at the most northern extremity of New Zealand’s territory. The Department receives significant logistical support from the New Zealand Defence Force in resupplying the island, and transporting staff and volunteers who contribute to plant pest control work on the island. However, the cost of maintaining a permanent base and managing the health and safety of staff and volunteers are ongoing challenges for the Department.

The islands are nature reserves and access is prohibited under the Reserves Act unless an access permit is obtained.

Raoul, the largest island in the group, is the only island on which visitors may be granted a permit to land. The island receives up to 100 visitors per year. Attracted by the remote setting and the chance to experience a largely unmodified natural environment, visitors generally arrive on Raoul either by yacht travelling from mainland New Zealand to other Pacific Islands, or as part of a guided natural history expedition. Due to the isolated nature of the island and its lack of harbour, it is expected that visitor numbers will remain low.

12.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Kermadec Islands Place

12.2.1 OUTCOME

The Kermadecs remain nationally significant for their endemic ecosystems and threatened species, and internationally significant for providing seabird habitat at subtropical latitudes.

The ecosystems on Raoul and Macauley Islands remain free of introduced mammals and are recovering naturally from the impacts the mammals had before eradication. A long-term eradication programme of plant pest species that threaten the ecosystem values of Raoul continues. Naturally occurring indigenous species and ecosystem processes on the island are protected from invasive species under active management. Other Kermadec Islands that have never had introduced mammals provide a benchmark for monitoring long-term ecological change on Raoul and Macauley Islands.

The relationship between the Department and tangata whenua and their involvement in the management of the Kermadecs is substantially enhanced.

Historic and cultural heritage sites of Polynesian and early European settlement on Raoul are conserved where this is compatible with the island's nature reserve status.

The Kermadecs' vast distance from mainland New Zealand limits visitor numbers. Travelling by boat, independent and guided day visitors to Raoul appreciate the island's remoteness and unmodified nature, unique geology, and distinctive subtropical and temperate flora and fauna. Greater knowledge of the Kermadecs' natural, historic and cultural values is achieved through limited media opportunities and off-site interpretation.

12.2.2 POLICIES

- 12.2.2.1 Liaise and consult with the Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences, the New Zealand National Meteorological Service and the New Zealand Defence Force with regard to the management of the Kermadec Islands.
- 12.2.2.2 Investigate increasing the involvement of non-governmental organisations in advancing the outcomes of this Place.
- 12.2.2.3 May allow concessions for meteorological, natural hazard and scientific investigations (including essential structures) that can only be undertaken on the Kermadec Islands.
- 12.2.2.4 May allow access for scientific research and educational purposes, provided that the proposal is consistent with the outcome sought for this Place.

Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)

- 12.2.2.5 Should limit public access to Raoul Island to a maximum of 150 visitors per year, subject to compliance with biosecurity and other measures to protect the natural features, ecosystems and cultural values of the island and the surrounding marine reserve.
 - 12.2.2.6 Manage access by permit for volunteers, researchers and others supporting the island's management outside the annual limit under Policy 12.2.2.5.
 - 12.2.2.7 May allow occasional aircraft landings on Raoul Island, but only for ship-to-shore transfer of visitors, and approved scientific research and filming purposes, in accordance with the criteria listed in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three.
 - 12.2.2.8 May allow concessions for filming and guided day visits, provided that these activities:
 - a) avoid adverse effects on the island's natural values, in particular the introduction of plant and animal pests, impacts on threatened flora and fauna, and changes to ecological processes;
 - b) do not generate a demand for additional visitor facilities or infrastructure;
 - c) have minimal impact on management activities; and
 - d) foster an appreciation of the island's conservation values.
 - 12.2.2.9 Investigate and, if appropriate, provide a wharf and/or landing facilities on Raoul Island.
-

12.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 12.2.3.1 Identification of scheduled outputs in approved work plans for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place: Macauley Island and Raoul Island Group.
- 12.2.3.2 Heritage assessments for actively managed historic sites on Raoul Island.
- 12.2.3.3 Investigation to increase involvement of non-governmental organisations in outcomes for Kermadec Islands.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 12.2.3.4 Review of plant pest control programme.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 12.2.3.5 Review of plant pest control programme.
- 12.2.3.6 Sustained control of plant pests that disrupt ecosystem processes and threaten indigenous species.

13 Mokohinau Islands Place

13.1 Description

The Mokohinau Islands lie approximately 20 km northwest of Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) at the outer edge of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer to Volume II, Map 7.9). They are predominantly covered by coastal pōhutukawa forest, although some islands in the group have been burnt and are now shrublands. Despite being the most modified of the Mokohinau Islands, Burgess Island (Pokohinu) has retained the rich and diverse fauna typical of the group. This island was grazed until 1980, and a thick cover of buffalo grass (*Stenotaphrum secundatum*) has developed since the removal of cattle and goats. Natural regeneration is slowly taking place, most noticeably around the cliffs and bluffs where remnant stands of pōhutukawa have survived.

On the Mokohinau Islands, there are significant populations of seven species of threatened lizards, including Town's skink (*Oligosoma townsi*), robust skink (*Cyclodina alani*) and the endemic Mokohinau gecko (*Dactylocnemis* sp. 'Mokohinau gecko'), as well as a number of burrowing seabirds. The Mokohinau stag beetle (*Geodorcus ithagnis*) is found on one of the off-lying rock stacks and is endemic to the group. Six threatened plants are also present, and the nature reserve is a stronghold for nau/Cook's scurvy grass (*Lepidium oleraceum*), pirita/white mistletoe (*Tupeia antarctica*) and hawkweed (*Picris burbidgeae*).

The Mokohinau Islands became mammalian pest-free following the eradication of rats on Fanal Island (Motukino) in 1998. Groper Island (Tatapihi) is one of the few islands in New Zealand from which introduced weeds and animal pests have always been absent. Some exotic weed species are still present around the old house sites on Burgess.

Burgess comprises an important historic landscape. Archaeological sites associated with early Māori occupation indicate mainly seasonal activities, including fishing, gardening and muttonbirding. The harvest of ōi/grey-faced petrel (northern muttonbird, *Pterodroma macroptera gouldi*) continues today, under the Grey Faced Petrel (Northern Muttonbird) Notice 1979.

A lighthouse, now automated, was established on Burgess in 1883. As well as the remains of the lighthouse keeper's settlement and jetty, the island has historic sites associated with coastal defence activities during World War II. The lighthouse complex sits mostly within an area administered by Maritime New Zealand, which is not part of the reserve, and includes a helicopter landing pad, which is used by Maritime New Zealand to service the lighthouse. The Meteorological Service of New Zealand also uses the helicopter landing pad to service an automatic weather station on the island.

Burgess is administered by the Department as a scenic reserve and unclassified lighthouse reserve, and visitors are welcome. General public access to all other islands in the Mokohinau (Pokohinu) group is prohibited without a permit, as they are nature reserves. Attracted by its clear water and diverse marine life, visitors generally visit Burgess by private boat or as part of a natural heritage tour group. The remoteness and exposed nature of Burgess means that visitor use is expected to remain low. The proximity of Burgess to other islands classified as nature reserves or wildlife sanctuaries and its improving natural values pose challenges for allowing continued open public access to Burgess. The risks of animal pests being accidentally reintroduced are currently managed through public awareness campaigns, maintaining bait stations and prohibiting camping. Further actions to protect the island will include classifying remaining parts of the island as a scenic reserve and adding foreshore areas that are part of the common coastal and marine area into the reserve. In the future, if monitoring shows that the natural values are not being

adequately protected by the island’s current classification, the Department will investigate options to improve the level of protection.

13.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Mokohinau Islands Place

13.2.1 OUTCOME

The Mokohinau Islands are a priority ecosystem unit. In the nature reserve parts of the island group, the maintenance of the integrity of natural ecosystems and habitats takes priority over public access and advocacy. Naturally occurring threatened species and ecosystem processes on the islands are protected from invasive species. The natural values of the Mokohinau Islands are protected through advocacy and other statutory actions undertaken by the Department.

The relationship between the Department and Ngāti Rehua, and their involvement in the management of the Mokohinau Islands is substantially enhanced. The interests of Ngāti Wai and Ngāti Manuhiri who have an affiliation with the islands are actively protected and provided for.

The remoteness, exposed nature and restricted access to the Mokohinau Islands mean that visitor numbers remain low and focused on Burgess. Travelling by boat, visitors experience the isolation of this island group and are attracted to the clear waters surrounding the Mokohinau Islands, which provide opportunities for diving and fishing. Landing by boat or helicopter, day visitors to Burgess enjoy its ruggedness, natural quiet and historic lighthouse settlement.

13.2.2 POLICIES

- 13.2.2.1 May allow access to the nature reserve for scientific research and educational purposes, provided that the proposal is consistent with the outcome sought for this Place.
- 13.2.2.2 Maintain public access to Burgess Island (Pokohinu), and actively promote biosecurity and other measures to protect Burgess and adjacent nature reserve islands.
- 13.2.2.3 May allow occasional aircraft landings on Burgess Island (Pokohinu) for filming and scientific research purposes where it supports the outcome for this Place and recreation purposes, in accordance with the criteria listed in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three.
- 13.2.2.4 Provide improved on-island interpretation of the natural and historic values on Burgess Island (Pokohinu).
- 13.2.2.5 May allow concessions for filming and guided day visits on Burgess Island (Pokohinu) only, provided that these activities avoid adverse effects on the island’s natural values—in particular the introduction of pest plants and animals and impacts on threatened flora and fauna—and the remote visitor experience.
- 13.2.2.6 Should seek legal protection for the natural and historic values of the area administered by Maritime New Zealand on Burgess Island (Pokohinu).
- 13.2.2.7 Investigate an extension to the Burgess Island Scenic Reserve to include the adjacent foreshore areas.

- 13.2.2.8 Seek to have the lighthouse reserve on Burgess Island (Pokohinu) classified as a scenic reserve.
 - 13.2.2.9 If monitoring shows that the natural values of the Mokohinau Islands are not being sufficiently protected, investigate, in consultation with tangata whenua and the community, options for increasing the protection of the islands including:
 - a) seeking to reclassify Burgess Island (Pokohinu) and adjacent islets and rocks as a nature reserve; or
 - b) seeking to prohibit the mooring and anchoring of boats within up to half a nautical mile of the nature reserve islands, unless they hold an entry permit.
-

13.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 13.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem unit located in this Place: Mokohinau Group.
- 13.2.3.2 Heritage assessments for actively managed historic sites on Burgess Island (Pokohinu).
- 13.2.3.3 Initiation of discussions to secure scenic reserve status for the area of Burgess Island (Pokohinu) administered by Maritime New Zealand.
- 13.2.3.4 Review of options to increase protection for Burgess Island (Pokohinu) and implementation of agreed actions.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 13.2.3.5 Classification of lighthouse reserve on Burgess Island (Pokohinu) as a scenic reserve.
- 13.2.3.6 Investigation into the addition of foreshore areas around Burgess Island (Pokohinu).
- 13.2.3.7 Review of biosecurity monitoring to determine whether natural values on Burgess Island (Pokohinu) are sufficiently protected.
- 13.2.3.8 Installation of interpretation on Burgess Island (Pokohinu).

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 13.2.3.9 Review of biosecurity monitoring to determine whether natural values on Burgess Island (Pokohinu) are sufficiently protected.

14 Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place

Note: In 2013, the Minister of Conservation requested the Department to investigate the reclassification of conservation (stewardship) areas on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island). The decision to reclassify all 16 stewardship areas (as well as incorporating the Hirakimatā – Kaitoke Swamp Ecological Area and Wairahi Forest Sanctuary Area) to create a 12,109 ha conservation park, and to establish an advisory committee for the park was announced on 20 July 2014. The Aotea Conservation Park will be formally declared in the New Zealand Gazette once required survey work has been completed (anticipated late 2014 – early 2015).

The Department manages more than 16 000 ha on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) (Great Barrier), which represents approximately 60% of the total land area. The remainder of the island (including offshore islands) is made up of Māori land, private land, and land administered by Auckland Council and other organisations such as the Motu Kaikoura Trust (refer to Volume II, Map 7.10).

For the purposes of this CMS, this Place is made up of all areas of public conservation lands and waters on Great Barrier and nearby Rakitu Island (Arid Island) (Rakitu) (Table 3). This Place also encompasses advocacy over Great Barrier, particularly with respect to coastal development, protection of biodiversity values, outstanding landscapes and natural character.

Table 3: Public conservation lands and waters of Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place

ISLAND	LOCATION	SIZE (HA)	LAND STATUS (NUMBER OF LAND UNITS)
Great Barrier	100 km northeast of Auckland City and 17 km north of the Coromandel Peninsula.	28 500*	Conservation Area (16) Ecological Area (1) Sanctuary Area (1) Marginal Strip (13) Government Purpose Reserve (2) Historic Reserve (2) Recreation Reserve (12) Scenic Reserve (6)
Rakitu	5 km off the east coast of Great Barrier.	253	Scenic Reserve

* Great Barrier is not wholly administered by the Department. This figure represents the total area of the island.

14.1 Description

Great Barrier, which is situated to the northeast of Auckland at the entrance to the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana, is the largest island off the coast of the North Island of New Zealand and home to 885¹⁸ residents. The island is one of the last great wild areas in Auckland and provides a unique visitor experience. Rakitu is situated approximately 5 km off the east coast of Great Barrier.

The landscape of Great Barrier is characterised by forest-covered ranges, much of which is regenerating and of volcanic origin; farmland and settlements; and a maze of bays, islands and indented harbours. In the island's centre, spectacular bluffs and ridges rise to the highest peak, Hirakimatā (Mount Hobson) (627 m). The coastline is relatively undeveloped. Coastal features of note include the tidal inlet, estuary and dune systems of Whangapoua, Awana and Kaitoke, the spectacular drowned valley system of Port Fitzroy, and the sea cliffs off the northwest and southeast coasts of the island.

Along with Rakitu and other small islands and groups of rocks along its coast, Great Barrier forms a separate ecological district. The island is well known for its extensive indigenous habitats of outstanding significance, including kauri forests, shrubland associated with rhyolitic rocks and areas of pōhutukawa-dominated forest.

Threatened fauna found on Great Barrier include:

- thirteen species of lizard, including niho taniwha/chevron skink, which is found only on Great Barrier and Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island
- tāiko/black petrel, which nest principally on Hirakimatā and other high points
- tītī/Cook's petrel
- stronghold populations of North Island kākā (*Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis*) and mohopereru/banded rail
- the only island population of pepeketua/Hochstetter's frog.

Te Paparahi is a forested area comprising most of the northern part of Great Barrier. While regenerating kānuka (*Kunzea ericoides*) covers large parts of Te Paparahi, there are also fine stands of taraire (*Beilschmiedia tarairi*), tawa (*Beilschmiedia tawa*), kauri (*Agathis australis*) and kohekohe (*Dysoxylum spectabile*). It has very high wildlife values, with tāiko/black petrel, niho taniwha/chevron skink and pepeketua/Hochstetter's frog present. It is also highly significant to Ngāti Rehua. A remnant population of North Island kōkako (*Callaeas cinerea*) was removed from Te Paparahi in 1994, and Ngāti Rehua and the community aspire to have North Island kōkako returned to this area with the support of the Department. An important but challenging step towards achieving this would be establishing a sufficiently large area, incorporating Te Paparahi, in which introduced predators could be controlled to low numbers and North Island kōkako could thrive.

Great Barrier is a stronghold for one of New Zealand's rarest ducks, pāteke/brown teal, being home to over 60% of New Zealand's population. Okiwi Recreation Reserve, a large farmed area with many wetlands, streams and small patches of remnant vegetation, supports large numbers of pāteke/brown teal. Intensive management and monitoring is undertaken in the reserve in an effort to protect this species.

Adjacent to this reserve, Whangapoua estuary is one of the least modified wetlands in New Zealand, and one of the most valuable for wildlife for its size. The extensive sand dunes of Whangapoua Beach and estuary, which abut the Okiwi Recreation Reserve, are a haven for coastal birds such as tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel, kuaka/bar-tailed godwit, ngutu-parore /wrybill, pūweto/spotless crane and mātātā/North Island fernbird.

18 Results of 2013 Census from Statistics New Zealand website: QuickStats about Great Barrier Island. www.stats.govt.nz (accessed 8 August 2014).

Hirakimatā in the centre of the island is of special significance to Ngāti Rehua. In addition to being one of the principal nesting sites for tāiko/black petrel and tītī/Cook's petrel, it has a unique, unmodified upper montane forest of kauri, *Lagarostrobos colensoi* and manaoa/Kirk's pine (*Halocarpus kirkii*), as well as endemic shrubs such as Great Barrier Island kānuka (*Kunzea sinclairii*). Kaitoke Swamp to the south is the largest wetland in Auckland, and contains orchids, mātātā/North Island fernbird, pūweto/spotless crake and matuku/Australasian bittern.

At least 75 species of regionally and nationally threatened vascular plants, including the endemic prostrate kānuka (*Kunzea ericoides* var. *microflora*) and Great Barrier tree daisy (*Olearia allomii*), are present on Great Barrier, making it one of the richest areas for plant biodiversity in Auckland.

Great Barrier contains the largest area of forest in New Zealand that is known to be possum-free. Mustelids, Norway rats (*Rattus norvegicus*), and hedgehogs (*Erinaceus europaeus*) are also absent. However, a number of pest animals still exist, including ship rats (*Rattus rattus*), kiore, mice (*Mus musculus*), rabbits (*Oryctolagus caniculus*), feral cats (*Felis catus*) and feral pigs (*Sus scrofa*). Argentine ants (*Linepithema humile*) which have become established in the southern part of the island also pose a risk to biodiversity values. The community and Auckland Council are leading attempts to eradicate them from the island. Although the island is relatively free of plant pests that impact on vegetation communities, without ongoing control to prevent their establishment they would have the potential to significantly damage high value ecosystems. For example, pampas (*Cortaderia selloana*), mist flower (*Ageratina riparia*) and Mexican devil (*Ageratina adenophora*) are threats to wetlands, where they can change the ecology of the native sedge and rush communities.

The eradication or control of pests in areas where significant flora or fauna are threatened is a key priority for conservation management, as is the prevention of entry of further plant and animal pest species. In many areas, this will require the control of pests in cooperation with adjoining landowners and managers. A number of community groups and individuals are actively involved in restoration and pest management projects on Great Barrier and offshore islands.

A significant proportion of the community has expressed a long-term aspiration to remove animal pests from Great Barrier. Following the eradication of feral goats and fallow deer in 2006 and 2009, respectively, the next significant step would be to eradicate rats and feral cats, both of which are preventing the reintroduction of a number of threatened species and impacting on forest health. Their removal would be expensive and pose significant technical challenges to be successful, including the fact that the island is inhabited and has widely dispersed communities; the size of the island relative to other islands on which successful eradications have been carried out; and the differing community views on eradication methods and the short-term impacts of them. Ongoing biosecurity measures would be required as reestablishment would quickly undo any ecological gains that had been made.

Tangata whenua, many of whom live on Great Barrier today, can trace their association with the island back over many centuries. The island has been inhabited for much of the last 700 years, resulting in a unique assemblage of cultural and historic sites and associations. Evidence of that occupation can be seen in the island's numerous archaeological sites that occur around much of the accessible coastline. Some of these sites have been dated to the earliest period of Polynesian settlement, and provide information on the past ways of life, as well as the environment and food sources. The Department actively manages three pā associated with this Māori occupation.

The European history of Great Barrier illustrates well the exploitative phase of the colonial economy, based on successive forms of resource extraction, such as timber harvesting, early

farming, mining and whaling. Its culture and history are reflected in an excellent range of historic sites on public conservation land. The Department actively manages five of these sites, comprising mining remains at Miners Head and Oreville, SS Wairarapa graves, the Kauri Timber Company sawmill at Whangaparapara, and the site of the Kaiaraara driving dams. Many walking tracks on Great Barrier follow old kauri milling tramway routes, and this close association between the recreational facilities and historic resources means that there are considerable opportunities for interpretation.

The richness of the natural and historic heritage on Great Barrier makes it a priority to ensure that public conservation land is appropriately classified to protect its values. At present, there are 53 differently named areas with eight different classifications under the Conservation Act 1987 and Reserves Act 1977. All areas of public conservation land currently held under the Conservation Act 1987 (excluding marginal strips) are to be incorporated under a single classification as a conservation park. The Hirakimatā-Kaitoke Swamp Ecological Area and Wairahi Forest Sanctuary Area will retain their existing protected area statuses while also being included within the conservation park. Reclassification of reserves held under the Reserves Act 1977 was not within the scope of this process. Visitors are attracted to Great Barrier by its relatively undeveloped landscape, and the combination of natural, cultural and historic heritage, and the community. The island offers a wide range of opportunities for recreation, outdoor education, eco-tourism and scientific study.

Great Barrier is one of the few places in Auckland where visitors can enjoy a recreational experience in a backcountry setting that is distant from the influence of the city. There are over 100 km of tracks on Great Barrier, from short walks, such as the popular Kaitoke Hot Springs Track, to challenging multi-day tramping tracks through the steep interior of the island. There are also six coastal campgrounds and two huts: one located in the lower Kaiaraara valley and the other on the southern side of Mt Heale.

There is considerable potential to further develop Great Barrier as a significant recreation and tourism destination. The Department has responded by developing a multi-day walk, the Aotea Track, which allows visitors to experience the Kaitoke wetland and hot springs, Mt Heale, Hirakimatā, sites of the historic kauri dams, and kauri forest. Increasing effort on species recovery and animal pest control, particularly on Hirakimatā, would greatly enhance this experience and further raise awareness of the special values of the island. Initiatives such as the Aotea Track have the potential to grow the local economy by increasing the number of visitors to the island and the time people spend on the island.

Te Paparahi is managed as a remote visitor management zone, with only a single track providing access to Tataweka, the highest point in the northern part of the island. Small numbers of kayakers and boaties also access Te Paparahi's remote bays for day visits and camping. Some helicopter landings associated with positioning recreational fishers (known as heli-fishing) occur on rock stacks, platforms and islets that are connected to but lie outside the boundaries of Te Paparahi. Helicopter landings in this area need to be managed to ensure they do not impact on natural quiet and remoteness, or pose a biosecurity risk by introducing unwanted pests. The Department intends to continue to manage the area for its remote values in order to protect natural, cultural and historic values, which will increase over time as animal pest control enhances the recovery of indigenous species. This will be achieved by monitoring the impacts of recreational use, and seeking the addition of those exposed parts of the common marine and coastal area adjacent to the conservation area to Te Paparahi.

Mountain biking is permitted on all formed roads on public conservation land on Great Barrier, as well as on the Forest Road track. The Department, in collaboration with Auckland Council, intends to expand the opportunities for mountain biking on the island.

The local economy presents a number of challenges for people living on Great Barrier, including high transport and energy costs, and a small permanent population base. The number of residents is seasonal, swelling hugely during the summer when absentee property owners come over for holidays. The natural resources on the island mean that the local economy is principally resource-based and reliant on the visitor industry, as well as on limited farming, fishing and marine farming, together with related services. Off-island earnings and retirement income are also important.

A number of concessions exist for guiding operations on Great Barrier. There is considerable potential for increased tourism; however, constraints to this industry include high transport costs, the seasonal nature of the visitor industry and the lack of local capital. In consultation with tangata whenua and local communities, the Department will explore ways to identify further concession opportunities. Potential opportunities include, but are not limited to, facilities and services supporting the Aotea multi-day track, specialist guiding tours including wildlife viewing, appreciation of the island's cultural and historic past, and mountain bike tours.

The provision of improved information and interpretation would enhance understanding and support for conservation values, and assist with the development of economic opportunities for the island. There is considerable scope for enhancing the cooperative management approach with other agencies, tangata whenua and the local community.

RAKITU ISLAND (ARID ISLAND)

Rakitu is an isolated island that has great potential for ecological restoration. About half the island is in pasture, with the remainder containing a mix of kānuka/mānuka (*Leptospermum scoparium*) scrub and mixed broadleaf forest. Stock damage to the forest understorey is extensive. However, the island is free from all introduced predators except rodents and cats. The island is home to a population of North Island weka (*Gallirallus australis greyi*), and forest birds such as kererū/New Zealand pigeon (*Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae*), ruru/morepork (*Ninox novaeseelandiae*), and pīpīwharau/shining cuckoo (*Chrysococcyx lucidas*) are also easily seen. Kororā/little penguin, ōi/grey-faced petrel (northern muttonbird) and tara/white-fronted tern (*Sterna striata*) roost and breed around the coast.

Rakitu was the home of Rehua, the founding ancestor of Ngāti Wai/Ngāti Rehua. The island was once permanently occupied by Māori, who cleared the forest from the central valley and established extensive cultivations. The many archaeological sites support the traditional accounts and provide tangible evidence of the early occupation of Rakitu by Māori.

The grazing lease on Rakitu expired in 2013 and the Department intends for the ecological restoration of the island to now begin. Because of the absence of most predators, the island could be an ideal place for rat and feral cat eradication and the transfer of threatened species. The range of species able to be transferred would depend on the continuing presence of weka.

Under the sale and purchase agreement with the Crown, Rakitu's former owners and their families will continue to hold life-time rights to use buildings on the island.

14.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place

14.2.1 OUTCOME

Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) lies sentinel at the entrance to the Gulf, with its distinctive and largely unmodified natural landscapes, including wetlands, an estuary and dune systems. The island's nationally significant ecosystems, habitats and species are protected and thriving in the presence of a resilient and independent resident community that is committed to conservation.

The island community has begun the path towards becoming free of animal pests. The community, tangata whenua, Auckland Council and the Department are working cooperatively to eradicate Argentine ants, rats and feral cats from Great Barrier. Zones of intensive species and pest management focused on priority ecosystem units have been created. These actions enhance the island's status as a safe refuge for threatened and endemic species, which are flourishing and being supplemented by reintroduced species, including the North Island kōkako, which has been returned to Te Paparahi.

Historic and cultural heritage, including archaeological sites, are protected and respected in cooperation with tangata whenua and the community. Interpretation brings the island's natural, historic and cultural values to life, and visitors come away with an enhanced understanding of the history of the island, the period of intensive resource extraction, and its enduring and unique fauna and flora.

A constructive relationship between the Department, tangata whenua, the local community and Auckland Council enables the integrated management of Great Barrier and its offshore islands. The Department works with tangata whenua, Auckland Council and the local community to foster conservation initiatives, particularly those that contribute to the goal of a stable island population, and a flourishing and sustainable visitor economy.

Accessible by air or sea, Great Barrier attracts increasing numbers of visitors, who enjoy the island's outstanding scenic beauty, extensive forest habitats, diverse wildlife and rich history. The island provides the greatest range of recreation opportunities in Auckland on land administered by the Department. Opportunities to showcase and explore the island's values range from short walks to multi-day tramping experiences in settings that range from front country to remote.

As a Gateway destination, tramping the Aotea Track across Hirakimatā (Mount Hobson) is promoted as a premier outdoor recreation opportunity in Auckland and the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park. Visitor facilities, recovering threatened species and restored heritage sites facilitate a memorable experience. Visitors are also attracted to the island for the expanded range of mountain-biking opportunities, ranging from seasonal use of existing tracks to purpose-built tracks that the Department or others (under concession) have built in less ecologically sensitive areas. The Department and Auckland Council work cooperatively to extend the track network to better connect recreation opportunities located in different parts of the island, including to popular anchorages.

Opportunities for overnight stays in existing coastal campsites and backcountry huts remain. A Limited Supply Concession opportunity to provide visitor accommodation or services using the departmental house at Whangaparapara has been commercially assessed and established.

Concessions contribute to a flourishing and sustainable island economy, complement the island's intrinsic values and enhance the visitor experience of this Place.

Te Paparahi, which is managed as a remote visitor management zone, offers visitors low-impact recreation activities in a challenging environment with few facilities. Natural quiet prevails, with visitors only encountering aircraft associated with day heli-fishing on rare occasions. The Department works with neighbouring landowners to ensure that coastal aircraft landings are managed to protect the intrinsic and remote recreational values of Te Paparahi. A small number of recreation-based concessions are indistinguishable from independent visitors.

Rakitu Island (Arid Island)

Rakitu's pastoral and regenerating forest landscape is protected and its indigenous vegetation is regenerating in the absence of mammalian predators and stock. The island provides a safe haven for native species and the diversity of native fauna is increasing. Visitors arriving by private boat, kayak or, occasionally, helicopter experience a landscape and wildlife that are thriving from the removal of livestock and mammalian pests, and enjoy the superb vistas and opportunities for even greater solitude than are found on Great Barrier. Visitors are able to choose between day visits or overnight stays in a basic campsite.

14.2.2 POLICIES

- 14.2.2.1 Actively engage with tangata whenua, Auckland Council, private landowners and the community in conservation management on Great Barrier Island and Rakitu Island by:
- a) encouraging participation in planning for and carrying out ecological restoration work on public conservation lands;
 - b) encouraging and supporting conservation initiatives that work towards a pest-free status for Great Barrier;
 - c) continuing to support cooperative conservation projects, as well as seeking to establish new initiatives;
 - d) encouraging participation in the protection, promotion and interpretation of places of historic and cultural significance; and
 - e) seeking to phase out grazing on Rakitu Island.
- 14.2.2.2 Working with tangata whenua, the community, Auckland Council and private landowners, to control or eradicate high-priority animal and plants pests, focusing on:
- a) areas where animal and plant pests threaten the highest priority ecosystems, habitats and species, particularly those sites listed in Appendix 4;
 - b) preventing the establishment of new animal and plant pests; and
 - c) Rakitu Island.
- 14.2.2.3 Enhance wetland habitats in Okiwi basin to benefit pāteke/brown teal and other wetland species.
- 14.2.2.4 Trial and, if feasible, allow seasonal mountain biking on the Harataonga Coastal Walkway, provided that adverse effects on natural values can be avoided and potential conflict with walkers can be minimised.
- 14.2.2.5 May develop, or grant concessions to develop, purpose-built, publicly available mountain biking tracks on Great Barrier Island. The criteria in Policy 24.3.2.5 in Part Three should be used when assessing concession applications or departmental proposals to develop purpose-built mountain biking tracks.

- 14.2.2.6 Consider options to regulate or formalise camping if unacceptable impacts from informal camping are occurring within Te Paparahi.
- 14.2.2.7 May allow concessions for horse-riding on the Forest Road outside peak times (Christmas to Easter) when visitors are walking the Aotea Track. The criteria in Policy 24.4.2.2 in Part Three should be used when considering the use of horses.
- 14.2.2.8 Should not allow aircraft landings on public conservation land on Great Barrier Island, except as provided in Policies 14.2.2.9, 14.2.2.10 and 14.2.2.11.
- 14.2.2.9 Should limit aircraft landings on Okiwi Recreation Reserve to those required for pasture management, in accordance with the criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three.
- 14.2.2.10 May allow occasional aircraft landings on Rakitu Island Scenic Reserve and in open coastal areas (generally no further than 20 m inland from Mean High Water Springs) of Harataonga Recreation Reserve, Overtons Beach Marginal Strip, Whakatautuna Point Marginal Strip and Harataonga Bay Marginal Strip. Landings should not be allowed adjacent to Overtons Beach during peak visitor periods (from Boxing Day to Waitangi Day and during Easter). The criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three should be used when considering aircraft use.
- 14.2.2.11 May allow occasional aircraft landings in open coastal areas (generally no further than 20 m inland from Mean High Water Springs) of Te Paparahi Conservation Area (south of Miners Cove and south of Rangiwahakaea Bay only), consistent with the outcome for this Place. The criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three should be used when considering aircraft use.

14.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 14.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystem units located in this Place: Mount Young and Northern Great Barrier.
- 14.2.3.2 Identification of sites for intensive pest management to ensure the recovery and persistence of threatened species.
- 14.2.3.3 Heritage assessments for all actively managed historic sites on Great Barrier Island.
- 14.2.3.4 Successful eradication of rats from Rakitu Island.
- 14.2.3.5 Notification in the New Zealand Gazette to reclassify 12,109ha of public conservation land on Great Barrier Island, as identified in the Aotea Conservation Park decision.
- 14.2.3.6 Report on the technical feasibility of returning kōkako to Great Barrier Island.
- 14.2.3.7 Establishment of a monitoring programme to assess the effects of camping activity in Te Paparahi.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 14.2.3.8 Return of North Island kōkako to Te Paparahi.
- 14.2.3.9 Sustained control of plant pests that disrupt ecosystem processes and threaten indigenous species in Te Paparahi.

- 14.2.3.10 Report on the outcome of monitoring programme on the effects of camping activity in Te Paparahi.
- 14.2.3.11 Mountain biking trial on Harataonga Track, with results of monitoring evaluated and decision made on whether mountain biking use will be permanently allowed.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 14.2.3.12 Report on the outcomes of monitoring programme and management actions identified to assess changes.
- 14.2.3.13 Extension of track network to coastal sites.
- 14.2.3.14 Reintroduction of threatened species to Rakitu Island, subject to restoration and species recovery plans.
- 14.2.3.15 Report on progress achieved from working collaboratively with Auckland Council and the island community towards protection of the values on conservation land from the effects of pests.

15 Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai/Pakiri Place

15.1 Description

Kaipara Harbour lies on the west coast of the Auckland isthmus and opens out into the Tasman Sea. Covering 947 km², it is New Zealand's largest enclosed harbour and is one of the largest harbours in the Southern Hemisphere. The Te Arai/Pakiri area, with its striking dune system, spans more than 20 kilometres of the eastern coastline south of Mangawhai. The Kaipara Harbour catchment stretches most of the way across the Auckland isthmus, joining the catchments of Te Arai and Pakiri on the east coast.

The boundary between the area covered by this CMS and that covered by the Northland CMS runs through the Kaipara Harbour entrance, dividing it in two. On the east coast all public conservation lands and waters south of Oruawharo River and the Mangawhai Harbour are covered by this CMS. The area north of this is covered by the Northland Conservation Management Strategy.

For the purposes of this CMS, this Place is made up of all areas of public conservation lands and waters within the Kaipara Harbour catchment and on those parts of the South Kaipara (Te Korowai-o-Te-Tonga) Peninsula that drain into the Tasman Sea, and all areas of public conservation land in the Te Arai and Pakiri areas (refer to Volume II, Map 7.11). This Place also encompasses advocacy off public conservation lands and waters, particularly with respect to the protection of coastal and biodiversity values, outstanding landscapes and natural character.

KAIPARA HARBOUR

The high dune and associated sandfields, spit and intertidal flats of Papakanui at the tip of South Kaipara Head (which are mostly on public conservation land) represent one of the best dune assemblages in Auckland and New Zealand. Papakanui is of national and international significance for migratory wading birds, and is one of two sites within Auckland where tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern is present. Threats to this vulnerable shorebird include habitat depletion, predation, storm events and recreation activities. Successful management techniques in recent years include the employment of wardens, who monitor fairy tern breeding attempts, and undertake activities such as nest translocation, public education and law enforcement. Other threatened species of significance at Papakanui include mātātā/North Island fernbird, dwarf musk (*Mazus novaezeelandiae* subsp. *impolitus*) and *Cyclosorus interruptus*.

Much of Woodhill Forest on South Kaipara Peninsula has been planted with exotic trees and sand-binding species. Crown forestry licence covenants protect the southern part of the Papakanui high dune, as well as a number of smaller areas of shrubland with high ecological values. Eleven regionally and nationally threatened plant species are recorded in the Woodhill area, eight of which are found nowhere else in Auckland, including horoeka/fierce lancewood (*Pseudopanax ferrox*), *Hebe diosmifolia*, Titirangi hebe (*Hebe speciosa*) and tarakupenga/sand coprosma (*Coprosma acerosa*).

South Kaipara Peninsula contains a chain of lakes that have formed in the consolidated Holocene and Pleistocene dunes and collectively form an important wildlife habitat. The Department administers land around Lake Rototoa (formerly Lake Ototoa), the largest of the dune lakes. Lake Rototoa is significant for its populations of kōura/freshwater crayfish (*Paranephrops planifrons*) and weweia/New Zealand dabchick (*Poliiocephalus rufopectus*), which utilise the extensive wetland areas characterised by raupō/bulrush (*Typha angustifolia*). A number of fish that are considered to be conservation pests are also found

in Lake Rototoa, including koi carp (*Cyprinus carpio*), tench (*Tinca tinca*), perch (*Perca fluviatilis*) and rudd (*Scardinius erythrophthalmus*). Lake Rototoa Scenic Reserve contains the single largest area of coastal broadleaf forest on South Kaipara Peninsula.

Okahukura Peninsula, which is highly representative of the Kaipara Harbour area as a whole, contains an unusually rich variety of habitats, including freshwater wetlands, saltmarshes, mānawa/mangroves, hard sand islands and sea cliffs. Pockets of remnant bush contain several threatened plant species, including para/king fern (*Marattia salicina*) and kohurangi/Kirk's tree daisy (*Brachyglottis kirkii* var. *kirkii*). Saltmarshes are a high priority for protection, and also contain threatened plant species such as sea sedge (*Carex litorosa*) and *Baumea complanata*. Tauhoa Scientific Reserve, which lies to the southeast of Okahukura Peninsula, is one of two scientific reserves in New Zealand in which mānawa/mangroves are protected; nearly 80% of its 301 ha is covered with dense mānawa/mangrove forest.

Atuanui/Mt Auckland (305 m)¹⁹ and the associated Hoteo Gorge are prominent landscape features and significant landmarks for Ngāti Whātua. Atuanui/Mt Auckland's forest, which has been protected since 1887, represents the largest single area of protected native forest in the Rodney Ecological District. Although logged, the forest has never been damaged by fire. The area has a high diversity of plants and is notable for the variety of natural plant associations that occur in close proximity to each other, ranging from the saline-influenced wetlands and river vegetation of the Hoteo to hill forest species.

Moturemu Island²⁰ is a steep-cliffed island of low relief that lies to the southeast of Okahukura Peninsula. Moturemu has a significant population of ōi/grey-faced petrel (northern muttonbird) and a regionally unique population of kōwhai ngutu kākā /kakabeak (*Clianthus maximus*). Rats have been eradicated from the island.

Māui dolphins are occasionally seen at the mouth of Kaipara Harbour and are known to use the harbour. The West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary, which extends from Manganui Bluff south and encompasses the Kaipara Harbour, was gazetted in 2008 to provide protection for this critically endangered species from seabed mining and acoustic seismic survey. Restrictions on set net and trawl fishing under the Fisheries Act 1996 also exist within the sanctuary areas to help the recovery of Māui dolphin within its natural range. The review of the Māui Dolphin Threat Management Plan undertaken in 2012 has resulted in a package of protection measures that will be implemented in 2014/15 and also indicated research priorities to focus efforts prior to the 5-year review now due in 2018. Other marine mammals occasionally seen in Kaipara Harbour include terehu/bottlenose dolphins and kera wēra/orca.

The sheltered and bountiful waters of Kaipara Harbour drew Māori to settle on its shores. Numerous archaeological sites reflect the dense concentration of Māori occupation around Kaipara Harbour and along Oruawharo River, which was linked to Mangawhai on the east coast by an important portage. Significant archaeological sites on public conservation land include those found on Moturemu Island and at Lake Rototoa Scenic Reserve.

Places of significance to tangata whenua in Kaipara Harbour include Muriwai and Te Oneone Rangatira beaches at the southern end of South Kaipara Peninsula, which is said to form part of the pathway followed by the spirits of the dead on their journey to Cape Reinga (Te Rerengawairua). Waionui Inlet near Papakanui Spit is considered to be the traditional home of the taniwha of Kaipara Harbour.

19 Under the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Claims Settlement Act 2013, Atuanui Scenic Reserve is vested in the trustees of the Tari Pupuritaonga Trust and will continue to be administered as a reserve.

20 Under the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Claims Settlement Act 2013, Moturemu Island Scenic Reserve is vested in the trustees of the Tari Pupuritaonga Trust, with a conservation covenant provided to the Crown.

Kaipara Harbour attracted early interest from European traders and settlers for its kauri trees, which were logged until the 1890s. Following a decline in logging, the harbour was still used to transport logs milled in other areas until the mid-1940s. Kaipara Harbour proved difficult to navigate due to the bar at its entrance, and the harbour mouth is well known as a burial ground for a number of early vessels. Shipping in Kaipara Harbour declined in the 1940s following the construction of the Brynderwyn Hill Road.

Visitor use in the Kaipara area is focused on South Kaipara Peninsula. Popular activities include fishing, boating, kayaking, off-road vehicle use, hunting, camping, walking and wildlife viewing. Woodhill Forest, which is managed by Hancock Forestry, accommodates activities that are inappropriate in other areas of public open space, including four-wheel drive use, motorbike riding, horse riding, biking and target sports, and it is highly desirable that public access to the forest be retained.

Despite its undeveloped nature and the lack of vehicle access to the water's edge, Lake Rototoa is a popular recreation destination, especially as a trout fishery. The lake is used for water sports such as kayaking and swimming, although motorised watercraft are prohibited. The Department administers land adjacent to the lake and the lake bed, but the water body itself is administered by Auckland Council. Lake Rototoa also serves the surrounding community as a water supply.

Te Rau Puriri Regional Park, which was purchased by the former Auckland Regional Council and Rodney District Council in 2009, has the potential to significantly improve public access between Lake Rototoa and the Kaipara Harbour coast. The future development of a walking track around the lake should be coordinated with Auckland Council's plans for developing the regional park.

Okahukura Peninsula receives fewer visitors than South Kaipara Peninsula. The distinctive cultural landscape, natural features and remoteness of Okahukura Peninsula give the area a special quality. Activities on the peninsula include boating, fishing, game bird hunting and camping. Atiu Creek Regional Park, at the eastern end of the peninsula, is managed by Auckland Council and provides complementary opportunities for walking, mountain biking and wildlife viewing.

Atuanui/Mt Auckland is the highest peak in the Kaipara Harbour area. A walkway passes through the Atuanui Scenic Reserve and Kaipara Hills Recreation Reserve, crossing the hill's southern and western slopes, and providing commanding views of Kaipara Harbour and its hinterland. The nearby lower Hoteo River is popular for boating, kayaking and whitebaiting.

Papakanui Conservation Area forms part of the South Kaipara Air Weapons Range, which is operated by the New Zealand Defence Force. Uses of the range include demolition training, aerial weapons delivery and proof testing of weapons. The area is deemed to be a danger area, and access to the public is generally prohibited. Little change in the nature or intensity of their activities is anticipated by the Defence Force in the near future.

Woodhill Forest is home to a fallow deer herd managed for recreational hunting under a ballot system by the Woodhill Fallow Deer Management Committee. This provides the closest hunting opportunity to Auckland city. Some income from ballot applications and hunting permits is used to fence and protect areas containing high conservation values within the forest.

Unauthorised camping and associated fires, vegetation cutting, dumping in estuarine areas, and dogs threaten conservation values in Kaipara Harbour. Inappropriate off-road vehicle use is also a significant threat to wildlife values, vegetation and dune formations on the Okahukura and South Head peninsulas. Vehicle access to South Kaipara Peninsula is difficult to control due to numerous access points through Woodhill Forest and along Muriwai and Te Oneone Rangatira beaches.

The Kaipara Harbour area is a priority for work focused on raising public awareness of the threats that unauthorised off-road vehicles can pose to conservation values, and increasing public knowledge and support for the Kaipara Harbour's conservation values.

The Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group, established in 2005, was initiated by Te Uri o Hau, a hapū of Ngāti Whātua, who called upon other agencies and community stakeholders to assist in managing Kaipara Harbour. The Group recognises the challenge of managing the competing and sometimes conflicting uses of the Kaipara Harbour's resources. The Department is represented on the steering committee of the Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group.

The South Kaipara and Tapora Landcare Groups are active in the Kaipara Harbour area. Landcare groups undertake activities including pest control, restoration and community advocacy on local environmental issues. Other conservation groups, including the Ornithological Society of New Zealand and the Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society, are involved in monitoring and advocating for significant species in the Kaipara area, particularly shorebirds.

TE ARAI/PAKIRI

The Pakiri-Mangawhai sand system, a 30 km stretch of coastline between the rocky headlands of Bream Tail and Cape Rodney, is made up of a series of peninsulas, headlands and drowned embayments. Te Arai is situated to the north of this stretch of coastline and Pakiri to the south. Public conservation land in the area includes the Te Arai and Pakiri scenic reserves as well as other small reserves and a number of marginal strips along the coastline and small inland lakes.

The sweeping oceanic beach between Pakiri and Mangawhai is backed by sand dunes, sandfields and intertidal flats. Historically the dune system at Te Arai was much larger, but the majority of it is now under a pine plantation, planted in the 1960s to protect adjacent farmland from encroaching sand.

Due to Te Arai's relative remoteness, the dune system retains components of its original vegetation, including the native sand binding spinifex (*Spinifex sericeus*) and pīngao (*Desmoschoenus spiralis*). The threatened plant sand coprosma (*Coprosma acerosa*) is also present, and occurs in higher densities at Te Arai than in other dunes in Auckland.

The Te Arai/Pakiri area is of national and international significance for wading birds, being the second site in Auckland where tara-iti/New Zealand fairy terns are present. New Zealand fairy terns have nested at both Pakiri and Te Arai over recent years, and the Te Arai Stream mouth is also used as a post-breeding flocking site. As with birds in the Kaipara Harbour, habitat depletion, predation, storm events and recreation activities are threats to this shorebird.

Other threatened species of significance in the Te Arai/Pakiri area include matuku/Australasian bittern, tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel and taranui/Caspian tern. Te Arai also supports healthy populations of the threatened katipō (*Lactrodectus katipo*), which prefer to live in the pīngao which covers the sand dunes, and moko kākāriki/Auckland green gecko (*Naultinus elegans elegans*).

Te Arai is so named as it was the place the Moe-kakara waka, which Tahuu captained, landed and set up a temporary shelter or aria. Tahuu also set up a stone found there as a tuahu/altar, and made ceremonial offerings to it to protect his people. The stone was known as Te Toka-tu-whenua and became a famous tuahu or ceremonial place, and also an uruuruwhenua, a place which visitors made their offerings before going into the village of the local people. Evidence of terraces and middens can be found in the Te Arai area. Early European settlers made their living in the Te Arai area by digging for kauri gum.

Although its remoteness and gravelled roads limit visitor numbers, Te Arai is a popular spot for surfers. Pakiri generally gets slightly higher visitor numbers than Te Arai, and is also a known surfing spot. Other activities in this area include wildlife viewing, horse riding, dog and beach walking.

The Te Arai Dotterel Care Group carry out activities including predator control, fencing off nesting sites and community advocacy in the Te Arai area. As with the Kaipara Harbour, other conservation groups are involved in monitoring and advocating for significant species in the Kaipara area, particularly shorebirds.

15.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai/Pakiri Place

15.2.1 OUTCOME

The highly dynamic geomorphic sites, sandfields, dune lakes and dune field ecosystems of Kaipara Harbour and Te Arai/Pakiri are protected. Freshwater, wetland and harbour habitats are protected, and habitat quality is being progressively improved. Through a collaborative relationship with tangata whenua, communities, local government and others, the distinctive natural character and landscape values of this Place are protected, and its coastal environment is preserved.

Outstanding wildlife is valued, and populations of threatened shorebirds including tara-iti/ New Zealand fairy tern are increasing. The population of Māui dolphin is recovering and effectively protected. The health of forest remnants that are treasured by the community and tangata whenua is improving.

Historic and cultural heritage on public conservation land, particularly archaeological sites, are conserved, protected and respected. The Department works with tangata whenua and the community to identify and protect sites of special cultural, maritime and historic interest.

A constructive and enduring working relationship is maintained between the Department and Ngāti Manuhiri and Ngāti Whātua, including Te Uri o Hau and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara. Treaty claim settlements create new opportunities for collaborative management of resources and issues within the harbour catchment (Appendices 13, 14, 15, and 16).

The Department works cooperatively with tangata whenua, in collaboration with other agencies with a statutory role and with the community, to foster conservation initiatives and enable sustainable business opportunities in the Kaipara and Te Arai/Pakiri areas that contribute to the well-being and future growth of the community.

People are attracted to the Kaipara area for its distinctive landscapes, abundant wildlife and rich cultural history. Te Arai/Pakiri's remoteness and natural features attract people in low numbers. Visitors enjoy a range of recreation activities in a predominantly rural and coastal setting, and can expect only rare encounters with aircraft and low visitor numbers. Recreational opportunities are supported by basic facilities.

The Department works cooperatively with other land managers to provide a range of well-managed recreation opportunities that complement those available on public conservation land, and that protect natural, cultural and historic values. Inappropriate off-road vehicle use on the Okahukura and South Head peninsulas and on the east coast is significantly reduced through measures introduced in collaboration with tangata whenua, communities, local government and others.

Recreation and tourism concessions complement the protection of natural and historic heritage. They also enhance the awareness of natural, cultural and historic values, and the connection of visitors with this Place and its communities.

The Department advocates for sustainable management of adjoining land resulting in significant net conservation benefits to this Place.

15.2.2 POLICIES

- 15.2.2.1 Maintain and further develop effective and enduring partnerships with tangata whenua that reflect the outcomes of Treaty settlements as follows:
- a) Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara in respect to the Kaipara Harbour that reflects the intent of the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Claims Settlement Act 2013 (Appendix 16);
 - b) Ngāti Manuhiri in respect of Te Arai/ Pakiri that reflects the intent of the Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012 (Appendix 14); and
 - c) Te Uri o Hau that reflects the intent of the Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002 and Kirihipi (Appendix 13).
- 15.2.2.2 Participate constructively in the Integrated Kaipara Harbour Management Group.
- 15.2.2.3 Actively engage with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies and the community in conservation management of the Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai/Pakiri Place, and support and enable conservation initiatives by tangata whenua and the community, particularly those that:
- a) protect shorebirds and their habitats, particularly the tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern;
 - b) restore native habitats on public conservation land;
 - c) enhance the ecological functioning of public conservation land; and
 - d) control or eradicate high-priority animal and plant pests;
 - e) while allowing natural processes to proceed largely without intervention wherever possible.
- 15.2.2.4 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies, the community and Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Council to minimise the impact of aquatic pests on the dune lakes.
- 15.2.2.5 Support research to determine the extent to which reduced water yield from catchments planted in pines is affecting lake levels.
- 15.2.2.6 Ensure vehicle access on and through public conservation lands and waters is managed to avoid adverse effects on fragile dunes, nesting birds, threatened plants, and the safety and enjoyment of other users.
- 15.2.2.7 Introduce bylaws or regulations to control motorised vehicle use in the Manukapua Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve, Okahukura and Papakanui conservation areas, and Muriwai and Rangitira Beach, Mangawhai, Pakiri and Taumata Creek marginal strips.
- 15.2.2.8 Work with tangata whenua, councils, other agencies and the community to promote initiatives designed to reduce the impacts of vehicles on west and east coast beaches.

- 15.2.2.9 Work cooperatively with the New Zealand Defence Force and Ngāti Whātua in the management of the South Kaipara Air Weapons Range, to minimise the impacts of defence activities on conservation values, and to explore opportunities to provide public access, including by off-road vehicles to this area.
- 15.2.2.10 Work with the Ministry for Primary Industries, local government, tangata whenua and others to implement the Māui Dolphin Threat Management Plan 2013.
- 15.2.2.11 May allow aircraft landings on the landing strip in the Kaipara Hills Recreation Reserve for top dressing operations only. The criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three should be used when considering applications for aircraft use.
- 15.2.2.12 Should not allow aircraft landings on public conservation land, including adjacent to intertidal areas of the Kaipara Harbour at times when indigenous and migratory wildlife are roosting or flocking.
- 15.2.2.13 Should not allow aircraft landings in Papakanui Spit Wildlife Refuge to avoid disturbance of vulnerable shorebird habitat.
- 15.2.2.14 May permit the use of horses in the Muriwai and Rangitira Beach, Pakiri, Taumata Creek and Mangawhai marginal strips to provide access to the beach. The criteria in Policy 24.4.2.2 in Part Three should be used to assess applications for the use of horses.
- 15.2.2.15 May allow concessions on public conservation lands, including guided walking, wildlife viewing, horse-trekking and filming. Concessions should only be authorised if they are consistent with the values of the Place and do not detract from the visitor experience.
- 15.2.2.16 Work with Auckland Council and Ngāti Whātua to manage activities on Lake Rototoa to ensure that any authorised activities do not negatively impact on the qualities of the lake and adjacent public conservation land.
- 15.2.2.17 Investigate and reclassify the following areas so that their land status better reflects their conservation values:
 - a) Okahukura Conservation Area as a scenic reserve; and
 - b) Papakanui Conservation Area, Papakanui Spit Conservation Area and adjacent foreshore areas as an ecological area.
- 15.2.2.18 Advocate for land management practices that do not detrimentally affect the natural environments and ecosystems of the Kaipara Harbour in collaboration with tangata whenua, relevant stakeholders and Auckland Council.

15.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 15.2.3.1 Regulations/bylaws to control motorised vehicle use gazetted.
- 15.2.3.2 Opportunities to increase public access to the South Kaipara Air Weapons Range explored with the New Zealand Defence Force.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 15.2.3.3 Public conservation land at Papakanui and Okahukura reclassified.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 15.2.3.4 Report on the implementation of the priority ecosystem unit work programmes.
- 15.2.3.5 Tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern numbers increased to 100 by 2021 by maintaining protection at key coastal sites through active community support.

16 Kawau Island Place

16.1 Description

Kawau Island or Te Kawau Tūmārō o Toi (the sentinel cormorant of Toi) is one of the largest islands in the Gulf and has a rich historic heritage. It is of major cultural, spiritual and historical significance to Ngāti Manuhiri, and has long associations with their Te Kawerau relatives. Kawau is also a traditional boundary area for Ngāti Wai and Marutūahu interests. In the 19th century, the island was the site of an early copper mining industry and the residence of Sir George Grey, twice Governor of New Zealand, and one of the most influential and controversial figures in New Zealand’s political history.

The Department manages approximately 227 ha on Kawau or 10% of the island’s land area of which 178.6 ha is designated historic reserve (refer to Volume II, Map 7.12). It protects the significant historic landscape associated with the early copper mining industry and Sir George Grey.

The discovery of copper in 1844 led to the development of a major mining and processing industry. The ruins of the sandstone building that originally contained the steam engine and pump is one of the more visible relics of the copper mining industry on the island. The ruin of the smelting house building can be seen in the Smelting House Historic Reserve on the northern side of Bon Accord Harbour.

In 1862, a new phase in the history of Kawau began, when the island became the home of Sir George Grey on his second appointment as Governor of New Zealand. Between 1862 and 1888, Grey invested massive capital to develop an estate based around the former mine manager’s house in Mansion House Bay. He experimented with the acclimatisation of exotic plants and animals from around the world, and his legacy can be seen in the many historically and botanically significant specimens that remain.

Mansion House, the smelting house and the copper-mine engine house are classified Category 1 by Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, making this one of the most highly ranked built historic sites managed by the Department in New Zealand. A conservation plan was prepared for Mansion House in 1992 and a further conservation plan for the interior in 2002. Considerable progress has been made in implementing the recommendations of these plans. Despite this, the Department remains concerned that Mansion House does not meet the highest standards of presentation as a historic property and that the building requires a programme to address deferred maintenance in order to maintain its historic integrity. During the lifetime of this CMS, it is intended to seek proposals for the use of Mansion House that will enable these issues to be addressed, while at the same time providing the public with the continued opportunity to appreciate the house.

Conservation plans have also been prepared for the Mansion House gardens (1998) and wider Kawau Island historic landscape (2002) and these guide the Department’s management of these areas.

Kawau is a stronghold for North Island weka and the threatened plant sneezeweed (*Centipeda minima* subsp. *minima*). North Island brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*) are also present, having been introduced in the 1860s; their survival is probably due to Kawau having a smaller suite of mammalian pests than the mainland, with rabbits, hedgehogs, ferrets (*Mustela furo*), weasels (*Mustela nivalis*) and Norway rats all being absent. Kawau also has populations of threatened pāteke/brown teal and pekapeka/long-tailed bats.

Possoms and wallabies, which were introduced by Sir George Grey in about 1869 and are still present today, demonstrate the devastating effect that these introduced grazers and browsers have on indigenous plant species. Possum browsing threatens the pōhutukawa canopy, many stands of which have now been destroyed. They also destroy other species including seedlings, and being omnivores also eat bird eggs. Wallaby grazing eliminates seedlings of almost all indigenous species, resulting in no significant regeneration.

Of the five species of wallaby introduced by Grey four are still present. One, the black-striped wallaby (*Macropus dorsalis*) died out about 1965. Two of the species of wallaby on the island, dama/tammar (*Macropus eugenii*) and brush-tailed rock (*Petrogale penicillata*) are threatened species in their native Australia.

Kawau is renowned for its sheltered waters and is a popular boating destination or stop-over for small vessels. Recreational use on Department-administered land is focused around Mansion House Bay, which receives approximately 50 000 visitors per year. Mansion House Bay is a popular anchorage, and the grounds surrounding Mansion House are popular for picnics, barbecues, weddings and other special events. A café is open seasonally and operated under concession. Mansion House is open to the public and is presented as the residence of its best known inhabitant, Sir George Grey. It is furnished with a valuable collection of antique furnishings that have largely been donated or loaned to the Department. Several walks begin at Mansion House Bay, allowing visitors to experience coastal vistas, the copper mine and remnants of the legacy of Sir George Grey. Currently, there is no overnight accommodation available on public conservation land on Kawau. However, there is potential to develop overnight bach-style accommodation utilising existing buildings at Sunny Bay.

Interpretation is focused on the historic copper industry and Sir George Grey's period of ownership. There is considerable potential to develop additional interpretation particularly relating to tangata whenua history, values and associations.

The pine forest in the Kawau Island Historic Reserve is over-mature. Trees fall down regularly, blocking tracks and posing a potential safety risk to visitors. The Department intends to manage the visual catchment of Mansion House Bay to reflect the landscape as it was in Sir George Grey's day—a pine-dominated landscape with indigenous (pōhutukawa) forest around the coastal escarpment and in the gullies. The balance of the pine forest will be replaced with indigenous species over the period of this CMS.

There are around 80 permanent residents concentrated along the sheltered western coastline in addition to significant numbers of non-resident landowners. There are few public roads on the island and the main access for residents continues to be by sea. Many of Kawau's residents have a deep attachment to the island and undertake active conservation initiatives on their own land.

Several community groups are active on Kawau, including the Friends of Mansion House, the Kiwi Care Trust, the Pōhutukawa Trust, the Wintle Trust and the more recently formed Mansion House Foundation. Kawau offers the unique volunteer experience of being able to assist with the preservation of one of New Zealand's iconic built structures, Mansion House.

16.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Kawau Island Place

16.2.1 OUTCOME

Kawau Island retains its significant exotic historic character and its outstanding assemblage of historic sites and buildings associated with the copper mining industry and Sir George Grey. These sites and buildings are preserved, protected and interpreted, and the community is actively involved in their promotion and conservation. Archaeological sites are protected and tangata whenua have strengthened their connection with Kawau through a collaborative approach with the Department.

The forest within Kawau Island Historic Reserve is well managed, safe, and renewed with a mix of indigenous forest and historically appropriate exotic plantings. Wallabies are excluded from Mansion House valley, and controlled elsewhere within Kawau Island Historic Reserve and its adjacent reserves. Initiatives to control or eradicate mammalian pests on Kawau are progressed through working collaboratively with others.

As a Gateway destination, Kawau Island Historic Reserve offers visitors a variety of passive recreation opportunities within the historic setting of Sir George Grey's estate and the remains of the earlier copper mining industry.

Working with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and others, Mansion House and its surrounding gardens enable visitors to experience and understand mid-19th century colonial settlement and attitudes, and their relevance to conservation today. The grounds are also a place for celebration, with weddings and other special events taking place, provided they do not detract from the historic character or unduly impact on visitors' use and enjoyment of the grounds. Well-maintained tracks that are suitable for walking and seasonal mountain biking link the Mansion House grounds with other natural and historic features in the Reserve. Visitors have the opportunity to stay overnight at Sunny Bay.

16.2.2 POLICIES

16.2.2.1 Undertake partial reviews of the following conservation plans:

- a) Mansion House Conservation Plan (1992);
- b) Mansion House, Kawau Island: An Interiors Conservation Plan (2002);
- c) Mansion House Gardens Kawau Island: A Conservation Plan and Resource Document (1998);
- d) Kawau Island Historic Landscape: A Conservation Plan and Resource Document (2002);

in conjunction with Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga and other stakeholders, and develop an implementation programme.

16.2.2.2 Offer a limited opportunity concession for the use of Mansion House, which complements its heritage significance and enhances its protection, subject to such uses:

- a) Being consistent with the relevant conservation plans;
- b) avoiding significant adverse effects on the heritage value of the Place;
- c) allowing continued public access to all or part of the building to the extent required to enable appreciation of the historic significance of Mansion House and its setting;

- d) accommodating appropriate displays for the interpretation of the historic fabric and important social history of Mansion House;
 - e) having activities that are not detrimental to the condition of the building's structure, chattels or historic fabric;
 - f) not detracting from visitors' enjoyment and use of the surrounding grounds and gardens; and
 - g) fulfilling any relevant policies in Part Three.
- 16.2.2.3 Identify a suitable event site(s) within the Mansion House grounds and encourage events, subject to such events:
- a) being consistent with the restoration and maintenance of the historic values of the Place;
 - b) not detracting from visitors' enjoyment and use of the surrounding grounds and gardens; and
 - c) fulfilling any relevant policies in Part Three.
- 16.2.2.4 Allow seasonal mountain biking on tracks and roads in Kawau Island Historic Reserve where terrain and track construction are suitable for this activity, potential conflict with walkers can be managed, and historic sites are protected. The criteria in Policy 24.3.2.5 in Part Three should be used when assessing the use of mountain bikes.
- 16.2.2.5 Allow a café to continue to operate within the existing kiosk building in Mansion House valley, provided it does not detract from visitors' enjoyment and use of the surrounding grounds.
- 16.2.2.6 May allow a concession for overnight accommodation for the public utilising existing buildings at Sunny Bay. The criteria in Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three should be used when assessing applications for overnight accommodation.
- 16.2.2.7 Investigate sites for a small-scale camping ground on Kawau in cooperation with Auckland Council and the community.
- 16.2.2.8 Work collaboratively with the Auckland Council and Kawau community with the objective of protecting the natural, cultural and heritage values on conservation land from the effects of wallabies.
- 16.2.2.9 Remove exotic trees within the Kawau Island Historic Reserve to enhance public safety and ecological values where this is consistent with the restoration of the historic and cultural landscape.
- 16.2.2.10 Consult with Ngāti Manuhiri and tangata whenua generally to ensure that a biculturally appropriate interpretation is presented about the history of Kawau.
- 16.2.2.11 Should not allow aircraft landings on reserves on Kawau, to protect the visitor experience and avoid conflicts with visitor use of the reserves.

16.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 16.2.3.1 Heritage assessments for all actively managed historic sites on Kawau.
- 16.2.3.2 Partial review of the conservation plans.
- 16.2.3.3 Work needed to stabilise Mansion House.

- 16.2.3.4 Consents obtained and planning completed for the logging of old growth pines within the Kawau Island Historic Reserve, and for replanting of the logged areas.
- 16.2.3.5 A 20% increase in visitor numbers to Mansion House valley since 2012/13.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 16.2.3.6 Logged areas replanted with indigenous forest and historically appropriate exotic trees.
- 16.2.3.7 Options for the use of Mansion House identified and implemented.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 16.2.3.8 A 30% increase in visitor numbers to Mansion House valley since 2017.
- 16.2.3.9 Investigation completed into sites for a small scale campground in cooperation with Auckland Council and the community.
- 16.2.3.10 Report on progress achieved from working collaboratively with Auckland Council and the island community towards protection of the values on conservation land from the effects of wallabies.

17 Motuora Island Place

17.1 Description

Motuora Island lies 5 km off the entrance to Mahurangi Harbour (refer to Volume II, Map 7.13). Its classification is recreation reserve. Much of the original coastal forest and shrubland vegetation on the island was cleared long ago by Māori and European settlers, leaving remnant pōhutukawa and karo/māhoe (*Melicactus ramifloris*) growing on coastal cliffs. Despite the long period of occupation, Motuora has always been free of mammalian pests. Since 1990, the previously farmed island has undergone a transformation, with a community-led restoration project planting much of the island.

The island is currently a 'kiwi crèche', providing a safe haven for young North Island brown kiwi until they are big enough to defend themselves from stoats (*Mustela erminea*) and be returned to the mainland. A resident population of kiwi now remains on the island. Motuora is also significant for its population of ōi/grey-faced petrel (northern muttonbird). The Motuora Restoration Society (MRS), which was formed in 1995, undertakes a considerable amount of conservation work on the island and has a management agreement with the Department to manage facilities on Motuora. The work carried out by MRS has led to native species such as pōpokotea/whitehead (*Mohoua albicilla*), wētāpunga/Little Barrier giant wētā, Duvaucel's gecko (*Hoplodactylus duvaucelii*) and shore skink (*Oligosoma smithi*) returning to the island. The increasing natural values of Motuora warrant the reserve classification being changed from recreation reserve to scenic reserve.

Motuora features prominently in Māori tradition, and is significant to Ngāti Manuhiri and other iwi, being one of the floats of an ancestral fishing net of Toi Te Huatahi, an early Māori ancestor and voyager. Motuora has a pā site at its southwest end, but otherwise shows little archaeological evidence of past Māori occupation. Sites may have been obliterated when much of the island was cultivated by subsequent European settlers.

Although not serviced by a commercial ferry, Motuora is within easy reach of the mainland by private boat. The majority of visitors are day visitors, coming to the island to enjoy its beaches and walks. The lack of wharf allows the Department to manage Motuora as a low-key visitor destination, and as such the island receives fewer visitors than other Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana islands. The focus of recreation on the island is Home Bay, where the campground and a small publicly available bach are located. There is potential for a backcountry hut to be built, which would further enhance the attractiveness of the island as an overnight kayaking destination and part of a wider Gulf kayaking 'trail'.

17.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Motuora Island Place

17.2.1 OUTCOME

Motuora Island has a self-sustaining ecosystem that has re-established through community-led restoration activities. Indigenous species that are likely to have been found on the island prior to human settlement or are important to the healthy functioning of the island's ecology have been reintroduced. A diverse forest sustains numerous seabirds, a flourishing population of invertebrates, birds and reptiles. The island remains a safe haven for North Island brown kiwi and is free of mammalian pests.

The Department works cooperatively with the Motuora Restoration Society to manage the island reserve. Sites of significance to tangata whenua are protected, and tangata whenua

have strengthened their connection with Motuora Island through a collaborative approach with the Department and the Motuora Restoration Society.

The island remains accessible by private boat, kayak or water taxi landing on the foreshore, and is valued by the community for having lower visitor numbers than other Gulf island destinations managed by the Department. Visitors self-reliantly undertake biosecurity measures to keep the island free of animal pests. Home Bay is the key entry point to the island, and facilities that are sympathetic with the secluded coastal setting and relatively uncrowded visitor experience are concentrated here. Visitors are able to camp or stay overnight in appropriately scaled built accommodation and, by using the track network, experience a regenerating landscape full of reintroduced wildlife.

17.2.2 POLICIES

- 17.2.2.1 Reclassify Motuora Island Recreation Reserve as a scenic reserve.
- 17.2.2.2 Should not allow aircraft landings on Motuora Island, to protect the visitor experience and avoid adverse effects on natural and amenity values.
- 17.2.2.3 Consult with Ngāti Manuhiri and tangata whenua generally to ensure that biculturally appropriate interpretation is presented about the history of Motuora Island.

17.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 17.2.3.1 Interpretation installed about the history of the island.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 17.2.3.2 Motuora Island reclassified.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 17.2.3.3 A sequenced introduction and reintroduction of threatened fauna and flora in accordance with the Motuora Native Species Restoration Plan.
- 17.2.3.4 The diversity of plant species within the replanted areas is enhanced and includes threatened species.
- 17.2.3.5 Sustained control of significant pest plants that disrupt restoration processes and threaten indigenous species.

18 Tiritiri Matangi Island Place

Note: Under the *Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014* Tiritiri Matangi Island will vest in the Trustee on behalf of the 13 iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau for one month and then be re-vested back in the Crown. The initial vesting will occur within 12 months of the Act being enacted at time advised by the Trustee. The Act outlines how the Island will be managed while vested in the Trustee.

18.1 Description

Tiritiri Matangi Island is one of New Zealand's great community conservation success stories, having been transformed by volunteers from a farmed island to one with extensive restored forest that complements the remnant coastal forest (refer to Volume II, Map 7.14). With the island free of mammalian pests, many rare or threatened species have been reintroduced or have returned naturally to the island, including northern tuatara, takahē (*Porphyrio hochstetteri*), toutouwai/North Island robin (*Petroica longipes*), hihi/stitchbird, pukupuku/little spotted kiwi (*Apteryx owenii*), North Island kōkako, tīeke/North Island saddleback (*Philesturnus carunculatus rufusater*) and wētāpunga/Little Barrier giant wētā. Tiritiri Matangi now also plays an important role as a source of species for translocation to other restoration projects, and is nationally renowned as a place for research, education and management of threatened species. Threatened plant species include native paspalum (*Paspalum orbiculare*). There are ongoing efforts to control plant and invertebrate pests on the island.

Tiritiri Matangi is traditionally one of the floats of an ancestral fishing net of Toi Te Huatahi, an early Māori ancestor and voyager, and marks a boundary between the hapū of the Tainui waka to the east and Kawerau a Maki to the west. It has historic associations with both these groups, and is also of special significance to Ngāti Manuhiri and Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau. Pā and other archaeological sites remain as evidence of settlement.

The island is also the site of an important historic lighthouse complex, one of the most complete remaining in New Zealand. It retains evidence of its technological development from the 1860s through to the present day. The lighthouse which is managed by Maritime New Zealand is classified Category 1 by the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga. Within the former light station complex which surrounds the lighthouse area are a number of structures managed by the Department with assistance from the Supporters of Tiritiri Matangi. These include two former keepers' houses, the former light station workshop and the compressed air foghorn, housed in a shed. A watchtower building established by the former Auckland Harbour Board is also located within this area. A conservation plan for the lighthouse complex was prepared in 1997.

Supporters of Tiritiri Matangi (SoTM), which formed in 1988, is a major contributor to the success of Tiritiri Matangi as a restored open scientific reserve. Significant volunteer effort and funding has been put into replanting, biodiversity management, research, providing interpretation, maintaining and building visitor facilities and infrastructure, facilitating translocations, and conserving historic features. A visitor centre that was built by SoTM in 2005 showcases information about the island and houses a gift shop. SoTM provides education programmes to large numbers of school groups and an introductory guided walk for visitors. SoTM intends to expand the education programmes while continuing to enhance the island's biodiversity, and provide opportunities for research and volunteer activities.

Tiritiri Matangi's status as an open scientific reserve allows the public to visit without the need for an entry permit, and annual visitor numbers have grown from 13 000 in 1995 to around 38 000 people in 2013. Visitors are rewarded with the special experience of seeing some of New Zealand's most endangered birds in a natural setting, as well as being able to visit the historic lighthouse complex and pā sites.

Access to Tiritiri Matangi is via a scheduled ferry service, chartered commercial vessel, or private boat. Biosecurity measures, which include providing pre-trip information to visitors, are essential to maintaining the island as an open scientific reserve. Rangers meet each ferry and provide a biosecurity briefing to visitors. School visits are popular, making Tiritiri Matangi an important place for conservation education.

Visitor facilities on the island include the wharf, visitor centre, bunkhouse, and a well-developed track network with interpretive signs about plants and threatened wildlife. The most popular tracks on the island, the Wattle and Kawerau tracks, originate from the wharf and Hobbs Beach, and in peak summer months result in some initial congestion and crowding until ferry passengers disperse across the island.

Visitor management measures are necessary to protect the island's natural, historic and cultural values, enable better management of biosecurity, and maintain a quality visitor experience. Measures to manage visitor impacts include controlling the number of visitors arriving by scheduled ferry, coordinating other commercial vessel arrivals with the ferry's arrival and departure times, and limiting numbers on the introductory guided walk. Well-designed visitor facilities that can handle the pulse of visitors originating from the scheduled ferry service are also important.

The Department proposes to retain these control measures, and support a daily ferry service over the peak period (Boxing Day to the third Sunday in January inclusive) and for public holidays (except Christmas Day) with a 5-day per week scheduled service outside of these times (except Christmas Day). The daily limit on ferry passengers will increase from 150 to 170. This would allow more visitors to access the island, and provide more flexibility for visitors and others staying overnight on the island. This daily ferry limit may be exceeded for the purposes of landing and picking up visitors undertaking guided evening walks or attending one-off special events.

Tiritiri Matangi is a popular destination for commercial guided tours and organised groups. Measures to manage the impacts of these visitors include restricting the departure and arrival times of commercial vessels. This avoids conflict with the arrival and departure times of the ferry which, in turn, reduces congestion at the wharf and on nearby tracks.

The need to protect the island's values and provide a quality visitor experience introduces a Limited Supply Concession situation for the following commercial activities:

- Concession(s) for the introductory guided walk on the Hobbs Beach, Kawerau and Wattle tracks, and
- Other guided walk concession(s) for day, evening and overnight visitors.

Overnight visitors can enjoy the call of kiwi and penguins after dusk, and wake to a full dawn chorus, sounds that are now absent from most mainland forests. The demand for overnight accommodation is high throughout the year and the 20-bed bunkhouse is often full during the summer. Tiritiri Matangi is an important location for field research studies into New Zealand native species, and the bunkhouse is highly utilised by volunteers, researchers and students.

This CMS establishes a framework for improving overnight accommodation to better suit the needs of the many different types of users. The Department has determined that the capacity of overnight accommodation can be increased to 50 people, which takes into account current infrastructure constraints and ensures that the overnight visitor

experience is maintained. The current bunkhouse, located in one of the former lighthouse keeper houses, could either remain as visitor accommodation or be returned to staff accommodation. An additional purpose-built facility for overnight accommodation may be built to provide improved opportunities for the public to stay overnight.

18.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Tiritiri Matangi Island Place

18.2.1 OUTCOME

As an Icon destination, Tiritiri Matangi Island rewards visitors with a memorable experience of seeing some of New Zealand's most endangered wildlife, enhancing visitors' awareness of and support for New Zealand's unique biodiversity, and inspiring them to make a difference in their own communities. Increasing numbers of school parties and other visitors are also inspired when they take advantage of the available guiding and educational activities.

Tiritiri Matangi is a sanctuary for rare and threatened indigenous species such as hihi/stitchbird, takahē and North Island kōkako in a regenerating indigenous forest environment. An abundance of threatened species on Tiritiri Matangi also supply existing or new populations of these species to be established elsewhere. Risks of pest incursions are minimised and resources are in place to manage them when they occur. The island's extensive range of translocated species and accessibility provide significant opportunities for scientific research that contribute to conservation knowledge of indigenous species. The island provides valuable opportunities for conservation education from primary to university level.

The island is an outstanding model for community-led conservation, with tangata whenua actively involved in partnership with the Department and SoTM. Tangata whenua's relationship with the island is substantially enhanced through collaborative conservation initiatives and the protection of sites of significance to them.

With forest restoration under way, the focus of the partnership between the Department, tangata whenua and the SoTM has turned to increasing the genetic diversity of species present, introducing further threatened species, enhancing the research programme, expanding education services, restoring and interpreting historic and cultural heritage, and maintaining a high-quality visitor experience.

The island provides opportunities for conservation initiatives and scientific research, which have already spanned three decades, providing internationally significant long-term research data from translocations and species management on a restored island.

The historic Tiritiri Matangi lighthouse complex is restored, protected, maintained and interpreted in conjunction with Maritime New Zealand.

Visitor numbers and activities, and commercial transport operator access are controlled and managed to minimise their impact on the island's conservation values, protect natural quiet in restored forested areas, and maintain the quality of the visitor experience. High-quality visitor facilities enhance wildlife viewing opportunities and the management of visitor flows. Visitors choose between independently exploring the track network on foot, and joining a guided daytime or evening walking party.

Built accommodation that is sympathetic to the adjoining historic lighthouse precinct enables overnight visitors to enjoy the unique night and dawn experiences. These facilities also support scientific research, education and volunteer activities.

18.2.2 POLICIES

- 18.2.2.1 Maintain the open access status of the Tiritiri Matangi Island Scientific Reserve.
- 18.2.2.2 Work in partnership with the Supporters of Tiritiri Matangi, concessionaires and commercial boat operators to manage biosecurity.
- 18.2.2.3 Support and encourage the retention of a low-cost, high-quality introductory guided tour between the wharf and the lighthouse complex.
- 18.2.2.4 Work with Maritime New Zealand to enable public access into the Tiritiri Matangi lighthouse.
- 18.2.2.5 Work collaboratively with Maritime New Zealand, Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, Supporters of Tiritiri Matangi and others to ensure that structures within the lighthouse complex are restored, protected, maintained and interpreted in a manner consistent with the Category 1 categorisation of the lighthouse.
- 18.2.2.6 Manage the following activities to minimise impacts on the visitor experience, research and translocation of wildlife, and natural, historic and cultural values, by applying the following provisions:
 - a) For the operation of the scheduled ferry service and other commercial vessels:
 - i) allow a ferry service to operate within the following parameters:
 - daily over the peak period (Boxing Day to the third Sunday in January inclusive);
 - all public holidays except Christmas Day; and
 - a 5-day per week scheduled service shall be allowed at other times except Christmas Day;
 - ii) allow for a limit of up to 170 passengers per day on the scheduled ferry service;
 - iii) allow for the daily limit in sub-clause (ii) to be exceeded for the purpose of servicing evening guided walks and special events, subject to the limits set out in Policy 18.2.2.6(c) below;
 - iv) exclude Department of Conservation staff, guides, volunteers, researchers and other people on the island for management purposes from passenger numbers in sub-clause (ii); and
 - v) ensure that arrivals and departures by other commercial vessels do not operate around those times that the scheduled ferry service is arriving or departing the island wharf, to avoid congestion.
 - b) For daytime guided walk concessions²¹:
 - i) impose a limit of up to 120 people per day to be guided on an introductory walk between the wharf and lighthouse complex using the Wattle, Hobbs Beach and Kawerau tracks;
 - ii) investigate, and build an additional track between the wharf and the lighthouse complex should investigations demonstrate that this would assist in managing visitor conflict and congestion;
 - iii) if a new track is built under sub-clause (ii) allow a portion of the limit imposed under sub-clause (i) to be applied to the new track and/or the limit in sub-clause (i) to be increased; and

21 Daytime guided walk concessions include the introductory guided walk concession (currently operated by SoTM) and other commercial guided walking concessions.

- iv) allow for up to 60 guided people per day (in addition to the 120 people guided on the introductory walk) accessing the island by means other than the scheduled ferry service.
 - c) For special events and evening guided walks:
 - i) apply limits on the frequency and duration of special events and evening guided walks to ensure that disturbance to wildlife from these activities is reduced and minimised as much as possible; and
 - ii) allow for a limit of up to 60 people per day on guided evening walks (excluding clients staying in overnight accommodation).
 - d) For overnight stays of guided walking and other concessions:
 - i) apply limits on the frequency and party size to ensure that disturbance to wildlife from these activities is reduced and minimised as much as possible and enable those not part of a guided concession group to stay overnight on the island.
- 18.2.2.7 May set aside days when visitor access to Tiritiri Matangi is limited to provide for Department of Conservation management purposes or other activities related to species management approved by the Department.
- 18.2.2.8 Monitor visitor numbers and impacts on the visitor experience and natural values.
- 18.2.2.9 Consider amending the limits in Policy 18.2.2.6 or tendering limited guided walking concession opportunities if these limits do not provide for the continued protection of the visitor experience or natural values.
- 18.2.2.10 In considering proposals for new overnight accommodation for the public, the following criteria should be used to assess any application for a new building for overnight accommodation:
- a) not be located within the historic lighthouse precinct unless adaptively reusing a current building;
 - b) be located in close proximity to existing buildings located adjacent to the visitor centre and precinct;
 - c) be sympathetic with and not detract from the historic values of the complex, including maintaining visual linkages between the precinct and the sea;
 - d) provide improved opportunities for the general public to stay overnight on the island;
 - e) have a maximum capacity of 50 people (including the capacity of any existing visitor accommodation other than staff buildings); and
 - f) be assessed against criteria in Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three.
- 18.2.2.11 Should not allow aircraft landings on Tiritiri Matangi, to protect the visitor experience and avoid adverse effects on natural, historic, cultural and amenity values.

18.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 18.2.3.1 Establishment of monitoring programme to assess the impacts of visitation on the natural values of the island and the quality of the visitor experience.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 18.2.3.2 Sustained control of significant plant pests that disrupt restoration processes and threaten indigenous species.
- 18.2.3.3 Report on the condition of actively conserved historic sites on Tiritiri Matangi.
- 18.2.3.4 Restoration and interpretation of the lighthouse complex.
- 18.2.3.5 Investigation into the need for an additional track between the wharf and the lighthouse complex and decisions made on whether an additional track is required.
- 18.2.3.6 Report on the outcomes of visitor monitoring programme.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 18.2.3.7 Research undertaken to evaluate whether visitors to Tiritiri Matangi are more likely to become involved in conservation projects and environmental initiatives.
- 18.2.3.8 Report on outcomes of visitor monitoring programme and management actions required identified.

19 Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands Place

Note: Under the *Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014*, Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands will vest in the Trustee on behalf of the 13 iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau for one month and then be re-vested back in the Crown. The 55.4 ha that comprises the summit of Rangitoto (Ngā Pona-toru-a-Peretū) will remain vested in the Trustee but will be managed by the Department, as it is currently. In addition, Islington Bay Community Hall surrounds and Bach 80 at Islington Bay will be vested in Trustee. The initial vesting will occur within 12 months of the Act being enacted at a time advised by the Trustee. The Act outlines how the Island will be managed while vested in the Trustee.

The Act also requires a conservation management plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana inner motu (Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motukorea (Browns) and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga) to be commenced within 6 months of enactment.

Motutapu and Rangitoto islands, although biologically and geologically distinct, are linked by a causeway and managed as a single Place (refer to Volume II, Map 7.15) recognising that different values are found on each island.

19.1 Description

Rangitoto Island is an iconic landscape feature in the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana, dominating the local seascape. It is the youngest cone in the Auckland Volcanic Field, having erupted only about 600 years ago, and is also one of the least modified. The summit of Rangitoto, Ngā Pona-toru-a-Peretū, will vest in the permanent ownership of the Trustee on behalf of the 13 iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau in recognition of the association that they have with the motu.

Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve's bare lava fields, lava caves, pillars and tunnels are obvious features of the island's volcanic landscape. Although the lava rock seems inhospitable, it is home to nearly 750 species of native plants. The vegetation on Rangitoto is internationally significant as an area of forest that has naturally colonised young basaltic lava flows. The island is home to the largest area of pōhutukawa forest in New Zealand and is also a stronghold for several threatened plant species; including kohurangi/Kirk's tree daisy, and pinaki/New Zealand carrot. The island's unique indigenous ecosystem and vegetation have been recognised in its status as a separate and entire ecological district. To maintain the island's ecological integrity, only naturally occurring regeneration will be allowed. Planting on the island is considered inappropriate.

In contrast to Rangitoto, Motutapu Island, which is a Recreation Reserve, retains a largely pastoral landscape, with more than 300 archaeological sites that attest to the rich history of intensive Māori settlement. Of particular significance is the Sunde archaeological site, where human and dog footprints are preserved in the solidified ash layers from the time when Māori returned to Motutapu between eruptions of Rangitoto. European farming has occurred on Motutapu since 1840, and has made a positive contribution to protecting the archaeological landscape and countryside values of the island. The Reid Homestead at Home Bay is the last of the early farmhouses.

Rangitoto also has many historic sites. During the early 1900s, 140 baches were established; 36 of these remain (in 2014) in three settlement areas (Rangitoto Wharf, Islington Bay and McKenzie Bay), and most of them are largely unmodified since the 1930s. The Rangitoto

Island Historic Conservation Trust operates a museum within Bach 38 near Rangitoto Wharf and also manages four other baches (Baches 52, 78, 103 and 114). These baches have been (or are being) renovated by the Trust with the help of sponsorship funding and volunteer time. Another bach is owned and occupied by the Devonport Scout Group. Of the remaining baches, at the time this CMS was approved, nine are occupied by bach holders under lifetime leases issued in 1957 and 21 were occupied by descendants of the original bach holders with no formal agreements.

This latter situation arose as a result of the High Court determining in 2006 that the Minister of Conservation's decision to terminate temporary caretaker licences in 2004 was unlawful and should be reconsidered, taking into consideration the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act. The Minister has yet to make a new decision in accordance with the High Court decision and until the Minister has done so, the Department cannot propose a management strategy for the baches which are subject to the High Court decision. Therefore, this CMS does not contain an outcome or policies for these baches.

During the 1920s and 1930s, a complex of community facilities including roads, footpaths, sea walls and promenades, a saltwater pool and community buildings were built for the Rangitoto Island Domain Board and bach owner communities using convict labour. Many of these are still used by visitors today. Coastal defence sites were built on Rangitoto and Motutapu to protect Auckland during World War II, and the remains of these fortifications can be seen on both islands.

Two sites at Islington Bay associated with historical waka mooring (Islington Bay Community Hall and Islington Bay Bach 80) are to be vested in the permanent ownership of the Trustee on behalf of the 13 iwi/ hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau. The Community Hall can be accessed with the consent of the Department.

Wreck Bay and the adjacent coastline of Rangitoto is a graveyard for at least 13 ships that became obsolete and were dumped on or in the waters adjacent to, the island between 1887 and 1947. The wrecks are a regionally significant heritage site and are able to be visited at low tide.

Over the past 20 years, volunteers on Motutapu have been working on ecological restoration of parts of the island with a view to bringing back threatened species in close proximity to a metropolitan centre. Possums and wallabies were successfully eradicated from Motutapu and Rangitoto by the Department in the mid-1990s. In 2011, it was confirmed that the remaining eight mammalian pest species had also been successfully eradicated from these islands. As at 2014, 90 ha of the island have been reforested with native trees and further planting is planned. The islands now represent a major opportunity to provide habitats for a range of threatened species, in locations that are easily accessible to the public. To date, tieke/saddleback, takahē, Coromandel brown kiwi (*Apteryx mantelli*) and the tuturuatu/New Zealand shore plover have been reintroduced. Motutapu is one of the few islands in Auckland that has significant wetlands, which has allowed the translocation of wetland species such as redfin bullies (*Gobiomorphus huttoni*) and kōura/freshwater crayfish. Bird species introductions on Rangitoto and Motutapu may also benefit other nearby islands such as Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, with birds moving from island to island establishing populations.

The re-invasion of Rangitoto and Motutapu by animal pests remains a significant threat to the restoration of the islands. Therefore, maintaining the animal pest-free status of the islands will be a priority in their management.

At present, grazing by light stock is considered to be the most appropriate management technique available for managing pasture-covered archaeological sites on the scale of Motutapu. Open pasture also contributes to the island's rural landscape values, which

are highly valued by visitors. Opportunities exist to further embed sustainable pastoral farming practices, which would benefit the protection of historic, cultural and natural values on the island.

There are a number of trusts and community groups that presently undertake valuable conservation work on these islands, including:

- the Motutapu Restoration Trust which formed in 1994, with the aim to protect and restore the natural and cultural landscape of Motutapu. Significant volunteer effort and funding has been put into replanting, facilitating translocations and conserving historic features.
- the Motutapu Outdoor Education Camp Trust, which operates the Motutapu Outdoor Education Camp. The camp provides an opportunity for young people to experience conservation and outdoor education.
- the Rangitoto Island Historic Conservation Trust, which aims to conserve and interpret the historic bach communities on Rangitoto.

It is not possible for the Department to achieve its conservation goals on the islands without others continuing to make the significant contributions they presently do.

Following the enactment of the Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014, iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau have a role in the co-governance of the islands. Opportunities to consider the application of the principles and values of mātauranga Māori, and understand the significant cultural values of the islands, should be further explored with mana whenua.

Rangitoto and, increasingly, Motutapu, are popular visitor destinations. There is unrealised potential to increase recreational use and enjoyment on both islands while maintaining their outstanding natural, historic and cultural values. The focus over the term of this CMS will be to:

- develop a variety of experiences, services and programmes on the islands that will lead to greater awareness of their natural, cultural and historic values
- make it easier and more attractive for people to stay overnight on the islands, thereby enriching their conservation experience
- expand the range of accommodation options, utilising existing infrastructure as much as possible, to enable visitors to better explore both islands by foot, kayak, boat or mountain bike (see below)
- allow special events that broaden the appeal of the islands while avoiding adverse effects on the islands' values and current visitors' experiences
- contribute to developing the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park as a compelling visitor destination.

Significant effort will be placed in raising the islands' profiles as places to visit and experience the natural, cultural and historic values that are symbolic of the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana islands. Year-round ferry access will be encouraged and, where possible, enhanced at Rangitoto Wharf, Islington Bay and Home Bay, in conjunction with commercial ferry operators.

The Rangitoto Wharf amenity area, and tracks and roads that lead to the summit, baches and lava caves are being managed as an Icon destination. Visitor facilities and services are continuing to be upgraded to cater for increasing visitor numbers while retaining the essential character of the island experience. Access and facilities suitable for less mobile visitors or those with disabilities will be provided around the Rangitoto Wharf area.

Islington Bay amenity area is being managed as a Gateway destination, providing a range of experiences and activities for families, school parties and groups. Visitors are attracted

to Islington Bay as a popular boating anchorage and a place to experience Rangitoto from a different perspective to the city-facing side of the island. It is expected that Baches 52, 78, 103 and 114 will be made available for overnight accommodation to support visitors spending longer time on the islands.

A small-scale basic campsite will be investigated and, if appropriate, developed at either McKenzie or Boulder Bay to facilitate a multi-day Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana kayaking trail.

With its largely pastoral landscape and historic features, Motutapu provides a rural island experience for visitors. It is a popular Gateway destination for boating, camping, picnicking, outdoor education, conservation volunteering and, increasingly, special events. It also has an extensive track network, with Home Bay amenity area acting as a central hub for visitors due to its wharf and campground. The Motutapu Restoration Trust operates an interpretation centre in the Reid Homestead at Home Bay, which dates from the early 20th century, when the island was farmed and privately owned. An outdoor education camp that is operated by the Motutapu Outdoor Education Camp Trust utilises the former military barracks at Administration Bay, providing conservation and outdoor education to school and other groups from across Auckland.

Easy- to intermediate-grade mountain biking, managed as a limited concession opportunity, may be introduced on Rangitoto and Motutapu Islands (no earlier than 5 years after approval of this CMS), initially through a 3-year trial. During the trial, visitors may be able to take guided bike tours to explore some of Rangitoto's and Motutapu's roads, as well as some tracks on Motutapu.

Suitable roads and tracks for mountain biking will be identified prior to the trial commencing based on a number of factors, such as the need to avoid adverse effects on the islands' natural, historic and cultural values, and on the existing farm lease; the safety of cyclists and other island users; and the experience of other visitors to the islands.

Monitoring will be undertaken during the trial to inform the decision as to whether or not mountain biking on the islands continues following the trial, and if so, whether any changes to the concession opportunity are required.

Motorised vehicle use on the islands' roads comprises a four-wheel drive road-train guided tour concession, which uses the road that circumnavigates Rangitoto; vehicles used by the Department for management purposes; and community group and island-based concessionaires servicing their operations. Due to expected continuing growth in visitor numbers, priority being given to pedestrian use, and the potential introduction of mountain biking on selected roads and tracks, vehicle use by concessionaires and community groups (above current traffic levels) will be carefully managed. While future motorised guided tour or on-island transport concessions may be allowed, this would require assessment against the impacts on the visitor experience, including conflict with pedestrians and mountain bikers.

19.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands Place

19.2.1 OUTCOME

Rangitoto and Motutapu offer the closest readily accessible opportunity to metropolitan Auckland to experience New Zealand's wildlife in a natural environment and appreciate the multiple layers of history in the Gulf. Visitors are attracted to the islands' contrasting landscapes, and superb coastal and city views. Visitor services and interpretation enable

visitors to understand the significant natural, cultural and historic values of the islands, enriching their experience of them.

Both islands are free of mammalian pests; Motutapu has new habitats and Rangitoto's habitats are functioning healthily. Both islands support populations of rare and threatened as well as common indigenous species; thereby restoring the islands' natural biodiversity. Measures to prevent the reinvasion of animal pests and the introduction of plant pests are maintained, whilst recognising that the public have freedom of access to these islands.

Historic sites associated with coastal defences on Motutapu and Rangitoto are preserved and appropriately restored.

Tangata whenua, community groups, businesses and volunteers feature strongly in the management of the islands, achieving long-term habitat restoration and historic resource protection for future generations. The islands demonstrate conservation in action, and the wider social, economic and environmental benefits that animal pest-free islands can provide to Auckland.

Rangitoto

Rangitoto, which is a dominant feature of the Gulf, is a symbol of Auckland, and a must-see destination for national and international visitors. As one of the least modified cones in the Auckland Volcanic Field, it supports a naturally regenerating forest of high ecological integrity.

Visitors access Rangitoto by commercial ferry, private boat or kayak. The visitor zone between Rangitoto Wharf and the summit is managed as an Icon destination, with visitors able to choose between walking well-formed tracks to the summit and other natural and historic highlights and taking a guided tour of the island.

Kayakers and land-based visitors are able to stay at a small-scale basic campsite established at either McKenzie Bay or Boulder Bay.

Motutapu

Motutapu's outstanding cultural landscape that is associated with pre-European Māori occupation features nationally significant archaeological sites. These sites are managed within a mosaic of open grassland, remnant bush and regenerating forest landscapes. Interpretation brings the stories of the past to life. Restoration planting at Home Bay creates a semi-contiguous forest from south of Home Bay north to Mullet Bay, providing habitat for a range of threatened species.

The range of recreational and educational experiences offered has expanded with Home Bay being managed as a hub for this Gateway Destination. At Home Bay, visitors experience a restored forest and historic landscape, with clearly delineated zones between the campground, the day use amenity area (incorporating the Reid Homestead, which is used as an interpretation centre) and the farm-side area (where visitors can enjoy overnight stays in permanent or temporary accommodation).

Visitors choose between well-marked routes and roads or wandering freely on the island. Picnicking, conservation volunteering, special events, exploration of historic sites and water-based recreation activities continue to be popular. Motutapu is a focus for outdoor education. Visitor facilities are sympathetic to the rural and historic character and values of the island. Opportunities for overnight stays utilise existing infrastructure where possible, and form an integrated and sustainable network of accommodation options on the island.

19.2.2 POLICIES

- 19.2.2.1 Have regard to Motutapu when making management decisions for Rangitoto, and vice versa.
- 19.2.2.2 Prepare a conservation management plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana inner motu of Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motukorea (Browns) and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga (the Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan or motu plan) in consultation with Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Ltd. for the Tāmaki Collective, Auckland Conservation Board, Auckland Council and other persons and organisations.
- 19.2.2.3 Investigate and develop, in consultation with tangata whenua and the community, additional recreation opportunities for Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands that are consistent with the outcome for this Place and visitor management zone.
- 19.2.2.4 Provide facilities that cater for visitors with mobility difficulties at Rangitoto Wharf, Islington Bay and Home Bay amenity areas, including short walks.
- 19.2.2.5 Give due regard to pedestrian use, safety and priority on the islands' roads in considering the use of vehicles for on-island management activities, or concessions for on-island motorised transport or guided tours.
- 19.2.2.6 Develop a multi-day walk and overnight stays on Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands through collaborative partnerships.
- 19.2.2.7 Encourage events that benefit the islands through providing revenue for conservation or increased awareness of the natural, historic and cultural values, provided they avoid adverse effects on the islands' values and do not conflict with other recreational users.
- 19.2.2.8 Carry out an assessment to determine which roads and tracks on Rangitoto and Motutapu Islands may be suitable for concessionaire-guided mountain biking and what conditions of use may be required to:
 - a) avoid adverse effects on the islands' natural, historic and cultural values;
 - b) avoid adverse effects on the existing farm lease;
 - c) manage the safety of all cyclists and other island users; and
 - d) maintain the experience of other visitors to the islands.
- 19.2.2.9 May allow limited concessionaire-guided mountain biking on Rangitoto and Motutapu Islands, as an initial 3-year trial and no earlier than 5 years after approval of this CMS, subject to conditions of use as determined by the assessment carried out in accordance with Policy 19.2.2.8 and the relevant policies in Part Three.
- 19.2.2.10 Monitor the use and effects of mountain bikes on Rangitoto and Motutapu Islands during the 3-year trial period, including:
 - a) any non-compliance with concession conditions;
 - b) any adverse effects on the islands' natural, historic and cultural values;
 - c) any adverse effects on the existing farm lease;
 - d) the safety of all cyclists and other island users; and
 - e) the experience of other visitors to the islands.

- 19.2.2.11 May allow the concessionaire-guided mountain biking activity, authorised in accordance with Policy 19.2.2.9, to continue after the 3-year trial period until such time as an assessment has been carried out of the trial and monitoring undertaken in accordance with Policy 19.2.2.10, and a decision made as to whether the activity should:
- a) be allowed to continue subject to the same conditions of use;
 - b) be allowed to continue subject to different conditions of use; or
 - c) cease.
- 19.2.2.12 Increase awareness of the threats posed by plant and animal pest incursions and dogs and work with ferry operators, concessionaires, permit holders and the boating community to manage these threats and maintain the animal pest-free status of the islands.

Rangitoto

- 19.2.2.13 Support the Rangitoto Island Historic Conservation Trust's efforts in restoring Baches 52, 78, 103 and 114, and enter a management agreement with the Trust whereby it may rent out baches for short term public use that it has restored and use any proceeds for further restoration work.
- 19.2.2.14 Investigate and, if appropriate, develop a small-scale basic campsite at either McKenzie Bay or Boulder Bay to facilitate a multi-day kayaking trail in the inner Gulf.
- 19.2.2.15 May allow the development of a visitor centre and café-type facility at Rangitoto Wharf amenity area to replace or modify the existing kiosk and building, subject to it being sympathetically designed to complement the natural, historic and cultural values of the site, and an assessment against the criteria in Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three.
- 19.2.2.16 Allow quarrying on Rangitoto at the existing site (northeast of the junction of Islington Bay Road and the road to Yankee Wharf) to provide material for the Department's on-island visitor facilities and infrastructure.
- 19.2.2.17 Should not allow aircraft landings on Rangitoto, to protect the visitor experience and avoid adverse effects on natural, historic, cultural and amenity values.
- 19.2.2.18 Review the future of seasonal apiary concessions on Rangitoto if monitoring indicates that there are adverse ecological effects that cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated to the satisfaction of the Minister of Conservation.

Motutapu

- 19.2.2.19 In developing a restored landscape, give priority to the protection and understanding of Motutapu's cultural landscape, and historic features.
- 19.2.2.20 Protect and preserve the Sunde archaeological site on Motutapu through active management.
- 19.2.2.21 Support the operation of the Motutapu Outdoor Education Camp to enable the maintenance of the historic military complex at Administration Bay, and as a place to provide outdoor education experiences.
- 19.2.2.22 Restore and enhance freshwater ecosystems by way of riparian planting, habitat restoration for freshwater fauna, and the fencing of streams, wetlands and ponds.

- 19.2.2.23 May authorise further opportunities for conservation education and/or outdoor recreation education on Motutapu, where these opportunities are complementary to the focus of existing outdoor education facilities and the preservation of the historic military complex at Administration Bay and subject to an assessment against criteria in Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three.
- 19.2.2.24 May authorise a single Limited Supply Concession to build permanent or temporary overnight visitor accommodation at Home Bay, subject to an assessment against criteria in Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three.
- 19.2.2.25 In considering and assessing proposals for new overnight visitor accommodation outside Home Bay, apply the following criteria:
- a) give preference to adaptive reuse of existing buildings;
 - b) determine whether the location of the accommodation supports logical spacing of multi-day walking and/or kayaking opportunities on Motutapu and Rangitoto;
 - c) ensure that it will not lead to a proliferation of buildings or accommodation options that would detract from the rural character and open space values of the island; and
 - d) Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three.
- 19.2.2.26 May authorise a café to be operated from the Reid Homestead, provided that it can coexist with the existing interpretation centre and the historic values of the building are protected.
- 19.2.2.27 Aircraft landings may be authorised on Motutapu, in accordance with the criteria in Policies 24.3.4.1 and 24.3.4.3 in Part Three and zoning in the Aircraft Access Map in Volume II. In addition, the following restrictions will apply:
- a) aircraft landing sites may be restricted by stock movements; and
 - b) over-flying of regenerating forest areas and wetlands will be discouraged.
- 19.2.2.28 Aircraft landings and motorised vehicle use may be authorised on Motutapu for activities associated with pasture management on the island, in accordance with the criteria in Policies 24.3.1.3 and 24.3.1.4 (for motorised vehicles) and Policies 24.3.4.1 and 24.3.4.3 (for aircraft) in Part Three.
- 19.2.2.29 Horses may be authorised on Motutapu for stock management purposes, in accordance with Policy 24.4.2.2 in Part Three.
- 19.2.2.30 Should allow grazing and farming to continue on Motutapu in order to assist in protecting historic and cultural heritage, maintain an open landscape and to enhance the visitor experience.

19.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 19.2.3.1 Scheduled outputs identified in approved work programmes for the following priority ecosystems located in this Place: Rangitoto Island.
- 19.2.3.2 Assessment of which roads and tracks on Rangitoto and Motutapu Islands may be suitable for concessionaire-guided mountain biking and what conditions of use may be required.
- 19.2.3.3 Commence preparation of the Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan.

- 19.2.3.4 Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)
- 19.2.3.5 New multi-day walking experience on the islands delivered in partnership with tangata whenua and others.
- 19.2.3.6 All waterways fenced off.
- 19.2.3.7 Investigation into provision of a small scale campground at either McKenzie Bay or Boulder Bay.
- 19.2.3.8 Approval of Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan by Auckland Conservation Board and Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau.
- 19.2.3.9 Decision on whether or not to allow a concessionaire-guided mountain bike trial.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 19.2.3.10 150 ha of Motutapu replanted.
- 19.2.3.11 Sustained control of significant plant pests that disrupt ecosystem processes on Rangitoto Island.
- 19.2.3.12 The concessionaire-guided mountain biking trial and reviewed, and a decision on whether this activity will be permanently allowed.

20 Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga Place

Note: Under the *Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014*, Motuihe Island /Te Motu-a-Ihenga will vest in the Trustee on behalf of the 13 iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau for one month and then be re-vested back in the Crown. The initial vesting will occur within 12 months of the Act being enacted at a time advised by the Trustee. The Act outlines how the Island will be managed while vested in the Trustee.

The Act also requires a conservation management plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana inner motu (Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motukorea (Browns) and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga) to be commenced within 6 months of enactment.

20.1 Description

The pastoral landscape of Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga (Motuihe) (refer to Volume II, Map 7.16) is being transformed through extensive community-led planting into a restored, largely bush-clad landscape, although open space and exotic trees still predominate on the isthmus and headland. In the early 2000s a restoration project was initiated by the Motuihe Trust. The project's long-term aim is to restore forest to parts of the island, return native species, conserve historic features, and develop tracks and visitor facilities. Species translocations began with the introduction of tīeke/North Island saddleback in 2006. Other species that are thriving following translocation to Motuihe are kākārīki/red-crowned parakeet (*Cyanoramphus auriceps*), shore skink, little spotted kiwi, whitehead and tuatara. One hundred Duvaucel's gecko were translocated from Stanley Island in the Mercury Island Group to Motuihe in March 2014. Bird species introductions on Motuihe may also benefit other nearby islands such as Rangitoto and Motutapu, with birds moving from island to island establishing populations.

The regionally endangered sand or shore buttercup (*Ranunculus acaulis*) and kōhihi/fireweed occur on the island. The island's coastline supports populations of taranui/Caspian tern and kororā/blue penguin. Motuihe is also an important site for tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel because of the number of breeding pairs present.

Māori tradition tells of a long history of settlement on Motuihe and of gourd and taro cultivation. Evidence of this settlement includes two pā.

The arrival of European farmers on Motuihe in 1848 began the island's varied and interesting European history. In 1872, the island was selected as Auckland's quarantine island. From 1874, immigrants were quarantined there and those who died as a result of sickness were buried in the cemetery on the northern point. The cemetery still remains today. During World War I, the quarantine barracks were converted into a prisoner-of-war camp. Prisoners there included Germans living in New Zealand and Samoa, and the captured German raider Count Felix von Luckner. Motuihe gained considerable publicity during the escape of von Luckner and his crew in 1917. Between WWI and WWII, a children's health camp was set up on the island. During World War II, a naval training base, HMNZS *Tamaki*, was established on the island. This was moved to the mainland in 1963, after which the island became a recreation reserve. HMNZS *Tamaki*'s water tank remains, now a well-known landmark in the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana.

The sheltered sandy beaches and clear waters of Motuihe, which is a recreation reserve, attract thousands of visitors each year. The island is popular with boaties, with many visitors arriving in their own craft. Wharf (Wai-hao-Rangatahi) and Takutairaroa Bays are

popular boating anchorages. The island can also be accessed by a regular ferry service. The areas adjacent to the beaches are popular for picnicking and special events. The island has a popular campground, ideally placed on the headland, providing easy access to the wharf and beaches. Opportunities for walking are available across the island and through replanted areas. This CMS seeks to differentiate Motuihe from Rangitoto and Motutapu islands by giving precedence to maintaining existing passive recreational and amenity values of Motuihe rather than extending the range of recreational and commercial uses.

As the island is progressively restored and species are reintroduced, there is the opportunity to enhance the experience that visitors gain from the island. With its proximity to Auckland, Motuihe is ideally suited to be developed as a gateway destination, with further visitor services such as a visitor centre, which would provide interpretation of historic and cultural sites, opportunities for conservation education and support restoration activities and opportunities also exist for additional overnight accommodation, which could be developed by the Department or a concessionaire. The development of a visitor centre and overnight accommodation needs to be carefully managed to ensure that the design and placement of any new structures takes into account the island's small size, its historic heritage and other conservation values, and its capacity to support infrastructure and buildings.

20.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Motuihe Island/ Te Motu-a-Ihenga Place

20.2.1 OUTCOME

Motuihe is a valued community treasure for Aucklanders. Vistas of the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana and historic sites are protected through a managed pastoral landscape. Regenerating forest provides habitat for the reintroduction of indigenous species and the island remains free of mammalian pests. Measures to prevent the reinvasion of pests are maintained and the public, who have freedom of access to the island, actively support its mammal-free status. The Department works cooperatively with the Motuihe Trust on continued restoration of the island, and the provision of enhanced visitor services and facilities.

Historic sites (including olive trees) that are associated with quarantine activities and World Wars I and II are preserved. Places of significance to tangata whenua are protected and their connection with Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga is strengthened through collaborative relationships.

Accessible by private watercraft or commercial ferry, visitors experience regular interactions with other people, particularly in the summer months at Wharf and Takutairaroa Bays, and the adjacent headland. Motuihe is an ideal place to have a New Zealand family beach picnic and basic camping ground experience on a Gulf island. To the east of Wharf and Takutairaroa Bays, visitors enjoy the island for its vistas of the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana, restored forest and reintroduced indigenous species. Visitors to Motuihe gain a deeper understanding of the island's Māori and European history.

Visitor facilities are sympathetic to the island's small size, while also encouraging more visitors to the island, introducing them to the outdoors and allowing them to learn about conservation. The dominance of the coastal and restored landscape remains largely intact. Opportunities exist for overnight stays in small-scale accommodation, enabling visitors to experience the sights and sounds of wildlife at night and quietness of the island.

20.2.2 POLICIES

- 20.2.2.1 Prepare a conservation management plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana inner motu of Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motukorea (Browns) and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga (the Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan or motu plan) in consultation with Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Ltd. for Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau, Auckland Conservation Board, Auckland Council and other persons and organisations.
- 20.2.2.2 Give priority to historic heritage values in the management of the headland and restoration of natural values.
- 20.2.2.3 Should encourage visitor services that enhance visitor enjoyment and promote an understanding of the natural, historic and cultural values of the island.
- 20.2.2.4 Provide visitor facilities, supporting infrastructure and services that foster the use of the headland and isthmus area of Motuihe as a day-visitor destination, while enabling opportunities for overnight camping to be maintained.
- 20.2.2.5 Provide visitor facilities that allow walking access to and enjoyment of the restored areas of the island, and protect natural, historic and cultural values.
- 20.2.2.6 May allow occasional helicopter landings except during public and school holidays, and weekends between 1 December and 1 March, in accordance with the criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three. Overflying of regenerating forest areas should be discouraged.
- 20.2.2.7 May allow a limited opportunity concession to establish a visitor centre (including the ability to sell food and beverages), in accordance with the criteria listed in Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three and that either:
- a) is located to the north of the existing toilet and changing facilities;
 - b) adaptively reuses the Naval Surgeons Cottage; or
 - c) uses the footprint of the Naval Surgeons Cottage if it cannot be conserved.
- 20.2.2.8 May allow a limited opportunity concession for new overnight visitor accommodation, in accordance with the criteria listed in Policy 24.2.1.5 in Part Three. New buildings should be clustered around the existing farm buildings.
- 20.2.2.9 May allow concessions and other authorisations for special events, subject to these being held only on the headland area or isthmus between Wharf and Takutairaroa Bays, and these not detracting from the historic or recreational values of the island.
- 20.2.2.10 May allow concessions for on-island motorised transport or guided tours in accordance with the criteria in Policy 24.3.1.4.

20.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 20.2.3.1 Investigation into the condition of the Motuihe wharf and identification of options for its future management.
- 20.2.3.2 Research to understand visitor use and barriers to visitation.
- 20.2.3.3 Commence preparation of the Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 20.2.3.4 Seabird population successfully re-established.
- 20.2.3.5 Visitor centre established in conjunction with the Motuihe Trust or other partners.
- 20.2.3.6 Report on the outcomes from collaboration with tangata whenua, Auckland Council, the Motuihe Trust and others to investigate opportunities for increasing visitor numbers to Motuihe.
- 20.2.3.7 Report on outcomes from visitor use programme and management actions identified.
- 20.2.3.8 Interpretation installed.
- 20.2.3.9 Approval of Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan by Auckland Conservation Board and Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Ltd.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 20.2.3.10 A sequenced introduction of threatened species in accordance with the Motuihe Trust’s island restoration plan.
- 20.2.3.11 Increase in visitor numbers by 20% over 2014 levels.

21 Browns Island (Motukorea) Place

Note: Under the *Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014* the preparation of a conservation management plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana inner motu (Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motukorea (Browns) and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga) is to commence within 6 months of the Act's enactment.

21.1 Description

Browns Island (Motukorea) (refer to Volume II, Map 7.17) is one of the least modified and best preserved volcanic cones in the Auckland Volcanic Field, having erupted between 10 000 and 20 000 years ago. The island consists of a main scoria cone and deep crater, surrounded by several smaller scoria cone mounds. A lava flow forms the southern flat of the island, with submerged flows extending 2 km beneath the sea to the west and south.

The island is largely covered by grassland, but significant native vegetation, including pōhutukawa, remains on the northern coastal cliffs. The threatened plant shore waiuatua/spurge (*Euphorbia glauca*), which is presumed extinct in mainland Auckland, is found here. A healthy population of tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterels can be found on two stretches of beach on the island. Browns Island is free of mammalian pests. Issues faced in protecting the natural values of the island are the control of plant pests, especially on the coastal cliffs, and the risk of fire, which has increased since stock were removed from the island.

An outstanding and near-intact historic landscape has been preserved on Browns Island. More than 65 archaeological sites have been recorded, including three pā. They represent a microcosm of the extensive settlement complexes of the hapū of the Tainui waka that once existed on the volcanic areas of the Tamaki isthmus; now largely destroyed by urbanisation.

Browns Island (Motukorea) was bought by William Brown and John Logan Campbell in 1840. The island was farmed for nearly 150 years, but was probably cleared of its original vegetation well before European settlement. The Brown family's 1840 house site remains, as well as 19th to early 20th century farm buildings, and a number of ferry and ship hulks. A cairn commemorates the gifting of the island by Sir Ernest Davis to the people of Auckland in 1955, when the island became a recreation reserve and was vested in the Auckland City Council (now the Auckland Council). The Department manages Browns Island on behalf of Auckland Council. If Auckland Council were to initiate the reclassification of Browns Island as a historic reserve, the Department may support this.

Due to its close proximity to Auckland, Browns Island, which is a recreation reserve, is an ideal day trip for small boats and kayaks, with most visitors landing at the sheltered anchorage of Crater Bay. Activities on the island include the climb to the top of the cone and picnicking.

21.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Browns Island (Motukorea) Place

21.2.1 OUTCOME

Browns Island (Motukorea) is one of the least modified and best preserved cones in the Auckland Volcanic Field. The integrity of the island's volcanic landforms, and historic and cultural sites is protected through active grassland and vegetation management. Places of significance to tangata whenua are protected and their connection with Browns Island is strengthened through collaborative relationships. Interpretation provides visitors with a greater understanding of the significant values of this Place.

Visitors enjoy the island for its outstanding landscape, historic and cultural values, and open space, and are attracted by its values of natural quiet, which stand in contrast to nearby Auckland City and other islands of the inner Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana. It is accessible only to small watercraft landing on the foreshore or landing block. Day visitors enjoy walking and picnicking opportunities, which are supported by basic facilities.

21.2.2 POLICIES

- 21.2.2.1 Prepare a conservation management plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana inner motu of Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motukorea (Browns) and Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga (the Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan or motu plan) in consultation with Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Ltd. for Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau, Auckland Conservation Board, Auckland Council and other persons and organisations.
 - 21.2.2.2 Investigate and implement methods to reduce fire risk, enhance visitor access and protect the island's volcanic landforms and historic and cultural sites through active grassland management.
 - 21.2.2.3 May allow grazing on Browns Island (Motukorea), subject to this activity avoiding any adverse effects on natural, historic or cultural values and the enjoyment of visitors.
 - 21.2.2.4 Should not allow aircraft landings on Browns Island (Motukorea), to protect natural quiet and recreation values.
-

21.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 21.2.3.1 Commence preparation of the Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 21.2.3.2 Approval of Tāmaki Makaurau motu plan by Auckland Conservation Board and Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Ltd.

22 Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place

Note: The *Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act 2014* provides for ownership of the Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve to be vested in the Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Limited (the Trustee) on behalf of the 13 iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau.

The Department will continue to be responsible for its administration and will continue to undertake day-to-day management. The North Head Historic Reserve Conservation Management Plan (1999) continues to apply, until such time that an integrated maunga plan, which will include Maungauika (North Head), comes into effect.

The coastal defence sites around the periphery of the city are a significant feature of Auckland’s historic and cultural heritage. The Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place includes the following three historic reserves administered by the Department (Table 4) (refer to Volume II, Maps 7.18 and 7.19).

Table 4: Historic reserves in the Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place

HISTORIC RESERVE	LOCATION	SIZE (HA)	LAND STATUS
Fort Takapuna	On the northern side of Devonport (North Shore) Peninsula.	3.2	Historic Reserve
North Head	At the end of Devonport (North Shore) Peninsula, at the entrance to Waitemata Harbour.	8.6	Historic Reserve
Stony Batter	At the northeastern end of Waiheke Island.	18.4	Historic Reserve

A Conservation Management Plan was approved by the Auckland Conservation Board for North Head Historic Reserve in September 1999. Regard has been given to this Plan during the preparation of this section of the CMS.

22.1 Description

Fort Takapuna, Maungauika/North Head and Stony Batter are all considered to have outstanding landscape values, and command superb views of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park and its islands. Their strategic location and commanding views made them important lookout and defence sites both for Māori and, from the late 1800s, for the construction of European defence fortifications.

Fort Takapuna and North Head are comprised mostly of open grassland, with some native and exotic trees and shrubs, and remnant coastal forest on steep faces. Stony Batter is characterised by rolling pasture and is notable for its distinctive andesitic boulder outcrops. On Waiheke Island, forest remnants made up of taraire, pūriri (*Vitex lucens*), tōtara (*Podocarpus totara*), pōhutukawa and kānuka are the best of their type, and support good populations of kererū/New Zealand pigeon.

During the 1870s, fear of a Russian attack prompted the establishment of substantial coastal defences to protect the rapidly growing Auckland settlement. North Head and Fort Takapuna were among the earliest fortifications to be built, with construction

beginning in 1885 and 1886, respectively. Both forts were later expanded during World Wars I and II. The outbreak of World War II led to the expansion of the coastal defence system for the port of Auckland that extended to Whangaparaoa Peninsula in the north and Stony Batter in the south. The complexes are unique in that they contain elements from all periods of coastal defence in New Zealand.

FORT TAKAPUNA

O Peretū, the traditional name of Takapuna Head/Fort Takapuna, has a long history of Māori occupation, with settlements and villages extending from Maungauika (North Head) north along the coastline to just beyond Castor Bay (Te Rahopara-a-Peretu). In spite of several generations of warfare extending from the 1760s to the 1820s, the traditional occupants remained on the land until after European settlement began.

Features of Fort Takapuna include emplacements for twin 6-inch disappearing guns, an underground magazine, barracks, observation posts, an engine room and searchlights. The fort was utilised for many purposes during its life: as a training area for Māori and Pacific Island reinforcements, a camp for German prisoners of war and Māori conscientious objectors, a hospital for flu victims during World War I, and a storage area for naval ammunition. In 1963, the Royal New Zealand Navy moved its training school from Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga to the fort, built new gunnery facilities and established an Officer Training School; previously, officers had been sent overseas to train.

After being used for over a century for New Zealand defence purposes, Fort Takapuna was taken over by the Department in 2000. The area is now divided into the Fort Takapuna Historic Reserve, which is administered by the Department, and the Recreation Reserve to the west, which is administered by Auckland Council. The New Zealand Defence Force Officer and Trade Training Schools are located on adjacent defence land.

Fort Takapuna is popular for special events, picnicking, walking, exploring the fort and enjoying the views across the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park. An opportunity exists to work with other authorities to provide a continuous coastal track from Narrow Neck Beach to Torpedo Bay, linking the visitor sites of Fort Takapuna to North Head as a trail interpreting the area's history. This site is used as a back-up to North Head for paragliding and (less commonly) hang-gliding in certain wind conditions.

Concession use of Fort Takapuna includes a café and function centre in the former Officers' Mess, weddings and a biennial sculpture exhibition (Sculpture On Shore). There is potential for further concessions to enhance the visitor experience, including the establishment of regular guided tours of the fort. The extensive historic features and their links to the other coastal defence reserves also provide opportunities for further interpretation.

MAUNGAUIKA/NORTH HEAD

Maungauika (North Head) is a prominent volcanic cone that was formed in a series of eruptions over 32 000 years ago²². Two-thirds of Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve is bordered by the coast, where the tuff cone has formed a rocky shore and cliffs above the foreshore on the eastern side. An extension of the historic reserve to include the foreshore would enable management of the foreshore to be integrated with that for the historic reserve in accordance with the same legislative framework.

22 Németh, K. et al. 2012: Monogenetic volcanism of the South Auckland and Auckland Volcanic Fields. IAVCEI – CMV/CVS – IAS 4IMC Conference, Auckland, New Zealand.

Maungauika, or the mountain of Uika, is an important place in traditional Māori history. Early photographs of the pā site, which is one of three in the Devonport area, show remnants of Māori gardens on the lower slopes, but no sign of the earthwork defences that are prominent on other volcanic cones. European visitors to the area in the 1850s described a Māori settlement at the foot of Maungauika (North Head), with gardens and fish drying racks.

Maungauika/North Head is considered to be the most significant coastal defence site in New Zealand because of its size, the variety of defence installations and its long military history, which spanned nearly 120 years. In 1878, the area was set aside as a public reserve on the basis that it would be given up for defence purposes if required. In 1885, the construction of three large gun batteries began for the defence of the Rangitoto Channel and Waitemata Harbour. Due to the haste in which the original structures were built, prisoners were kept busy for the next 25 years rebuilding the fortifications.

During World War II, North Head was the main administrative centre for Auckland's coastal defences. However, by the end of the 1950s, the coastal defence system had been scrapped and the army left the area. The navy utilised the summit and its many buildings until 1996. Since then, the Department has occupied the buildings for administrative purposes, to maintain their historic heritage value and reduce problems such as vandalism in the reserve.

Today, the Maungauika (North Head) summit comprises eight historic military buildings. Four of these have considerable significance, including the 1885 barracks building and adjacent stone kitchen building, the oldest buildings on the reserve. Other features of the site include an extensive tunnel network, searchlights, engine rooms, gun emplacements and a rare 1887 disappearing gun.

With an estimated 500 000 visitors per year, Maungauika/North Head is one of the most frequently visited recreation areas in Auckland. Special occasions such as the Auckland Anniversary Day Regatta attract as many as 10 000 people to the area. A large proportion of visitors are from the neighbouring residential community who use the reserve for walking, jogging and dog walking.

Visitors come to enjoy the outstanding views of Auckland City and the inner Gulf, to walk, and to explore the historic tunnels and defences. Visitor facilities include the 1885 stone kitchen building, which has been developed into an interpretative film theatre, an upgraded car park, a toilet block, tracks and a series of self-guided walks. The recently restored 1885 barracks building, situated near the summit of the reserve, has the potential to be developed into an interpretation centre, providing interpretation of not only North Head, but also the wider coastal defence network and Hauraki Gulf Marine Park. Concession activities in Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve include guided tours, bus tours, filming, weddings and celebrations, and sporting and other special events.

STONY BATTER

Along with its rock formations, Stony Batter is best known for its spectacular World War II underground defence complex. Built between 1942 and 1946, it included three 9.2-inch gun emplacements that were linked by a network of underground tunnels and chambers. Stony Batter illustrates the later stages of the development of Auckland's coastal defence network. By the time it was built, the more powerful guns could be sited further away from the ports they were defending.

Since 2000, the Stony Batter Protection and Restoration Society has been working to restore the tunnel complex, including installing engines and other features that were found in the complex. It has also created a small museum and information centre at the entrance

to the complex, and keeps the complex open to the public, providing information and guided tours.

Stony Batter receives fewer visitors than Fort Takapuna and North Head due to its location at the eastern end of Waiheke Island. However, the underground tunnel complex is a fascinating place to explore and has the potential to become a key destination for visitors to Waiheke Island. A number of factors are holding this Place back from realising its potential, including:

- reliance on the Society to undertake restoration activities and provide visitor services; stretching the capacity and capability of core, active members.
- the uneven standard of interpretation panels, with a mix of departmental information signs and signs that the Society has produced itself.
- some reticence by tourism organisations to promote Stony Batter as a visitor destination.
- its location at the end of the Waiheke tourist trail far from the ferry terminal.
- the need for private transport and a 20-minute walk from the car park.
- lack of lighting in the tunnel complex meaning visitors have to know to bring their own torch or hire torches from the Society at the museum, adding to the cost of visiting the site.

Stony Batter also offers a number of walking opportunities, including a track through farmland and native bush to Opopo Bay to the south of the reserve, and Hooks Bay to the north.

22.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Coastal Defence Historic Reserves Place

22.2.1 OUTCOME

The nationally significant historic and cultural features of the coastal defence historic reserves are protected, conserved and highly valued by the community. The historic features of the coastal defence sites and their links to each other provide a unified visitor experience.

The open, grassed landscapes of Fort Takapuna and North Head, and the remnant forest and pastoral landscape of Stony Batter are protected. The remnant native vegetation of the coastal defence historic reserves is enhanced where it does not degrade the historic or cultural values.

Places of significance to tangata whenua are protected and their connection with the coastal defence historic reserves is strengthened through collaborative relationships. A positive relationship is maintained between the Department, tangata whenua and the community.

Fort Takapuna

Fort Takapuna is a valued community treasure for Devonport-Takapuna residents and the wider Auckland community.

Visitors may experience regular interactions with other visitors, and encounter high numbers of visitors during weekends, public holidays and special events. Through on-site interpretation and conservation of the historic features, visitors understand and value the historic significance of the fort. The Officers' Mess building is adaptively reused as a

café or restaurant, providing a community benefit while ensuring the ongoing protection and maintenance of this building. The reserve retains its open space character, views of Rangitoto Island and neighbourhood park ambience.

Effective integrated management of Fort Takapuna Historic Reserve with the adjoining recreation reserve continues to be achieved through the Department working closely with Auckland Council and the community.

Maungauika/North Head

As an Icon destination, Maungauika/North Head provides visitors with an unforgettable experience, in which its Māori history, outstanding assemblage of military defensive sites and geological heritage converge with its sentinel landscape value. Visitors are informed through self-guided walks, audio-visual displays and high-quality interpretation. Visitor facilities are in keeping with the historic and cultural values of its landscape, and provide a link to the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.

Visitors to Maungauika/North Head experience regular interactions with other visitors and encounter high numbers of visitors year round. However, the reserve retains its open space character, dramatic vistas of the Gulf and neighbourhood park ambience. The Department maintains an administrative presence at North Head, consistent with the proper and beneficial management and administration of the reserve.

Stony Batter

Stony Batter is a valued community treasure for Waiheke Islanders and the wider Auckland community. Stony Batter's potential as a significant and quality visitor destination on Waiheke Island that visitors recommend highly to others is realised as a result of working with the community and concession holders. Stony Batter's tunnel complex is explored independently or by taking a guided walking tour. Visitors discover stories about the development of the tunnel complex and its role in the defence of Auckland, and about early Māori settlement that preceded its military history.

22.2.2 POLICIES

- 22.2.2.1 Maintain and upgrade tracks, consistent with maintaining the historic values of the reserves, to enable visitors to appreciate their geological features, landscape and historic values.
- 22.2.2.2 Work with Auckland Council and tangata whenua to develop a continuous coastal walkway from Narrow Neck Beach to Torpedo Bay.
- 22.2.2.3 Pursue options to improve public access to military fortifications, and to provide a safe and quality visitor experience.

Fort Takapuna

- 22.2.2.4 May grant concessions for non-powered aircraft landings²³ at Fort Takapuna:
 - a) provided that any adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other visitors are avoided, remedied or mitigated; and
 - b) subject to the criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three.

23 This includes landings, take offs and hovering

Maungauika/North Head

- 22.2.2.5 Have regard to the landmark significance of the area, and the presence and character of existing structures and facilities when designing and locating any new facilities and ancillary structures.
- 22.2.2.6 Should provide an allocated space for vehicle parking, and restrict heavy vehicle use to service vehicles and authorised tour buses no greater than 3.5 tonnes unladen (tare) weight.
- 22.2.2.7 Ensure that the departmental use of historical buildings has no significant effect on their character and beyond the boundary of the reserve.
- 22.2.2.8 May grant concessions for non-powered aircraft landings at Maungauika/North Head:
 - a) provided that any adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other visitors are avoided, remedied or mitigated; and
 - b) subject to the criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1 in Part Three.
- 22.2.2.9 May investigate an extension of the Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve to include the adjacent foreshore.

Stony Batter

- 22.2.2.10 Work with the community and concession holders to achieve sustainable and quality visitor services and facilities at Stony Batter.
- 22.2.2.11 May allow aircraft landings at Stony Batter consistent with the zoning in Aircraft Access Map in Volume II and subject to the criteria in Policies 24.3.4.1 and 24.3.4.3 in Part Three.

22.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 22.2.3.1 Report on the quality of the visitor experience provided at Stony Batter Historic Reserve and actions to improve the visitor experience identified.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 22.2.3.2 Implementation of actions to improve the quality of the visitor experience provided at Stony Batter Historic Reserve.

23 Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana Wetland Place

The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana Wetland Place encompasses the coastal and intertidal wetland of the southern Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana and adjoining public conservation land administered by the Department (refer to Volume II, Map 7.20). Policy direction for this Place focuses on sites managed by the Department and the protection of significant conservation values across the Place, including the integrated management of pressures and threats originating from surrounding catchments and the marine environment. This Place traverses the areas managed under this CMS and the Waikato Conservation Management Strategy. Both strategies guide the Department’s management responsibilities in this Place.

23.1 Description

The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana wetland (hereafter referred to as ‘the Wetland’) is listed as a wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention (refer Appendix 18). It is important as an over-wintering site for internationally significant birdlife. The Place also supports threatened native species, provides important ecosystem services, contains rare landforms, has a rich cultural history, and provides passive recreation opportunities and cultural food resources.

The Wetland covers approximately 7800 ha of intertidal flats and margins on the southern and western shores of the Firth of Thames. A large proportion comprises foreshore and seabed within the coastal marine area that is administered by Waikato Regional Council through the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan. The remaining land areas are in a mix of private and public ownership, with the Department and Hauraki District Council administering pockets of public land along the coastal margin. The Wetland is also part of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park (refer section 7), and close to several regional parks to the west and the Coromandel Forest Park to the east.

Not only is the Wetland one of four coastal wetlands of international importance in New Zealand, but it is also one of New Zealand’s three most important coastal sites for wading birds, and is identified as an area of significant conservation value in the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan. As an interface between terrestrial, freshwater and marine environments, the Wetland is vulnerable to pressures from both marine and land use activities. The health of the Wetland is inextricably linked to the health of the Firth of Thames, the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana and waterways draining surrounding catchments, including the Hunua Ranges, Coromandel Ranges and, particularly, the Hauraki Plains. Pressures include nitrification, sedimentation, contamination, habitat loss, unauthorised livestock grazing, human disturbance and invasive species²⁴, particularly introduced sedges, spartina and saltwater paspalum (*Paspalum vaginatum*).

The highly productive intertidal flats of the Wetland include features such as shallow estuarine water, mud and sand flats, shellfish beds, sand bars, river mouths, mānawa/mangrove forest, salt marsh, and freshwater swamp. Terrestrial margins are comprised of shell banks and grass flats, with the area between Miranda and Kaiaua being one of the world’s best examples of chenier plain, a rare and internationally significant geological landform. Approximately 132 bird species have been recorded within the Wetland, 43 of which are migratory.

24 Brownell, B. 2008: Muddy Feet Phase II: Firth of Thames Ramsar Site gap analysis working paper. Tikapa Kahawai Coastal/ Marine Advisory Service. Kaiaua, New Zealand.

Tidal flats and margins provide internationally important feeding and breeding habitat for waterfowl, including game birds, and shorebirds, and feeding habitat for approximately 35 000 migratory wading birds. This includes up to 11 000 birds from the East Asian-Australasian Flyway, a migratory route between the Northern and Southern Hemispheres that terminates at the Wetland. Key species include kuaka/bar-tailed godwit, huahou/lesser or red knot and sharp-tailed sandpiper (*Calidris acuminata*). New Zealand migrants such as the ngutu pare/wrybill, tōrea/South Island pied oystercatcher, pohowera/banded dotterel (*Charadrius bicinctus*) and poaka/pied stilt (*Himantopus himantopus*) overwinter in the area. Marine habitats within the Wetland and the wider Firth of Thames support a diverse fish fauna, including flounder, rays, sharks and tuna/eels, and marine mammals, such as kera wēra/orca and several other species of whale and dolphin. Marine mammal strandings have occurred on the western foreshore of the Wetland, making this location of particular significance and interest to iwi.

Estuarine wetland habitats support non-migratory species, including matuku/Australasian bittern, mohopereru/banded rail and mātātā/North Island fernbird; and shell banks provide important breeding habitat for tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel. Bird and skink species also rely on terrestrial habitats along the wetland margin. In situ protection of birdlife, and habitat degradation within and surrounding the Wetland are important inter-agency management issues. The New Zealand Government is a signatory to the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership, an international partnership aimed at protecting migratory birds and their habitats along this migratory route.

Mānawa/mangrove forests and salt marsh communities provide nursery habitat for fish and support birdlife. Mānawa/mangroves also buffer coastal marine habitats from the effects of land-based activities such as sedimentation and nutrient run-off. However, increased sediment has led to the expansion of mānawa/mangroves into the roosting and feeding habitats of wading birds, and is thought to be linked to declining trends in several wading species, including ngutu pare/wrybill, pohowera/banded dotterel, curlew sandpiper (*Calidris ferruginea*) and turnstone (*Arenaria interpres*)²⁵.

Several threatened plants are present in and near the Wetland. These include the Maori musk, which is a saltmarsh plant, and a creeping fern, *Cyclosorus interruptus*. Green mistletoe is present within shrubland areas on the chenier plain north of Miranda; although this species is not nationally threatened, populations are considered to be regionally threatened.

Much of the original indigenous vegetation on the chenier plain has been modified or removed. Only small pockets of indigenous shrubland remain and the area is now dominated by introduced grasses. These areas are grazed, which assists with the management of invasive weeds but has contributed to habitat degradation in places. The Department intends to work closely with concessionaires and other agencies to protect high-priority values of the Wetland site through, for example, site-appropriate grazing regimes, fencing off of sites sensitive to grazing and indigenous vegetation restoration. The long-term goal is to bring all grazing concessions in the Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose Wildlife Reserve under one concession, to better enable the protection of natural values. For the same reason, the Department is also considering the benefits of its reclassification as a scientific reserve.

The Wetland and wider Firth of Thames provide important ecosystem services by trapping sediment and preventing coastal erosion. These areas have been highly modified by an array of land use practices (e.g. intensive agriculture, mining, landfill development and flood

25 Ibid.

control management) and are particularly vulnerable to the ongoing effects of land use activities on the Hauraki Plains. The Piako and Waihou rivers deposit significant sediment and nutrient loads into the Firth of Thames. Other potential stressors to the Wetland site include sediment contamination linked to historical mining, and wastewater discharges into rivers and the Firth of Thames. Aquaculture also has the potential to impact water quality and feeding habitats within the Wetland where not appropriately managed.

Māori traditionally use the Firth of Thames as a site for gathering shellfish, fishing and catching waterfowl. There are also significant historic waka voyaging routes throughout the Firth of Thames. Many culturally important sites such as pā, kāinga (unfortified villages), middens, terraces, pits and wāhi tapu are dotted along the coast and found within the Wetland. The Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana, including the Wetland, is of great significance to Hauraki whānui, and maintaining the health of the Wetland, protecting culturally significant sites and recognition of the role of Hauraki whānui as kaitiaki are key issues for iwi.

Both commercial and recreational fishing take place in the Firth of Thames, with tuna/shortfin eel (*Anguilla australis*) and pātiki/flounder targeted in or near the Wetland. Key recreation activities associated with the Wetland are coastal walking, bird watching and fishing. Freedom camping also occurs at one location. Basic tracks provide access to bird viewing hides at Miranda and north of Miranda along the coastal margin. The Miranda Naturalists' Trust operates its own shorebird education centre at Miranda, and the Trust, along with the New Zealand Ornithological Society and other interested organisations, plays a lead role in increasing understanding and awareness of the wetland ecosystem and birdlife. Activities led by these organisations include advocacy, participation in international partnerships, protection of birdlife, ecological research and bird surveys. Improved access and on-site interpretation would enhance public use and appreciation of the Wetland.

A proposed continuation of the Hauraki Rail Trail from Kopu to Kaiaua following the margins of the Wetland site is supported in principle by the Department. It has the potential to increase recreational use and enjoyment of this area, and to enhance access to the recreation opportunities at Miranda. The development and management of new recreation and commercial opportunities, including access to the coast within the Wetland, construction of structures, and provision of services and goods to the public, would need to be carefully managed to minimise any adverse effects on birdlife, the wetland ecosystem and the peaceful, undeveloped setting.

'Rays Rest', which is located on the eastern margin of the Wetland, is a popular motor home camping site on land administered by Hauraki District Council. Activities associated with freedom camping and other recreation activities at this site, including paragliding, have at times impacted on the Wetland. These include effluent and litter pollution, harassment of wildlife by uncontrolled dogs and cats, and disturbance of wildlife by paragliding activities. Management of uncontrolled dogs is also an issue along the coast to the north of this reserve. Vehicle use along the foreshore within the Wetland, which is often illegally accessed via public conservation land, the collection of shell material from the chenier plain and discharges from an adjacent and abandoned landfill administered by Hauraki District Council also impact on the values of the Wetland.

Inter-agency cooperation and a collaborative approach to managing pressures and threats to this coastal wetland are particularly important given the Wetland's international status and the influence of surrounding catchments and the wider marine environment on its ecological integrity. The Department is committed to working with iwi, other agencies and organisations, landowners, and communities to meet the protection and priority management needs of this Place.

Three key programmes for the long-term preservation of this Place are:

1. The Living Waters initiative in partnership with Fonterra aimed at improving shorebird roosting habitats and reducing sedimentation and nutrient inputs to the Wetland from catchments between Miranda and Kaiaua.
2. A Marine Spatial Plan for the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana, which is being led by Auckland Council and Waikato Regional Council, in collaboration with iwi, the Hauraki Gulf Forum, Department of Conservation, Ministry for Primary Industries and local authorities, to achieve integrated planning and management of the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana, including the Wetland.
3. The Hauraki Gulf Forum, which was set up to facilitate integrated management of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park.

Key management actions for the Wetland include integrated catchment management to reduce sedimentation and nutrient inputs, particularly from the Hauraki Plains; increased protection of the Wetland; and on-site management to restore and protect important habitats and birdlife, and to remove in situ or adjacent sources of ecosystem degradation and pollution. In addition, ongoing research to improve understanding of the implications of catchment-wide impacts is needed to inform management.

23.2 Outcome, policies and milestones for the Firth of Thames/ Tīkapa Moana Wetland Place

23.2.1 OUTCOME

The ecosystem health of the Ramsar-listed Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana wetland is improving and bird and marine life are flourishing. Conservation management of this Place is well coordinated and a success story for coastal wetland and marine ecosystem conservation. The area of legally protected land along the coastal margin of the Wetland has increased.

The Wetland hosts a diverse array of healthy wading bird, shorebird, seabird and wetland bird populations, including migratory species reliant on the Wetland as a migratory flyway site. Threatened and at risk species, such as the ngutu pare/wrybill and tūturiwhatu/northern New Zealand dotterel, are increasing in their range. The diversity of wetland habitats present is protected and maintained. Coordinated and collaborative research and monitoring ensures that the coastal ecosystem and the impact of sediment and nutrient inputs are better understood.

The mauri of the Wetland and its value as a ‘food basket’ is enhanced by all who share responsibility for it. Culturally significant sites and values are protected collaboratively. The coastal wetland ecosystem and birdlife are respected by all visitors to the Wetland and adjacent reserves.

Indigenous vegetation communities and the natural character are restored in collaboration with iwi, territorial authorities, the community and other interested parties at priority sites along the coastal margin. The stronghold populations of green mistletoe and the threatened Maori musk at Miranda are thriving and expanding in range. The world-renowned chenier plain landform is maintained and enhanced by the Department on public conservation land, and by landowners and other interested parties elsewhere.

Sedimentation and nutrient and contaminant inputs to the Wetland are significantly reduced. Decreased sedimentation means that mānawa/mangrove forests are no longer expanding into intertidal areas. The maintenance of ecosystem services, including flood

mitigation and sediment containment, has a neutral effect on ecosystem functioning and priority bird habitat.

Invasive weeds are controlled to low densities at priority sites. Low-impact grazing is used to control weeds on public conservation land in a way that benefits ecological values. Introduced mammalian predators are controlled to low densities by the community to protect indigenous bird populations.

Recreation opportunities are provided in collaboration with local authorities, iwi, interested organisations and landowners. As a well-visited nature tourism destination, the Wetland is a place where people experience vast intertidal flats that are teeming with wading birds in a peaceful, undeveloped setting. Some noise disturbance is experienced during the game bird hunting season. Visitors access the wetland foreshore by foot and only at defined locations to protect the sensitive ecosystem and bird and marine life. Bird hides, viewpoints and strategically placed interpretation along coastal tracks enhance these experiences while maintaining the natural setting. On-site interpretation is integrated with information provided at the Miranda Shorebird Centre and highlights the values of the site, such as birdlife, the coastal wetland ecosystem, cultural values and the chenier plain. Other structures, such as maimai, blend in with the natural character of the Wetland.

Local authorities, iwi, the Department, interested organisations and landowners work collaboratively to manage pressures and threats to the Wetland, particularly those originating from the Hauraki Plains catchment, and areas within and adjacent to the Wetland.

23.2.2 POLICIES

- 23.2.2.1 Advocate for a reduction in catchment-wide adverse effects on the Wetland, particularly with respect to:
- a) minimising sedimentation and nutrient inputs; and
 - b) protecting wildlife habitat, botanical values, hydrological processes, and the ecological integrity of the Wetland.
- 23.2.2.2 Advocate for the prevention of aircraft activity within, adjacent to and above the Wetland, particularly low-flying aircraft including paragliding and aerobatics during important migratory periods, including from early September to the end of March each year²⁶ for wading birds.
- 23.2.2.3 Advocate for and work collaboratively with tangata whenua, local authorities, the Hauraki Gulf Forum, the Ministry for Primary Industries, and other interested parties to achieve protection of the Wetland and bird and marine life from adverse impacts associated with marine-based activities (such as, but not limited to, fishing and aquaculture) in the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana.
- 23.2.2.4 Work with local authorities to facilitate cooperative management of activities on reserves within and adjacent to the Wetland to protect habitat and ecosystem values in respect of:
- a) freedom camping;
 - b) dog and cat control;
 - c) litter and pollution management;
 - d) shell harvesting on the foreshore and chenier plain; and
 - e) vehicle use.

26 The exact date of arrival and departure of migratory birds will vary from year to year.

- 23.2.2.5 Support the activities of the Miranda Naturalists' Trust in collaboration with tangata whenua, local authorities, the Hauraki Gulf Forum and other agencies and interested parties, where consistent with the Department's responsibilities.
- 23.2.2.6 Implement New Zealand's obligations to protect the Wetland as a Wetland of International Importance under the Ramsar Convention, and migratory wading bird habitat under the East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership in collaboration with iwi, territorial authorities, the Hauraki Gulf Forum, Ministry for Primary Industries and other interested parties, in accordance with Policy 24.2.1.6 in Part Three.
- 23.2.2.7 Secure legal protection of land for conservation purposes within and adjacent to the Wetland to protect habitat and ecosystem values, including:
 - a) closure of unformed legal roads within the Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose Wildlife Reserve; and
 - b) where such opportunities arise, extension of protected land along the wetland coastal margin.
- 23.2.2.8 Consider reclassifying the Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose Wildlife Reserve as a scientific reserve to reflect the significant ecological and geological values present.
- 23.2.2.9 Limit grazing opportunities within the Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose Wildlife Reserve to a maximum of one concessionaire, to enable the Department to coordinate the management of ecological values within the reserve. Apply conditions to manage adverse effects on ecological values, including (but not limited to):
 - a) setting maximum limits on stocking numbers;
 - b) fencing to exclude stock from ecologically sensitive sites; and
 - c) measures to protect the values of the chenier plain.
- 23.2.2.10 Minimise visitor facilities and structures on public conservation land within this Place, and work with tangata whenua, territorial authorities, other agencies and interested parties to achieve this at other locations within or adjacent to the Wetland. Any structures on public conservation land should be small in scale, preferably single storey, and designed in a manner that is in keeping with the surrounding landscape and does not detract from the peaceful, undeveloped nature of the Place.
- 23.2.2.11 Should not authorise built accommodation and the hire and sale of goods and services on public conservation land within this Place, to protect the peaceful, undeveloped nature of this Place.
- 23.2.2.12 Consider proposals for new recreation opportunities on public conservation land, consistent with the protection of indigenous natural resources and historic and cultural heritage, and work with others to facilitate recreation opportunities, in accordance with the following criteria:
 - a) adverse effects on ecosystems, wildlife habitat and protected species, particularly birdlife, are avoided or minimised;
 - b) track and facility development is avoided at ecologically sensitive sites including important bird feeding, breeding and roosting habitats, inter-tidal areas and beaches;
 - c) access to beaches is by foot only, and is managed to minimise disturbance to birdlife and other sensitive values; and
 - d) understanding and appreciation of the Wetland is enhanced.

- 23.2.2.13 Should not authorise motorised vehicle access on public conservation land within this Place, except where authorised as part of a grazing concession, to prevent damage to the chenier plain and ecological values, and disturbance to migratory and resident birds and their habitats.
 - 23.2.2.14 Should not allow aircraft landings and take-offs on public conservation land within this Place, to prevent disturbance to migratory and resident birds, and adverse effects on the visitor experience.
 - 23.2.2.15 In conjunction with Waikato Regional Council, control spartina, and investigate options for controlling saltwater paspalum in the Wetland.
-

23.2.3 MILESTONES—OUTPUTS

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 23.2.3.1 Three-yearly report on progress and achievements to Ramsar Convention Secretariat.
- 23.2.3.2 Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.
- 23.2.3.3 The Department's contribution to the implementation of the spartina control programme, and options for saltwater paspalum investigated, in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 23.2.3.4 Legal status of Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose Wildlife Reserve has been reviewed and changed as appropriate.
- 23.2.3.5 Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.

Completed by the end of Year 10 after CMS approval (2024)

- 23.2.3.6 Spartina reduced to a very low density or eradicated, and agreed control options for saltwater paspalum implemented, in conjunction with Waikato Regional Council.
- 23.2.3.7 Report to East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership.
- 23.2.3.8 Three-yearly report on progress and achievements to Ramsar Convention Secretariat demonstrates the Wetland is well managed and continues to support a range of important species and functioning ecosystems. Discussions with landowners have been initiated to increase the area of protected land.
- 23.2.3.9 Unformed legal roads within the Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose Wildlife Reserve closed and the land added to the Reserve.

Part Three

24 Specific policy requirements for Auckland

24.1 General

This section implements the requirements of the Conservation General Policy 2005 and other legislative requirements. The policies of this section apply to all public conservation lands and waters covered by this CMS. Where the provisions in Part Three are different from the provisions in Part Two, the more specific provisions in Part Two prevail.

Changes to this CMS may be required from time to time during its term. This may require changes to be made by the amendment or review processes under sections 17H or 17I of the Conservation Act 1987. These situations may include where additional land area is to be managed under a CMS, or limitations changed on an activity that occurs on land or waters managed under the CMS.

24.1.1 POLICIES—GENERAL

- 24.1.1.1 In interpreting the policies in this CMS the words ‘will’, ‘should’ and ‘may’ have the following meanings:
- a) Policies where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or a deliberate decision has been made by the Minister to direct decision-makers state that a particular action or actions ‘will’ be undertaken.
 - b) Policies that carry with them a strong expectation of outcome without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister and other decision-makers state that a particular action or actions ‘should’ be undertaken.
 - c) Policies intended to allow flexibility in decision-making, state that a particular action or actions ‘may’ be undertaken.
- 24.1.1.2 Manage public conservation lands and waters consistently with the purpose for which they are held.
- 24.1.1.3 Manage public conservation lands and waters consistently with the outcomes, objectives and policies of this CMS.
- 24.1.1.4 Adopt an integrated management approach (as defined in the Conservation General Policy 2005) to the application of this CMS, and to cross-boundary management of public conservation lands and waters.
- 24.1.1.5 Where a change to the CMS is required to impose or increase limits on any use or activity or include new species or land, the relevant process under the provisions of the Conservation Act 1987 will be followed.
- 24.1.1.6 Ensure the classification or statutory purpose of public conservation lands and waters reflects their values.

- 24.1.1.7 Restrict or close access to reserves consistent with the conditions and restrictions of use of the reserve; and to conservation areas where necessary for reasons of public safety or emergency or to:
- a) protect natural, historic or cultural heritage;
 - b) control biosecurity risks;
 - c) enable the eradication of pests using aerial bait operations;
 - d) allow military exercise operations;
 - e) protect a species, or a historic or cultural site; or
 - f) allow tree felling.
- 24.1.1.8 When undertaking work or activities that are covered by Appendix 1, determine if they meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemption from land use consents.
- 24.1.1.9 Make and review bylaws and regulations to enable better management of public conservation lands and waters within Auckland.
-

24.2 Authorisations (General)

Unless enabled by other legislation²⁷, anyone wishing to undertake an activity for specific gain or reward (including carrying out a trade, occupation or business) on public conservation lands and waters, or undertake other activities such as research or collection of resources of any kind, requires an authorisation. The most common authorisation is a concession under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987. The Department aims to allow for a range of authorisations that are consistent with relevant legislation and policy, the protection of natural resources and historic and cultural heritage, and the recreational settings and planned outcomes and policies for specific places (Part Two). Authorisations can add value to visitors' experiences by connecting them with natural, historic and cultural heritage, and providing opportunities to visit places that may not otherwise be easily accessible.

In Auckland, the Department under delegation has granted authorisations for a variety of activities, including recreation and tourism activity, events, grazing, filming, and telecommunications. Applications for authorisations for recreation and tourism activity have mainly been for guiding and related visitor services, particularly on the more accessible islands in the Gulf such as Kawau, Tiritiri Matangi, Rangitoto and Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island). Several sites on the mainland also attract such applications, including Maungauika/North Head, Goat Island Bay and Miranda.

The monitoring of authorised activity is required, and this is particularly necessary for the Gulf islands due to the special nature of many of the islands, the increasing pressure on islands such as Tiritiri Matangi, and the potential effects on the experience of other visitors to those places. Monitoring may also be required for authorised activities in areas that are rarely visited or managed for remote experiences. Where authorised activity is beginning to reach, or has already reached, the environmental and/or social carrying capacity of a place, the Department may limit the amount of activity that can occur in that place.

Community groups, particularly those associated with island restoration programmes, are increasingly applying for authorisations to enable them to undertake activities such as guiding, events, educational activities or the development of visitors centres. Such

²⁷ Examples are the Electricity Act 1992 and Cadastral Survey Act 2002.

authorisations allow for the expansion of services for visitors that might otherwise not be possible, and also help to generate additional funding for conservation activities.

24.2.1 POLICIES—AUTHORISATIONS (CPG 11)

- 24.2.1.1 Issue authorisations in accordance with relevant legislation and the provisions of the Conservation General Policy 2005.
 - 24.2.1.2 Monitor authorised activities and their effects, including cumulative effects, on a regular and ongoing basis.
 - 24.2.1.3 Establish limits for authorisations where demand approaches or exceeds the environmental or social carrying capacity of a place and/or cumulative effects on the environment or other users are becoming unacceptable, and manage through an allocative process.
 - 24.2.1.4 Should not grant authorisations that are inconsistent with the objectives in Part One or the outcomes and policies in Parts Two and Three.
 - 24.2.1.5 The following criteria will be used when considering applications to erect or retain structures or for the adaptive reuse of existing structures on public conservation lands and waters:
 - a) the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) the outcomes and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) whether the structure could reasonably be located outside public conservation lands;
 - d) whether the structure could reasonably be located in another location where fewer potential adverse effects would result from the activity;
 - e) whether the structure adversely affects conservation, including recreational, values;
 - f) whether the structure is readily available for public use;
 - g) whether the structure is consistent with the visitor management zone in Volume II, Map 3 and as described in Appendix 11;
 - h) whether the structure enhances the visitor experience;
 - i) whether the activity promotes or enhances the retention of a historic building; and
 - j) whether the activity is a suitable adaptive reuse of an existing building.
 - 24.2.1.6 Manage (including when considering concession applications) those parts of Auckland that are identified as wetlands of international importance under the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance 1971 (also referred to as the Ramsar Convention) in accordance with the criteria for which those wetland(s) of international importance were nominated and New Zealand's obligations under the Convention.
-

24.3 Vehicles

Vehicle use is part of the range of recreation opportunities that are only allowed on public conservation lands and waters where identified in this CMS. In this CMS, vehicles include motorised and non-motorised land vehicles including power assisted cycles; fixed wing, helicopter and non-powered aircraft; and motorised and non-motorised watercraft. Further discussion of vehicle use can be found in Part Two.

24.3.1 MOTORISED VEHICLES (other than aircraft, watercraft and electric power-assisted pedal cycles not exceeding 300 watts)

Motorised vehicle use is not generally allowed off formed roads on public conservation lands and waters. Auckland has limited opportunities for the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters. In 2008, it was estimated that there were 8500 off-road vehicles in the Auckland region making 250 000 off-road trips per year, with most users being casual rather than with organised groups²⁸. The increasing popularity of powered vehicle recreation and access to appropriate opportunities in Auckland is recognised as an issue for recreation providers that requires a multi-agency approach.

Motorised vehicle use has the potential to adversely affect conservation values and impact negatively on the safety of others, particularly in the coastal environment. Motorised vehicles can destroy shorebird nests and young, cause damage to dune systems, and conflict with other recreational uses. However, many of the impacts are perceived to be created by a small number of irresponsible off-road users²⁹. One of the more popular areas for motorised vehicle use is on the South Kaipara Peninsula, which is discussed in Part Two. A cooperative approach whereby the Department works with four-wheel drive clubs and users' associations needs to be taken to identify appropriate areas for four-wheel drive activities, reduce the impact of inappropriate vehicle use on beaches and raise awareness of the threats vehicles can pose to the sensitive coastal environment. Opportunities to progress conservation work in tandem with four-wheel drive clubs should also be pursued.

POLICIES—MOTORISED VEHICLES—GENERAL (CGP 9.5(b))³⁰

- 24.3.1.1 Should allow motorised vehicles on roads purposefully formed and maintained for vehicle use and in car parks on public conservation lands in the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana, except on islands other than on Waiheke Island and Great Barrier Island. Access may be restricted at any time in the following situations:
- there is a health and safety risk;
 - there is a fire risk;
 - adverse effects are evident on conservation resources; or
 - priorities change for the maintenance of the formed road or designated vehicular route.
- 24.3.1.2 Consider provision for the use of motorised vehicles outside areas provided for by Policy 24.3.1.1 only where it is identified at sites listed in Part Two and subject to Policy 24.3.1.4.

28 Auckland Regional Council 2008: Off road motorised recreation in the Auckland region—issues and potential responses. Paper prepared by Visitor Solutions.

29 Ibid.

30 Bylaws or regulations will be required to implement restrictions relevant to the management of vehicles.

- 24.3.1.3 May allow motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters for the construction, operation and/or maintenance of authorised utilities, farming operations, and restoration activities.
- 24.3.1.4 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters:
 - a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, route or site is located;
 - c) is consistent with the visitor management zone in Volume II, Map 3 and as described in Appendix 11;
 - d) adverse effects (including cumulative adverse effects) on the road, route or site and surrounding natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised (including conflicts between vehicles/mountain bikes and horses);
 - e) risks of fire and biosecurity are avoided; and
 - f) the ongoing management implications of providing vehicle access (e.g. in terms of ongoing maintenance costs) are taken into account.
- 24.3.1.5 Liaise with four-wheel drive and bike groups and may enable these groups to maintain the roads they are authorised to use.
- 24.3.1.6 Work with councils and the New Zealand Police to manage motorised vehicle use on beaches to protect conservation values.
- 24.3.1.7 Establish bylaws and/or regulations, where necessary, to control the use of motorised vehicles on public conservation lands and waters within Auckland.
- 24.3.1.8 Monitor the effects of motorised vehicles on natural, historic, cultural and heritage values, and on other recreational users.
- 24.3.1.9 Review the use of motorised vehicles on roads where monitoring shows that unacceptable adverse effects are occurring.
- 24.3.1.10 Should only allow the use of non-motorised vehicles for the transportation of paragliders and hang gliders in Waihunga Moirs Hill Scenic Reserve.

24.3.2 MOUNTAIN BIKES (NON-MOTORISED)

Mountain biking (excluding power-assisted cycling) has become an established recreational activity. Improved track design, management techniques, user education and signage have reduced early concerns about potential user conflict and impacts on values. Current opportunities for mountain biking exist on Great Barrier Island. Opportunities managed by other agencies include Woodhill, Riverhead and Whitford Forests, and some regional and local parks managed by Auckland Council.

Further opportunities for mountain biking on public conservation lands and waters are proposed for Great Barrier and Kawau Islands. Mountain biking on roads on Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands has also been proposed (refer Part Two). Other areas where the Department could partner with others to develop mountain biking tracks include Nukumea, Totara Peak, Sunnybrook and Lawries Scenic Reserves, and on unformed legal roads adjoining public conservation lands and waters. The role of other agencies and land managers in Auckland, the supply and demand for this activity, the primary purpose for which the land is held, and potential conflict with other recreational users will be taken into account when planning for future mountain biking opportunities.

POLICIES—MOUNTAIN BIKES

- 24.3.2.1 Should allow independent mountain biking, and may allow guided mountain biking or mountain bike events, only on the tracks and roads or other areas listed in Part Two, subject to the criteria specified in Policy 24.3.2.5.
- 24.3.2.2 Require people using mountain bikes to adhere to the ‘Mountain Bikers’ Code’ and, where mountain biking is restricted to identified tracks or roads, require mountain bikers to remain on the track or road formation at all times.
- 24.3.2.3 Establish bylaws or regulations, where necessary, to enable enforcement of the mountain biking provisions.
- 24.3.2.4 Promote opportunities for mountain bike use on tracks and other areas identified in this CMS as being available for mountain bike use on public conservation lands and waters via the Department’s website, and through liaison with tourism information providers and cycling advocates.
- 24.3.2.5 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of mountain bikes on public conservation lands and waters:
 - a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the Place in which the activity will occur;
 - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic or cultural heritage values and other recreational users of the track or road are avoided or otherwise mitigated— this may include (but is not limited to) restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers, and one-way flow; and
 - d) the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight mountain bike opportunities, is taken into account.
- 24.3.2.6 May consider further opportunities for mountain bike use on public conservation lands and waters during the term of this CMS after consultation with cycling clubs, adjoining landowners, tramping clubs and the public, and in accordance with the following criteria:
 - a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome for the Place where the formed track or road is or is proposed to be located;
 - c) adverse effects (including cumulative effects) of mountain bike use on natural, historic or cultural heritage values and other recreational users of the track or road can be avoided or otherwise minimised;
 - d) there are measures to manage the use of mountain bikes, which may include, but are not limited to, restricted seasons, daylight riding only, limits on numbers and one-way flow; and
 - e) there is the ability to provide necessary facilities, including those that may be associated with overnight cycle opportunities.
- 24.3.2.7 Monitor the effects of mountain bike use on natural, historic, cultural and heritage values, and on other recreational users.
- 24.3.2.8 Review mountain bike use on tracks or in places where monitoring shows that unacceptable adverse effects are occurring.
- 24.3.2.9 Should not allow ‘thrill seeker’ styles of mountain biking where they may result in conflicts with other users, and/or adverse effects on natural, historic, cultural or heritage values.

24.3.3 WATERCRAFT

Watercraft are the main form of transport used to access much of the public conservation lands and waters in Auckland, providing access to the many of the islands of the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana. Commercial ferries service many of the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana islands, which are also accessible by private boat. The Department manages six wharves which are available for public and commercial use within the Gulf. These are located on Kawau, Tiritiri Matangi, Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, Rangitoto and Motutapu islands. Commercial ferry and charter boat operators are required to hold a licence to land at departmental wharves, and are charged a fee to cover the Department's ownership and maintenance costs. This requires ongoing monitoring to ensure compliance. The Department undertakes public awareness campaigns and works with Auckland Council, the Hauraki Gulf Forum and others to protect the islands, and keep them free of animal pests, weeds and other invasive organisms.

Most of the waters within Auckland are not public conservation waters, meaning that aside from controls on wharves, limitations have not been placed on watercraft. Both motorised and non-motorised watercraft use is permitted in marine reserves but not for the purposes of fishing or other extractive purposes unless authorised by the Minister.

POLICIES—WATERCRAFT

Make and review bylaws and regulations to enable better management of departmental wharves within Auckland.

24.3.4 AIRCRAFT

All aircraft (both powered and non-powered) require a concession to land on, take off from, or hover above (collectively referred to as landings) any public conservation land that is not a certified aerodrome, other than for search and rescue, departmental management purposes, emergency situations, maritime navigational-aid management, or land survey work, or aircraft operated by the New Zealand Defence Force or the Civil Aviation Authority. The Department, acting under delegated authority from the Minister, manages aircraft landing concessions under provisions of the National Parks Act 1980, the Reserves Act 1977 and Conservation Act 1987, including in accordance with Part IIIB of the Conservation Act (in particular section 17ZF).

Aircraft can facilitate the use and enjoyment of public conservation lands and waters by providing access to difficult-to-reach places and allowing quick access for people with limited time. They are also an important tool for managing public conservation lands and waters, and for search and rescue.

Conversely, aircraft activity (particularly powered aircraft)—even scenic flights that do not involve landings—can have adverse effects on users of public conservation lands and waters, impacting on values such as amenity, natural quiet, wildlife and remoteness. It can also be incompatible with, or adversely impact on, land use activities on adjacent private land, particularly in residential areas. Effects most often relate to the presence, behaviour and noise characteristics of aircraft, and to the frequency of activity. They can also relate to conflicts between people and their activities where some have used aircraft for access and others have not. While noise is not an issue for non-powered aircraft, their use can still result in other effects identified above.

Aircraft activity in Auckland is currently confined to irregular helicopter landings for recreation and filming purposes on some islands in the Gulf, aeroplane landings for top-dressing operations in the Kaipara Hills Recreation Reserve, hang gliding and

paragliding from Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve and Papakanui Stewardship Area, and hang gliding and paragliding from Waihunga Moirs Hill Scenic Reserve.

The size of individual units of public conservation land in Auckland and the proximity to roads means that demand for aircraft use on public conservation land is very low. However, helicopter landings and take-offs principally for heli-fishing occur on beaches and rock platforms on some Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana islands below MHWS, which is outside public conservation land. Some illegal landings also occur on remote nature reserve islands. This poses a potential risk that animal pests, such as mice and Argentine ants, and plant pests could be reintroduced into areas that are pest-free or have a limited number of pests. Landings can also disturb threatened wildlife.

The Department will seek through either the Reserves Act 1977 or the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 to have land below MHWS on islands and public conservation land with high natural values added to adjacent public conservation land (refer Objective 6.1.1.18). This would mean that landings require concessions, and that the Department can use regulations and bylaws to control aircraft landings. At the same time, the Department will work with aircraft operators to identify the level of demand for heli-fishing, where landings are occurring, and how the risks to natural values on adjacent public conservation land can be avoided or minimised.

In order to manage the effects of aircraft landings on public conservation lands and waters, four aircraft access zones (as shown on Volume II, Map 4) have been developed and applied nationally. These zones reflect the different management methodologies required, and the likelihood of granting concessions, for aircraft landings:

- Red Zone—areas where a concession application to land an aircraft would most likely be declined. However, concessions may be granted for aircraft landings associated with the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment or utilities (e.g. meteorological, seismic, communication systems) or to support research. This zone may apply where:
 - a) legislation provides strong direction that concessions should not be granted for aircraft landings (e.g. gazetted wilderness areas);
 - b) there is a need to protect conservation and/or recreational values from the effects of aircraft landings (e.g. nature and scientific reserves, threatened species habitat, high use picnic and camping areas);
 - c) the area is readily accessible by other means;
 - d) aircraft activity would be incompatible with adjacent land use activities on private land (e.g. residential areas); or
 - e) aircraft activity may interfere with management activities.
- Yellow Zone—areas where a concession application to land an aircraft is likely to be granted where it meets the nationally consistent limits (and other criteria in this CMS) for this zone. This zone applies where there is a need to restrict aircraft use; either where visitors expect a low level of encounters with aircraft or where values of natural quiet predominate particularly in backcountry and remote areas.
- Green Zone—areas where a concession application to land an aircraft is likely to be granted, subject to any relevant outcome and/or the criteria in the relevant policies. This zone may apply where:
 - a) conservation and/or recreation values are unlikely to be affected by landings;
 - b) aircraft access is encouraged;
 - c) there are natural limits on sites where landings can actually occur; or
 - d) there is likely to be little demand over the life of this CMS.

- c) is consistent with the purposes for which the lands and waters concerned are held;
 - d) adverse effects on conservation values, including natural quiet are avoided or otherwise minimised;
 - e) adverse effects on other visitors (taking into account the size of zone and the proximity of other ground users) are avoided or otherwise minimised;
 - f) the need for monitoring using new technologies;
 - g) avoiding landings near tracks, huts or car parks unless otherwise specified in Part Two; and
 - h) the need to hold and comply with certification in a noise management scheme approved by the Department, in specified locations.
- 24.3.4.2 Should not grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Red Zone unless it is for the following purposes:
- a) the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems); or
 - b) to support authorised research.
- 24.3.4.3 Should only grant concessions for aircraft landings in the Yellow Zone that meet the following limit:
- a) two landings per operator per day at any one site (defined as any landing site within a 1-km radius of the initial landing site) and a maximum of 20 landings per site per operator per year.
- 24.3.4.4 May grant concessions for aircraft landings in the following Orange Zones that meet the criteria and limits specified in Part Two in addition to the criteria in Policy 24.3.4.1:
- a) Raoul Island;
 - b) Burgess Island (Pokohinu);
 - c) Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island;
 - d) Coastal areas specified in the Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place;
 - e) Rakitu Island;
 - f) Coastal areas specified in the Kaipara Harbour Place; and
 - g) Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga.
- 24.3.4.5 May grant concessions for aircraft landings associated with a sporting event or filming activity that does not meet the limits and/or criteria for the Yellow, Green or Orange aircraft zones and/or the prescriptions for visitor management zones in Appendix 11 based on its merits and subject to an assessment of:
- a) the activity being consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place in which it is proposed to occur;
 - b) the adverse effects, and the extent to which it is possible to avoid, remedy or mitigate those effects—examples of mechanisms that may be used to address any adverse effects include:
 - i) informing neighbours and potential visitors to the site that the activity is to occur and is occurring;
 - ii) avoiding peak visitation times;
 - iii) avoiding or protecting sites with high natural or historic values;
 - c) cumulative effects on the values at the site; and
 - d) the need for public notification.

- 24.3.4.6 May grant concessions for aircraft landings on public conservation lands and waters for the construction, operation or maintenance of authorised equipment (e.g. meteorological, seismic) or utilities (e.g. communication systems) that do not meet the limits and/or criteria for an aircraft access zone and/or prescriptions for visitor management zones in Appendix 11, based on its merits.
- 24.3.4.7 Advocate to aviation controllers and aircraft operators to manage flight paths to avoid adverse effects on public conservation lands and waters.
- 24.3.4.8 Undertake a cooperative approach with air operators overflying public conservation lands and waters, to establish voluntary codes of conduct that reflect the visitor management settings of those lands and waters.
- 24.3.4.9 Seek to have intertidal parts of the common marine and coastal area used for aircraft landings to be vested in the Crown and assume the status of adjacent public conservation land where natural, historic, cultural and recreational values require protection.

24.4 Animals³²

Animals are not permitted to be taken onto public conservation lands and waters unless this is consistent with legislation and provided for in a CMS or conservation management plan. Domestic animals and pets can have adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values of public conservation lands and waters, and can detract from visitor appreciation and enjoyment. Potential effects include killing wildlife, introducing pest plants, browsing indigenous vegetation, increasing erosion and conflicting with other user groups.

24.4.1 DOGS

The Department controls the use of dogs for recreational activities, including hunting, on public conservation lands and waters to protect both indigenous wildlife and people's rights of use and enjoyment. It is illegal to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters without a permit unless the area is identified as an 'open area' where no permit is required pursuant to Part 5C of the Conservation Act 1987. The only dogs that do not require permits on public conservation lands and waters are those used for police, customs, management, and search and rescue purposes, and disability assist dogs.

Dogs are not permitted on most public conservation lands and waters within Auckland, including all island reserves within the Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana; some foreshore areas on Great Barrier Island; the foreshore of marine reserves (with the exception of the Long Bay-Okura Marine Reserve); and foreshore areas in Auckland's harbours and along the east coast, such as Okura and Pakiri.

The Department has identified areas of public conservation lands and waters in Auckland where it is considered that dogs may be taken without compromising the values for which the land is administered, the protected wildlife and other users. A list of controlled and open dog areas for Auckland can be found in the New Zealand Gazette, Issue No. 62, 31 May 2004. These areas are also identified on the Department's website.

Territorial local authorities have the ability to control dog access to protected wildlife and important wildlife habitats through bylaws. The Department will work with local authorities

32 See separate section for sports fish and game bird hunting.

to ensure that any bylaws relating to dog access are complementary to controls on dog access on public conservation land.

POLICIES—DOGS (CGP 9.6(a))

- 24.4.1.1 Manage dog access in accordance with controlled and open dog areas.
- 24.4.1.2 Inform the public of the location of controlled and open dog areas on public conservation lands and waters through the Department’s website.
- 24.4.1.3 Ensure that permits to take dogs onto public conservation lands and waters contain conditions that protect the values for which those lands and waters are held.
- 24.4.1.4 Educate the community about the threats that dogs can pose to conservation values.
- 24.4.1.5 Work with local authorities to ensure consistency in dog control in areas containing protected wildlife and important wildlife habitats.
- 24.4.1.6 Where a person has been so authorised to take a dog onto public conservation lands and waters, that authorisation may be subject to the following conditions:
 - a) owners will be required to keep the dog under control at all times;
 - b) dogs must not go into or be under public buildings, including huts; and
 - c) dogs must be currently certified by an approved bird aversion trainer where there are ground-dwelling or nesting birds.
- 24.4.1.7 Disability assist dogs should be allowed onto public conservation land without a permit provided the person the dog is accompanying keeps the dog under control at all times and complies with reasonable conditions set in relation to the entry and presence of the disability dog.

24.4.2 HORSES

In some cases, the use of animals such as horses can enhance the recreational experience of visitors. Authorisation by signage or other means is required to take horses onto public conservation lands and waters. However they can have adverse effects as identified above. Horse riding occurs in the Waikato Heads Conservation Area. Marginal strips adjoining the foreshore at areas such as Okura, Miranda, Pakiri and Muriwai are also used by horse riders to access the beach.

The level of horse riding use on public conservation lands and waters is currently low and not causing any discernible adverse effects. Other opportunities for horse riding are provided in regional parks, local reserves, Crown forests and private arenas, as well as on beaches and farms.

POLICIES—HORSES (CGP 9.6(a))

- 24.4.2.1 Should allow the use of horses only at the following locations or at identified sites listed in Part Two:
 - a) Okura Beach Marginal Strip;
 - b) Okura River Marginal Strip;
 - c) Pakiri Marginal Strip;
 - d) Rahuikiri Marginal Strip; and
 - e) Waikato Heads Conservation Area.
- 24.4.2.2 Meet the requirements of the following criteria when considering the use of horses on public conservation lands and waters:

- a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
- b) is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place where the road, track or site is located;
- c) the potential for horses to introduce or spread new weed species into the area is avoided;
- d) the potential for horses to accelerate erosion or cause other damage to the area is avoided;
- e) adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
- f) adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.

24.4.2.3 Should monitor the scale and effects of the presence and use of horses on public conservation lands and waters. If monitoring indicates that there are adverse effects on the natural, historic and cultural values or the visitor experience, the Department will consider management options to reduce or avoid these effects.

24.4.3 OTHER ANIMALS INCLUDING PETS

POLICIES—OTHER ANIMALS (CGP 9.6(a))

- 24.4.3.1 Should not permit livestock on public conservation lands and waters, other than horses in accordance with Policies 24.4.2.1 and 24.4.2.2, unless under a grazing concession or management agreement.
- 24.4.3.2 Should not permit any other types of animals, including pets, on public conservation lands or waters.

24.5 Private accommodation and related facilities

Existing structures on public conservation lands include some private accommodation and related facilities that are not available for use by the general public. In Auckland there is an historical bach community on Rangitoto Island. There are also individual baches at Rakitu and Bethells Beach. Some of these structures have been authorised, but many have been erected and used unlawfully. Under the Conservation General Policy the use of private accommodation and related facilities is to be phased out.

24.5.1 POLICIES—PRIVATE ACCOMMODATION (CGP 10)

- 24.5.1.1 Should not allow new private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters.
- 24.5.1.2 Should phase out all existing private accommodation on public conservation lands and waters that is not specifically allowed or provided for in legislation by either:
 - a) phasing in public use of the building(s) (refer Policy 24.5.1.4a); or
 - b) removing the building(s) at the end of the phase-out period (refer Policy 24.5.1.4b), unless retained by the Department for public use.
- 24.5.1.3 Should consult the Auckland Conservation Board and the applicant when assessing an application for existing private accommodation, to determine whether it should be granted and, if so, which of the two phase-out methods (24.5.1.2a or 24.5.1.2b) is most appropriate for each individual circumstance.

- 24.5.1.4 If private accommodation is to be authorised in accordance with Policy 24.5.1.3, conditions should specify that:
- a) the building(s) are to be made available, where appropriate, for use by the public—with specific details on how this requirement will be phased in over time stated in each individual authorisation (if option 24.5.1.2a is chosen); or
 - b) the building(s) are to be removed³³ within 18 months of the death of the person named on the authorisation at the time the CMS is publicly notified, or within 20 years of CMS approval, whichever occurs first (if option 24.5.1.2b is chosen); and
 - c) the style and character of all buildings are to remain largely unmodified; and
 - d) the floor area and footprint of all buildings is not to increase beyond that existing at the time of CMS approval; and
 - e) all buildings must comply with the Building Act 2004 and relevant local authority requirements; and
 - f) transfer/assignment to another party should not be authorised (i.e. the building(s) cannot be sold or transferred to anyone else); and
 - g) an indemnity to protect the Department is given by the applicant (or person authorised) and the applicant (or person authorised) holds adequate insurance (e.g. general public liability insurance, statutory liability insurance and for the removal of buildings) to cover this indemnity.
- 24.5.1.5 Should only grant the renewal³⁴ of authorisations for private accommodation and related facilities, including encampments, on public conservation lands and waters to the existing authorisation holder³⁵ if:
- a) the existing authorisation contains a right of renewal; and
 - b) the right of renewal is exercised by the authorisation holder before the existing authority expires; and
 - c) the person holding the authorisation has complied with all of the terms and conditions of the authorisation; and
 - d) any new authorisation is granted before the existing authorisation expires.
- 24.5.1.6 Should not authorise replacement of private accommodation if:
- a) a building falls into such a state of disrepair that it needs work requiring a building consent under the Building Act 2004 (note, minor repair and maintenance using comparable materials does not require building consent under this Act); or
 - b) buildings are destroyed or so damaged by an event (e.g. fire, flood) as to render them untenable.
- 24.5.1.7 Remove buildings not authorised in accordance with Policy 24.5.1.2 from public conservation lands and waters no later than 1 year after the relevant CMS milestone.

33 Unless retained by the Department for public use/active management of historical and cultural heritage values.

34 Where the existing/previous concession does not contain a right of renewal and is due to expire (or has expired) and the authorisation holder applies for a new concession, the application should be considered against the other policies in this section and the relevant General Policy.

35 I.e. should not grant transfers/assignments to other parties.

24.6 Marine mammals

Marine mammals are protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Protection Regulations 1992. Commercial activities involving marine mammals must be authorised by the Director-General of Conservation. There are currently (in 2014) two commercial operations involving marine mammals in the Hauraki Gulf/Tīkapa Moana. Commercial operators are required to provide a high standard of education and interpretation. This enhances the visitor experience by building awareness and understanding of marine mammals and their conservation value.

Human interaction with marine mammals can provide a special visitor experience, but if not managed properly can also have adverse effects, including altering the marine mammals' behaviour patterns. In Auckland, human interaction with marine mammals is a recent activity and so the long-term effects are unclear, but research evidence to date suggests that a precautionary approach should be taken to managing this activity. If research and monitoring of the impacts of human interactions with marine mammals shows that there is, or may be, adverse effects, management options include reducing the levels of activity, discontinuing the activity, or seeking a moratorium on the issuing of new permits.

24.6.1 POLICIES—MARINE MAMMALS

- 24.6.1.1 Support research into and require monitoring of the impacts of human interactions with marine mammals.
- 24.6.1.2 Take a precautionary approach to the number of commercial operators involved in marine mammal operations, including seeking a moratorium on the issuing of new permits if research and monitoring indicate that such a step is required.
- 24.6.1.3 Require commercial operators viewing marine mammals to provide a high standard of education and interpretation.
- 24.6.1.4 Review at regular intervals and implement a marine mammal tourism site plan for Auckland which sets out desired objectives for management of the marine mammal tourism industry.

24.7 Commercial eeling

The Department is responsible for protecting and preserving tuna/eels and their habitat within public conservation lands and waters as far as practicable. Tuna/eels have an important role to play in ecosystem functioning, being the top predators in freshwater ecosystems. Commercial eeling, habitat loss and hydro development can all have potential adverse effects on tuna/eels. Longfin eels (*Anguilla dieffenbachia*) are now categorised as At Risk/Declining.

The Ministry for Primary Industries manages commercial eeling under the Fisheries Act 1996, the Fisheries (Commercial Fishing) Regulations 2001 and other associated regulations. Commercial eel fishers require an authorisation to access public conservation lands and waters and/or take tuna/eels from waters whose beds are public conservation lands and waters. The commercial take of indigenous fauna such as tuna/eels from reserves administered under the Reserves Act 1977 is also subject to exceptions contained within section 50(1) of that Act.

Within areas administered under the Conservation Act 1987, legislative requirements can limit the ability to lawfully grant authorisations for commercial eel fishing. For example, an ecological area must be 'managed as to protect the [ecological] value for which the land is

held'. Areas held under the Conservation Act 1987 in general are required to be managed so that their natural resources are protected, and eels are part of those natural resources where they are present.

There are no current authorisations for commercial eeling within Auckland.

24.7.1 POLICIES—COMMERCIAL EELING

24.7.1.1 Should not allow commercial eeling on public conservation lands or waters, to ensure the preservation of tuna/eel species.

24.7.1.2 Work cooperatively with the Ministry for Primary Industries, tangata whenua and the community to protect indigenous tuna/eel populations and their habitats on public conservation lands and waters.

24.8 Sports fish and game bird hunting

Waters on public conservation lands and waters are often recognised as a valuable recreational asset for anglers. Where sports fish are legally present, they may be retained. However, in certain circumstances particular species may be eradicated or controlled with the agreement of the relevant regional fish and game council (Conservation General Policy 2005: Policy 4.2(d)). There are few habitats suitable for trout in Auckland although rainbow trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) have been released into several lakes, including Lake Rototoa, and are present in some water catchment dams in the Hunua Ranges. Recreational fishing for sports fish is managed by the Northland and Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Councils.

24.8.1 POLICIES—SPORTS FISH AND GAME BIRD HUNTING (CGP 4.2d, 7 and 9.4)

24.8.1.1 Work with the Northland and Auckland/Waikato Fish and Game Councils to preserve indigenous freshwater fisheries, to protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats at risk of loss or decline and to facilitate access to sports fishing and game bird hunting on public conservation lands and waters.

24.9 Mining

Under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, the Minister of Conservation has an approval role for access arrangements and minimum impact activities for all public conservation lands and waters. The Minister of Energy and Resources also has an approval role for access arrangements that relate to Tier 1 permits (as defined in the Act) and significant variations to those access arrangements. No access arrangements are allowable for land in Schedule 4 of the Act (which includes, but is not restricted to, all national parks, marine reserves, scientific reserves, nature reserves, sanctuary areas) except in very limited circumstances, which are set out in the Act. These areas are identified in the land inventory (Volume II, maps 9.1–9.9) and include all Places in Part Two, except the Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai Place which is only partially included within Schedule 4.

24.9.1 POLICIES—MINING

- 24.9.1.1 Consider applications for access arrangements on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the criteria set out in the relevant section (i.e. s61 or s61A and s61B) of the Crown Minerals Act 1991.
- 24.9.1.2 Assess applications for access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991, in accordance with (but not limited to) the following matters:
- a) whether or not the site is listed on Schedule 4 of the Act;
 - b) whether the activity is consistent with the outcome and policies for the Place(s) where the activity is proposed to occur, the objectives in Part One and other relevant policies in Part Three;
 - c) the significance of the conservation values and recreation opportunities present, and the effect the proposal will have on those values;
 - d) the adequacy and achievability of the proposed site rehabilitation work;
 - e) the adequacy or appropriateness of compensation offered for loss or damage to conservation values as a result of the access arrangement, where those losses cannot be safeguarded through other measures;
 - f) any direct economic or other benefits as well as any direct economic or other detrimental effects (such as a decrease in tourism) that the activity will have in relation to the area; and
 - g) whether a mining-related application will be classified as a ‘significant application’ (in accordance with the criteria set out in the Crown Minerals Act 1991) so as to require public notification.
- 24.9.1.3 Review the conditions of access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991 if monitoring reveals that the effects of mining activities on conservation values and recreation opportunities are greater than expected or additional effects become apparent.
-

24.10 Sand and shingle extraction

Sand and shingle extraction from riverbeds and beaches is managed and allocated by regional councils under the Resource Management Act 1991. On public conservation lands, however, these activities also require authorisation from the Department. Currently, sand and shingle extraction does not occur on public conservation lands within Auckland.

24.10.1 POLICIES—SAND AND SHINGLE (CGP 11.4(c))

- 24.10.1.1 Should only allow sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands where adverse effects can be avoided, remedied or mitigated.
- 24.10.1.2 Will use the following criteria when considering sand and/or shingle extraction from public conservation lands:
- a) is consistent with the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
 - b) is consistent with the desired outcome and policies for the place where the activity is proposed to occur;
 - c) consistent with the visitor management zone in Volume II, Map 3 and as described in Appendix 11;
 - d) adverse effects on the natural, historic or cultural values are avoided, or otherwise minimised; and
 - e) adverse effects on the safety and enjoyment of other recreational users of the area are avoided, or otherwise minimised.

24.11 Commercial filming and photography

Commercial filming and photography (filming activity) is defined as any photography or filming undertaken on public conservation lands and waters for any form of gain or reward. Filming activity has a set of effects, which need to be managed. One of the key issues with filming is use of aircraft to access remote areas or nature reserves, and management of conflict with other users of public conservation lands and waters.

24.11.1 POLICIES—COMMERCIAL FILMING AND PHOTOGRAPHY (CGP 11.5)

24.11.1.1 Concession applications for commercial filming and photography (filming activity) on public conservation lands and waters located outside national parks should be tested against the following criteria:

- a) conflicts between recreation/tourism uses and filming activity should be avoided (e.g. separated in space and time) or otherwise minimised;
- b) conservation values, including sites of significance to tangata whenua, should be protected from adverse effects of filming and associated activities;
- c) aircraft use for filming activity purposes should comply with the aircraft policies in this CMS, including the aircraft zone provisions;
- d) vehicle use for filming activities should comply with the vehicle provisions in this CMS;
- e) filming activity should be consistent with the outcomes and policies for Places in which the activity is proposed to occur;
- f) animal use for filming should comply with the animal policies in this CMS (refer section 24.4).

24.11.1.2 All concessions for filming activities should include reference to and compliance with the latest version of the 'Code of Practice: Filming on Public Conservation Lands' (jointly developed by the Department of Conservation and Film New Zealand).

24.12 Collection of material

Applications for the collection of material from public conservation lands or waters for research and information needs are addressed in, and must be consistent with, the criteria listed within the Conservation General Policy 2005, section 12(d). The collection of material from public conservation lands and waters also includes customary activities of significance to tangata whenua (refer Objective 5.1.1.8: Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities). In many instances Treaty settlement legislation specifies processes for customary use of materials managed under conservation legislation.

24.12.1 POLICIES—COLLECTION OF MATERIAL (CGP 12(d))

- a) Should only allow the collection of material from public conservation lands or waters in accordance with the criteria listed within the Conservation General Policy 2005, section 12(d).

24.13 Wild animal control activities

The Minister of Conservation has responsibility for the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 through:

- the granting of concessions for commercial wild animal recovery operations involving aircraft;
- permits for commercial and recreational hunting;
- the granting of permits for holding of wild animals in captivity in safari parks or deer farms.

Where wild animals are held alive in captivity, further permits may be required from the Director-General of Conservation in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 requirements. Permits are required to convey any deer species, chamois or tahr outside a species feral range where it is to be kept for the purposes of public display, research, private use, and keeping prior to export.

This CMS is one of several mechanisms the Minister of Conservation must consider when making a decision on applications for commercial wild animal control activities. The primary decision making tool is the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. Consequently, policies in this CMS are considered alongside the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 when making decisions on applications. Any requirements of, or regulations promulgated under the Game Animal Council Act 2013 are also relevant.

Auckland is relatively free of wild animals, having only localised feral deer and goat populations, together with possums and as such opportunities for recovery and capture operations on public conservation lands are limited and few, if any permit applications are received. Any permits are assessed against the criteria in the Wild Animal Control Act and other relevant legislation. Other concessions may be required under the Conservation Act; for example, for aircraft access for recreational hunting.

Woodhill Forest is home to a fallow deer herd managed for recreational hunting by the Woodhill Fallow Deer Management Council (refer Section 15). The hunting area does not include public conservation land and waters.

24.13.1 POLICIES—WILD ANIMAL CONTROL ACTIVITIES

24.13.1.1 Applications for deer, pig, and goat carcass recovery and deer live capture on public conservation land under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 should be assessed against the following criteria:

- a) the contribution to concerted action to control wild animals (to achieve the purposes of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977);
- b) the purposes for which the land concerned is held;
- c) adverse effects on conservation values, including national priority sites for ecosystems and species, surrounding lands, and natural quiet;
- d) the outcome and policies for the Place where the activity is proposed to occur;
- e) effects on visitors;
- f) cumulative effects;
- g) frequency, timing and location of the activity;
- h) the effect of granting the concession on other authorisations; and
- i) other relevant matters, including the applicant's ability to obtain required accreditations and certifications from other agencies.

- 24.13.1.2 Applications for permits in accordance with the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 to keep wild animals in captivity in safari parks, deer farms, for public display, as pets, for research, and prior to export, must be assessed in accordance with some or all of the following criteria:
- a) the views of the relevant regional council;
 - b) for deer farms and safari parks, the place of captivity must be within the feral range of tahr or chamois, and, for deer species in accordance with the most recent deer farming regulations published in the NZ Gazette;
 - c) the place of captivity be equipped with adequate fences for the containment of the animals;
 - d) the species and number of each to be so kept.

24.14 Game animals (see also wild animals)

Game animals are those animals defined as such in the Game Animal Council Act 2013 for the purposes of the Act i.e. Chamois, deer, tahr, and wild pigs (see the glossary for full definition). Game species are also defined at Schedule 1 of the Wildlife Act 1953 (see the glossary for full definitions of game, and game animals).

With respect to game animals the Minister of Conservation may designate any species of game animal in a specified area on public conservation land to be a herd of special significance if the required criteria are met, including that the Minister considers that

- i) the animals are of special interest to hunters; and
- ii) the animals can be managed for hunting purposes; and
- iii) management of the animals for hunting purposes is consistent with the overriding considerations (see the glossary for a definition).

A herd management plan is developed for each herd of special interest proposed for designation setting out the objectives and strategies for the management of the herd to achieve the expected benefits to be gained from managing the animals for hunting purposes.

The Game Animal Council has a range of functions associated with the hunting of game animals. In relation to herds of special interest to hunters specifically, and hunting generally, the Department will work with the Council for the effective management of game animals in a manner that is compatible with the management of public conservation land and resources generally.

24.14.1 POLICIES—GAME ANIMALS

- 24.14.1.1 Work with the Game Animal Council to facilitate the hunting of wild animals (that are also game animals) on public conservation land as defined by the Game Animal Council Act³⁶ to achieve the purposes of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and the Game Animal Council Act 2013.

³⁶ **public conservation land** means land that is—

- (a) held, managed, or administered by the Department of Conservation under the Conservation Act 1987 or an enactment listed in Schedule 1 of that Act; and
- (b) owned by the Crown.

24.15 Fire management

Under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, the Minister of Conservation is a rural fire authority for all state areas, which generally include all public conservation lands, and a 1-kilometre safety margin around some state areas. Some Crown and public conservation lands have been included within enlarged Rural Fire Districts, bringing them under the jurisdiction of Rural Fire District Committees rather than the Minister, as the rural fire authority. This occurred to establish a more effective and efficient fire management structure. Such an enlarged Rural Fire District has been created for the area lying within Auckland Council boundaries.

24.15.1 POLICIES—FIRE

24.15.1.1 Work co-operatively with the National Rural Fire Authority, the New Zealand Fire Service, landowners and the community to increase awareness of rural fires and mitigate them.

24.16 Kauri dieback disease

As identified in Part One, kauri dieback disease is a threat to kauri forests in Auckland and the Department is working with the Auckland Council, Waikato Regional Council, the Ministry for Primary Industries, iwi and others on a joint response to manage the disease. The key elements of the Department's programme identified in Policy 24.14.1.1 will be implemented throughout Auckland. In addition specific preventative measures will be implemented at Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Place and these are found in Part Two.

24.16.1 POLICIES—KAURI DIEBACK DISEASE

24.16.1.1 Develop and implement programmes to address and manage kauri dieback using best practice techniques based on current knowledge, which may include, but not be limited to the following:

- a) Public awareness campaigns with a focus on behavioural change;
- b) Working with infrastructure companies, concessionaires, contractors, hunters and others to raise awareness of best practice and the need to adopt disease hygiene standards for their people, machinery, equipment and activities;
- c) Introducing and maintaining disease hygiene measures for visitors at key forest entry points, and include information about these at relevant visitor information centres;
- d) Research, surveillance and monitoring;
- e) Changes to facilities and infrastructure such as the realignment of tracks, development of boardwalks, barriers or other structures;
- f) Temporary or long-term track closures;
- g) Temporary or long-term quarantining or closures of areas of public conservation land.

24.17 Grazing and farming

Authorisations are required to graze or farm public conservation land. Other than on Motutapu Island and the Okiwi Recreation Reserve, grazing and farming is generally small in scale and adopted where it is enabled by legislation and recognised as the most appropriate land management technique. Other areas where grazing and farming occur include: Port Fitzroy, Rakitu and Harataonga (Great Barrier), Tomarata, North Waikato and Miranda.

During the term of this CMS it is proposed to continue to allow grazing in most areas except for Rakitu where it is to be phased out. A limited opportunity concession is to be applied at Miranda and grazing may be allowed on Browns Island.

24.17.1 POLICIES—GRAZING AND FARMING (CGP 11.2)

Refer to relevant policies within Part Two.

24.18 Milestones—Outputs

Completed by the end of Year 3 after CMS approval (2017)

- 24.18.1.1 Stock take of unauthorised private accommodation and related buildings.
- 24.18.1.2 Review of Marine Mammal Tourism Site Plan for Auckland.

Completed by the end of Year 5 after CMS approval (2019)

- 24.18.1.3 Review of mountain biking opportunities available on public conservation land in Auckland.
 - 24.18.1.4 Bylaws and regulations over public conservation lands and waters (including departmental wharves) reviewed.
-

Part Four

25 Implementation, monitoring and reporting, and review

25.1 Introduction

The Department of Conservation uses many different tools to implement conservation management strategies, including:

- The Department's business planning processes, where decisions are made about priorities and resourcing for departmental activities, and
- Decisions on concessions and other authorisations.

Monitoring the implementation will assist in determining the success of the provisions of this CMS. The Department reports regularly to the Auckland Conservation Board on the implementation of this CMS, and the Conservation Board, in turn, reports annually to the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Additional monitoring is identified in the Department's Statement of Intent and annual reports.

The changing nature of the relationships with iwi and the implications of increasing numbers and overlaps between Treaty claim settlements will have to be acknowledged and factored into the monitoring and implementation of this CMS.

This CMS will have effect for 10 years or until formally amended or reviewed in full or part. The term of the CMS is from 2014 to 2024.

25.1.1 OBJECTIVE

To report at least annually on progress in achieving the milestones of the Auckland CMS to the Auckland Conservation Board as a means of monitoring and reporting on its implementation.

To identify at least annually in a report to the Auckland Conservation Board any additional priority ecosystem units and threatened and at risk species included in this CMS for which work programmes have been approved; and report progress thereafter in meeting outputs identified in the work programme.

Glossary

Actively conserved historic site

Historically significant site that is managed by the Department to preserve and maintain its historic features.

Activity

Includes a trade, business or occupation (section 2 Conservation Act 1987).

Advocate

Support or seek in favour of (Concise Oxford Dictionary Ninth Edition).

Aircraft

Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth (Civil Aviation Act 1990; section 2).

Animal

Any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of every kind; but does not include a human being (Reserves Act 1977: section 2; National Parks Act 1980: section 2).

Any member of the animal kingdom other than a human being (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Archaeological site

Any place in New Zealand that:

- a) Either:
 - i) was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; or
 - ii) is the site of a wreck of any vessel where that wreck occurred before 1900; and
- b) Provides or may provide through investigation by archaeological means evidence relating to the history of New Zealand.

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014, section 6)

Assemblage

A grouping or combination of a species or physical features at a specific site.

At risk (species)

Taxa that do not meet the criteria for any of the 'Threatened' species categories, but are declining (though buffered by a large total population size and/or a slow decline rate), biologically scarce, recovering from a previously threatened status, or survive only in relictual populations (NZ Threat Classification System Manual 2008 page 22).

Authorisation

Collective term for all types of approvals by the Minister and the Director-General of Conservation provided for in a statutory process (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Authorised

Approved in a statutory process.

Backcountry destination

Destination that provides for more challenging adventures for visitors, including popular walks and tramps, within large-scale natural settings. Refer to prescriptions in Appendix 11 for more detail.

Biodiversity

The variability among living organisms from all sources including terrestrial, marine and other aquatic ecosystems and ecological complexes of which they are part. This includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Biogenic reefs

Elevated structures on the seabed constructed of living and dead organisms. Include fragile erect bryozoans and other sessile suspension feeders. Examples are bryozoan beds, rhodolith beds, tube worm mounds, sponge gardens and cold-water corals. These communities develop in a range of habitats from exposed open coasts to estuaries, marine inlets and deeper offshore habitats, and may be found in a variety of sediment types and salinity regimes (Marine Protected Areas: Classification, Protection Standard and Implementation Guidelines 2008).

Biosecurity

The exclusion, eradication or effective management of risks posed by pests and diseases to the economy, environment and human health (Conservation General Policy 2005). The Department has functions which it performs under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

Building

Has the same meaning as given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the Building Act 2004 (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Bylaw

A bylaw made by the Minister of Conservation, under section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980 or section 106 of the Reserves Act 1977. Bylaws may apply to national parks and reserves, whereas regulations may apply to reserves and conservation areas.

Collaborate

Work jointly with (Concise Oxford Dictionary).

Concession

A lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987, to enable the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business on public conservation land managed by the Department of Conservation (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Concessionaire

A person who is a lessee, licensee, permit holder or grantee of an easement concession granted by the Minister of Conservation.

Conservation

The preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Conservation board

Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. The primary functions and powers of conservation boards are set out in sections 6M and 6N of the Conservation Act 1987, and section 30 of the National Parks Act 1980. Their functions include overseeing the preparation of conservation management strategies and national park management plans for their areas, approving conservation management plans (e.g. for conservation parks), and advising the New Zealand Conservation Authority or Director-General of the Department of Conservation on conservation matters of importance in their area. They also have an important conservation advocacy role.

Conservation General Policy

A policy prepared under section 17C of the Conservation Act 1987 to provide unified policy for the implementation of the Conservation, Wildlife, Marine Reserves, Reserves, Wild Animal and Marine Mammals Protection. It provides guidance for the administration and management of all lands and waters, and all natural and historic resources managed for the purposes of those Acts, excluding reserves administered by other agencies under the Reserves Act 1977. It also provides guidance for consistent management planning for the wide range of places and resources administered or managed by the Department, including the preparation of conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and sports fish management plans.

Conservation legislation

A term that applies collectively to the statutes that are administered by the Department, including the Conservation Act 1987, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971 and the National Parks Act 1980.

Conservation management

Conservation management work includes the Department's (and its contractors and authorised agents) hut and track servicing, species and habitat protection, introduced animal and weed control, monitoring, and historical and cultural heritage work, and may include authorised research.

Conservation management plan

A plan for the management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes which implements a conservation management strategy and establishes detailed objectives for integrated management within a place or places specified in a conservation management strategy (derived from Conservation Act 1987: section 17E).

Conservation management strategy

The purpose of a conservation management strategy is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the National Parks Act 1980, the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 or the Conservation Act 1987, and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes (Conservation Act 1987: section 17D).

Consultation

An invitation to give advice, and the consideration of that advice. To achieve consultation, sufficient information must be supplied and sufficient time allowed by the consulting party to those consulted to enable them to tender helpful advice. It involves an ongoing dialogue. It does not necessarily mean acceptance of the other party's view, but enables informed decision-making by having regard to those views (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)

An international agreement on biological diversity that came into force in December 1993 following a meeting of governments in Rio de Janeiro. The objectives of the Convention are the conservation of biological diversity; the sustainable use of its components; and the fair and equitable sharing of the benefits arising out of the utilisation of genetic resources.

Cultural

Societal values with an emphasis on New Zealand/European history and Māori tikanga that are handed down through the generations (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Cumulative effect

An effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects (Resource Management Act 1991: section 3).

Customary use

Gathering and use of natural resources by tangata whenua according to tikanga (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Department, the

The Department of Conservation.

Destination management

A programme aimed at getting more people enjoying public conservation lands and waters. It focuses the Department on five key areas for success: understanding what people want; delivering quality experiences that the public will want to enjoy; optimising resources; working with others to provide recreation opportunities on public conservation lands and waters; and improving marketing and promotion of destinations.

Director-General

The Director-General of Conservation.

Disability assist dog

A dog certified by one of the following organisations as being a dog trained to assist (or as being a dog in training to assist) a person with a disability:

- a) Hearing Dogs for Deaf People New Zealand:
- b) Mobility Assistance Dogs Trust:
- c) New Zealand Epilepsy Assist Dogs Trust:
- d) Royal New Zealand Foundation of the Blind:
- e) Assistance Dogs New Zealand:
- f) Perfect Partners Assistance Dogs Trust:
- g) an organisation specified in an Order in Council made under section 78D.

(Dog Control Act 1996, section 2)

Ecological integrity

The full potential of indigenous biotic and abiotic factors, and natural processes, functioning in sustainable habitats, ecosystems and landscapes (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Ecosystem

A biological system comprising a community of living organisms and its associated non-living environment, interacting as an ecological unit (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Ecosystem services

A wide range of conditions and processes through which natural ecosystems, and the species that are part of them, help sustain and fulfil life (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Effect

The term effect includes:

- a) any positive or adverse effect; and
- b) any temporary or permanent effect; and
- c) any past, present, or future effect; and
- d) any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects—
regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes—
- e) any potential effect of high probability; and
- f) any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.

(Conservation Act 1987: section 2 and Resource Management Act 1991: section 3)

Encampment

Non-designated site used for the purpose of shelter or camping on either:

- a) a permanent or semi-permanent basis by private individuals or groups; or
- b) for more than short-term use by private individuals or groups.

(Conservation General Policy 2005)

Endemic

A species which is native to, as well as restricted to, a particular natural area (General Policy for National Parks, 2005).

Eradicate

To remove completely (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Facilities, recreational

Facilities that enable people to enjoy a range of recreational opportunities including (but not limited to): visitor and information centres, camping areas, tracks and walkways, bridges, backcountry huts, roads, car-parking areas, toilets, picnic areas, signs and interpretation panels, viewing platforms, wharves and boat ramps (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Fish

Includes all species of finfish and shellfish, at any stage of their life history, whether living or dead (Fisheries Act 1996).

Fish and Game Council

Statutory body with functions pertaining to the management, maintenance and enhancement of the sports fish and game resource in the recreational interests of anglers and hunters (Conservation Act 1987: section 26Q(1)).

Fishery

One or more stocks or parts of stocks or one or more species of freshwater fish or aquatic life that can be treated as a unit for the purposes of conservation or management (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Foreshore

Such parts of the bed, shore, or banks of a tidal water as are covered and uncovered by the flow and ebb of the tide at mean spring tides (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Four-wheel drive road (see also definition of *Road*)

A road or route that can be traversed by a standard four-wheel drive vehicle able to handle conditions including grade and side slopes, width, surface material, waterway fords, entry and exit angles to fords and depressions, and seasonal snow and ice, without damage to the vehicle or excessive wear of the road or route. The road or route, through maintenance and managed traffic densities and/or seasonal closures, is able to be retained at this four-wheel drive standard, and is able to be shared with other vehicles, including trail bikes and mountain bikes.

Freedom camping

Freedom camping means to camp (other than at a camping ground) within 200 m of a motor vehicle accessible area or the mean low-water springs line of any sea or harbour, or on or within 200 m of a formed road or a Great Walks Track, using 1 or more of the following: (a) a tent or other temporary structure; (b) a caravan; (c) a car, campervan, house truck, or other motor vehicle (Freedom Camping Act 2011: section 5(1)).

Freedom camping does not include the following activities: (a) temporary and short-term parking of a motor vehicle; (b) recreational activities commonly known as day-trip excursions; (c) resting or sleeping at the roadside in a caravan or motor vehicle to avoid driver fatigue (Freedom Camping Act 2012: section 5(2)).

Freshwater fish

Includes all species of finfish of the classes Agnatha and Osteichthytes, and all shellfish of the Classes Mollusca and Crustacea, that must at any time in the life history of the species, inhabit freshwater; and includes an part thereof and such finfish and shellfish that seasonally migrate into or out of freshwater (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Game (other than game animals - see separate definition)

The wildlife declared to be game specified in the First Schedule to the Wildlife Act 1953. As at the date of the adoption of this CMS all game species are birds, viz: black swan (*Cygnus atratus*), chukar (*Alectoris chukar*), pārerā/grey duck (*Anas superciliosa*), mallard duck (*Anas platyrhynchos*), pūtāngitangi/paradise duck (*Tadorna variegata*), spoonbill duck (*Anas clypeata*), partridge (*Perdix perdix*), red-legged partridge (*Alectoris rufa*), peihana/pheasant (*Phasianus colchicus*), pūkeko (*Poryphio poryphio melanotus*), Australian quail (*Coturnix ypsilophora*), koera/Californian quail (*Callipepla californica*) and Virginian quail (*Colinus virginianus*).

Game animal (for the purposes of the Game Animal Council Act only - see also Wild animal, Herd of special interest and Overriding considerations)

- a) Means -
 - i) Any chamois, deer or tahr:
 - ii) Any pig that is living in a wild state and is not being herded or handled as a domestic animal or kept within an effective fence or enclosure for farming purposes; and
- b) Includes the whole or any part of the carcass of the animal.

(Game Animal Council Act 2013: section 4)

Gateway destination

A destination that helps to introduce New Zealanders to the outdoors and allows them to learn about conservation. These destinations may provide for a diverse range of activities and include many traditional camping and tramping destinations.

Habitat

The environment within which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Herd of special significance

A species of game animal in a specified area designated by the Minister of Conservation as a herd of special interest under section 16 of the Game Animal Council Act 2013 (Game Animal Council Act 2013, section 4).

Historic and cultural heritage

Any building or other structure, archaeological site, natural feature, wāhi tapu, or object, associated with people, traditions, events or ideas, which contribute to an understanding of New Zealand's history and cultures.

Historic area

An area of land that:

- a) Contains an inter-related group of historic places; and
- b) Forms part of the historical and cultural heritage of New Zealand; and
- c) Lies within the territorial limits of New Zealand.

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

Historic place

- a) Means:
 - i) land (including an archaeological site); or
 - ii) a building or structure (or part of a building or structure); or
 - iii) any combination of land, buildings or structures, or associated buildings or structures (or parts of buildings, structures, or associated buildings or structures); and
 - iv) includes anything that is in or fixed to land described in paragraph (a).

(Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6)

Historic resource

Means a historic place within the meaning of the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 ; and includes any interest in a historic resource (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Icon destination

A high-profile, popular destination that underpins national and international tourism, and provides memorable visitor experiences in New Zealand.

Iconic feature

A natural feature that New Zealanders value the most because it is nationally special and helps define who we are as New Zealanders. Iconic features are managed to ensure that they are maintained or restored.

Iconic species

A plant or animal species that New Zealanders as nationally special and contributing to national identity.

Indigenous species

Plants and animals that initially established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings and without the assistance of vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. Use of the words 'indigenous' and 'native' have the same meaning in this CMS (based on the Conservation General Policy 2005).

Integrated conservation management

The management of natural resources, and historical and cultural heritage, and existing or potential activities in a manner which ensures that priorities are clear and that the effects of each activity on others are considered and managed accordingly (Conservation General Policy 2005).

International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS)

An international, non-governmental organisation of heritage professionals engaged in the conservation of places of cultural heritage value and dedicated to the conservation of the world's historic monuments and sites. ICOMOS international acts as an advisory body to the World Heritage Committee alongside the IUCN for natural heritage (www.icomos.org.nz; viewed September 2012).

International Council on Monuments and Sites New Zealand Charter, Te Pumanawa o ICOMOS o Aotearoa Hei Tiaki I Nga Taonga Whenua Heke Iho o Nehe

A set of guidelines on cultural heritage conservation that were produced by ICOMOS New Zealand. The New Zealand Charter is widely used in the New Zealand heritage sector and forms a recognised benchmark for conservation standards and practice. It is used by central government ministries and departments, by local bodies in district plans and heritage management, and by practitioners as guiding principles (www.icomos.org.nz/nzcharters.html; viewed September 2012).

International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN)

The world's first global environmental organisation, which was founded as the International Union for the Protection of Nature (or IUPN) in 1948, following an international conference in Fontainebleau, France. The organisation changed its name to the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources in 1956 with the acronym IUCN, which remains its full legal name. It is a neutral forum for governments, non-government organisations, scientists, businesses and local communities to find pragmatic solutions to conservation and development challenges (www.iucn.org/about/ viewed September 2012).

Interpretation

Conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural, historic or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media in a way that stimulates interest, increased understanding and support for conservation.

Intrinsic value

A concept which regards the subject under consideration as having value or worth in its own right independent of any value placed on it by humans (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Kaitiaki

Guardian (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Kaitiakitanga

The exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga. In relation to a resource this includes the ethic of stewardship based upon the nature of the resource itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Local treasure destination

Vehicle-accessible, front country location that provides recreation opportunities for nearby communities.

Mana

Prestige; authority (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Marine mammal

A marine mammal includes:

- a) any mammal which is morphologically adapted to, or which primarily inhabits, any marine environment; and
- b) all species of seal (Pinnipedia), whale, dolphin, and porpoise (Cetacea), and dugong and manatee (Sirenia); and
- c) the progeny of any marine mammal; and
- d) any part of any marine mammal.

(Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978: section 2)

Marine protected area

An area of sea especially dedicated to or achieving the protection and maintenance of biodiversity at the habitat or ecosystem level, and managed through legal or other effective means (Conservation General Policy 2005). Includes marine reserves.

Marine reserve

A marine area constituted as a marine reserve under the Marine Reserves Act 1971.

Mātaitai Reserve

A management tool created under Part IX of the Fisheries Act 1996 to recognise use and management practices of Māori in the exercise of non-commercial fishing rights. Tangata whenua may apply to the Minister of Fisheries to establish a mātaitai reserve on a traditional fishing ground for the purpose of recognising and providing for customary management practices and food gathering.

Mātauranga Māori

Māori traditional knowledge (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Mauri

Essential life force, the spiritual power and distinctiveness that enables each thing to exist as itself (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Milestones

Milestones are specific actions that are measurable steps towards achieving an objective or outcome statement.

Mining

Take, win or extract by whatever means, a mineral existing in its natural state in land, or a chemical substance from that mineral, for the purpose of obtaining the mineral or chemical substance; but does not include prospecting or exploration; and 'to mine' has a corresponding meaning. (Crown Minerals Act 1991: section 2).

Motor vehicle

A vehicle drawn or propelled by mechanical power and includes a trailer; but does not include—

- a) a vehicle running on rails; or
- b) [Repealed]
- c) a trailer (other than a trailer designed solely for the carriage of goods) that is designed and used exclusively as part of the armament of the New Zealand Defence Force; or
- d) a trailer running on 1 wheel and designed exclusively as a speed measuring device or for testing the wear of vehicle tyres; or
- e) a vehicle designed for amusement purposes and used exclusively within a place of recreation, amusement, or entertainment to which the public does not have access with motor vehicles; or
- f) a pedestrian-controlled machine; or
- g) a vehicle that the Agency has declared under section 168A is not a motor vehicle; or
- h) a mobility device.

(Land Transport Act 1998)

Note: any motor vehicle (which includes trail and quad bikes, snow mobiles, and snow groomers) taken onto public conservation land must be registered and/or licensed where it is required to be registered and/or licensed under the Land Transport Act 1998.

Mountain bike

A non-motorised bicycle that can be used off formed roads. The term ‘mountain’ is used loosely, as some mountain biking opportunities on public conservation lands may be undertaken by multi-purpose bikes.

Natural

Existing in or produced by nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural character

The qualities of an area which are the result of natural processes and taken together give it a particular recognisable character. These qualities may be ecological, physical, spiritual or aesthetic in nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural heritage management

The natural heritage management system is an integrated and scientifically sound suite of tools to help natural heritage managers to make more consistent decisions and monitor their progress to national outcomes.

Natural quiet

Natural ambient conditions in a natural area; the sounds of nature (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Natural resources

Plants and animals of all kinds, and the air, water, and soil in or on which any plant or animal lives or may live, and landscape and landform, and geological features, and systems of interacting living organisms, and their environment, and includes any interest in a natural resource (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Natural state

Unmodified by human activity or introduced plants or animals (Conservation General Policy 2005).

New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy

A government-approved national strategy (2000) providing an integrated response to New Zealand's declining indigenous biodiversity, prepared in part to meet a commitment under the Convention on Biological Diversity.

Non-powered aircraft

Any machine not driven by a powered device that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air, otherwise than by the reactions of air against the surface of the earth. This is an inclusive definition that includes non-powered gliders, non-powered hang gliders, parachutes, balloons and any other non-powered aircraft that may become regulated by Civil Aviation Rules from time to time.

Outcome

A goal or end result of a conservation action or series of actions (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Overriding considerations

- (a) the welfare and management of public conservation land and resources generally:
- (b) any statement of general policy that is made, or has effect as if it were made, under—
 - (i) section 17B of the Conservation Act 1987:
 - (ii) section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980:
 - (iii) section 15A of the Reserves Act 1977:
 - (iv) section 14C of the Wildlife Act 1953:
- (c) any conservation management strategy made under section 17D of the Conservation Act 1987:
- (d) any conservation management plan made under—
 - (i) section 17E of the Conservation Act 1987:
 - (ii) section 40B of the Reserves Act 1977:
- (e) any management plan made under—
 - (i) section 47 of the National Parks Act 1980:
 - (ii) section 41 of the Reserves Act 1977:
- (f) any wild animal control plan made under section 5 of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977:
- (g) any pest management strategy, pest management plan, pathway management plan, or operational plan made under the Biosecurity Act 1993.

(Game Animal Council Act 2013, section 4)

Participation

The contribution of effort, information and ideas towards the work of the Department (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Partnership

The relationship between individuals or groups that is characterised by mutual cooperation and responsibility for the achievement of a specific goal (Conservation General Policy 2005).

People and organisations

An inclusive phrase used to refer to all individuals, clubs, companies, councils and other organisations and groups with an interest in conservation.

Personal mobility device

A device designed to transport one person, which is propelled by hand or a propulsion system with a maximum speed of 15 km per hour, and is ridden by a disabled person (Conservation General Policy 2005). For the purpose of this CMS, this does not include power-assisted cycles.

Pest

Any organism, including an animal, plant, pathogen or disease, capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm or posing significant risks to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems or freshwater fisheries (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Place

An area identified in a conservation management strategy or plan for the purposes of integrated conservation management. It may include any combination of terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas and may be determined by a range of criteria including but not limited to: ecological districts, geological features, catchments, internal departmental, regional or district council or rohe/takiwā boundaries, land status, major recreation or tourism destinations, commonality of management considerations, unique management needs (Conservation General Policy 2005). For the purposes of the Auckland CMS, the Places are Marine Reserves; Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua); Outlying and Offshore Islands (Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Kermadec Islands, Mokohinau Islands); Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island); Kaipara Harbour-Te Arai; Kawau Island; Motuora Island; Tiritiri Matangi Island; Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands; Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihanga; Browns Island (Motukorea); Coastal Defence Historic Reserves; and Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana Wetland.

Power-assisted cycle

A power-assisted cycle is a pedal cycle that has an electric motor of up to 300 watts.

Precautionary principle

Taking a cautious approach to conservation management decisions when information is uncertain, unreliable or inadequate.

Preservation

In relation to a resource, means the maintenance, so far as is practicable, of its intrinsic values (Conservation Act 1987: section 2).

Priority ecosystem unit

An ecosystem identified through the Department's natural heritage prioritisation processes as being one of the most effective places to work to ensure that a representative range of ecosystems are protected.

Private accommodation

Place to live or lodge which is not available to the general public on an open basis.

Protected areas

Terrestrial, freshwater and marine areas that are protected primarily for the purposes contained in conservation legislation, including the conservation of natural resources and historical and cultural heritage, using a range of legal mechanisms that provide long-term security of tenure, status or land use purpose, either privately or publicly owned (based on Conservation General Policy 2005).

Protection

In relation to a resource, means its maintenance, so far as is practicable, in its current state, but includes:

- a) its restoration to some former state; and
- b) its augmentation, enhancement, or expansion.

(Conservation Act 1987: section 2)

Public accommodation

A place to live or lodge in that is open to or shared by all people (General Policy for National Parks 2005).

Public conservation lands and waters

Lands and water areas administered by the Department of Conservation for their respective legislative purpose, including the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources of those areas covered by this Conservation Management Strategy. Reserves administered by other agencies are not included in this definition.

Ramsar (Convention on Wetlands of International Importance especially as Waterfowl Habitat)

An intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

Recreational freshwater fisheries

Any freshwater fishery where the fishing of sports fish and indigenous freshwater fish is lawfully carried out for recreational purposes (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Regulations

A Regulation made by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, under the relevant section of conservation legislation.

Related facilities

Any structure or piece of equipment that is used in conjunction or association with accommodation. Examples include garages, outhouses and outdoor showers.

Reserve

Has the meaning given to the term ‘reserve’ in section 2 of the Reserves Act 1977 and includes the following categories of reserves: recreation, historic, scenic, nature, scientific, government purpose, local purpose.

Restoration

The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to restore indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes and their cultural and visual qualities; or for historic heritage, to return a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Road

Means:

- a) a road that is formed and maintained for vehicle use by the public;
- b) a route that is marked by the Department for vehicle use by the public or identified in a conservation management strategy or conservation management plan for use by vehicles generally or for a particular type of vehicle (for example a bicycle) or as a vehicle parking area.

(Conservation General Policy 2005)

See also definition of four-wheel drive road.

Rohe

Geographical territory of an iwi or hapū (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Site

A defined area within a wider place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Species

A group of organisms that has evolved distinct common inheritable features and occupies a particular geographical range, and which is capable of interbreeding freely but not with members of other species (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Sports fish

Every species of freshwater fish that the Governor-General may declare to be sports fish for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987; examples are trout and salmon. (Conservation General Policy)

Statement of Intent (SOI)

A document that sets out the longer term directions for the Department. Its primary purpose is to enable Ministers, select committees, and the central and audit agencies that support them, to assess the performance of government departments.

Structure

Any building, equipment, device, or other facility made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft (Resource Management Act 1991: section 20)

Tangata whenua

Iwi or hapū that has customary authority in a place (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Taonga

Valued resources or prized possessions held by Māori, both material and non-material. It is a broad concept that includes tangible and intangible aspects of natural and historic resources of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu and intellectual property (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Threatened (species)

Includes all species categorised as ‘Nationally Critical’, ‘Nationally Endangered’ or ‘Nationally Vulnerable’ under the New Zealand Threat Classification System 2008.

Thrill-seeker

Visitor seeking controlled risk activities as part of an exciting activity. For mountain biking, this may include downhill, freestyle and dirt jumping.

Tikanga

Māori custom, obligations and conditions (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Translocation

Movement by human intervention of a species from place to place, usually with the intention of improving the status of the species.

Urupā

Burial ground.

Utilities

Includes but not limited to: structures and infrastructure for telecommunications; energy generation and transmission; sewerage; water supply and flood control; oil and gas; roads and airstrips; hydrological and weather stations (based on Conservation General Policy 2005).

Vehicle

Means:

- a) a contrivance equipped with wheels, tracks, or revolving runners on which it moves or is moved; and
- b) includes a hovercraft, a skateboard, in-line skates, and roller skates; but
- c) does not include—
 - i) a perambulator or pushchair;
 - ii) a shopping or sporting trundler not propelled by mechanical power;
 - iii) a wheelbarrow or hand-trolley;

- iv) [Repealed]
- v) a pedestrian-controlled lawnmower;
- vi) a pedestrian-controlled agricultural machine not propelled by mechanical power;
- vii) an article of furniture;
- viii) a wheelchair not propelled by mechanical power;
- ix) any other contrivance specified by the rules not to be a vehicle for the purposes of this definition;
- x) any rail vehicle.

(Based on Land Transport Act 1998: section 2)

Wāhi tapu

A place sacred to Māori in the traditional, spiritual, religious, ritual or mythological sense (Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014: section 6).

Wetlands

Permanent or intermittently wet areas, shallow water or land-water margins. They include swamps, bogs, estuaries, braided rivers, and lake margins (Conservation General Policy 2005).

Wild animal (see also Game Animal)

Has the meaning set out in the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and includes: possums, deer, wallabies, tahr, wild goats, wild pigs, and chamois (Wild Animal Control Act 1977, section 2). It does not include an animal that is part of a herd designated to be a herd of special interest under section 16 of the Game Animal Council Act 2013.

Wildlife

Any animal (as defined as in the Wildlife Act 1953) that is living in a wild state; and includes any such animal or egg or offspring of any such animal held or hatched or born in captivity, whether pursuant to an authority granted under the Wildlife Act 1953 or otherwise; but does not include wild animals subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 (Wildlife Act 1953: section 2).

World Heritage Area

A site designated under the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) World Heritage Convention as being of outstanding universal value as a site of cultural or natural heritage.

APPENDICES

Appendix 1

Work or activities of the Department of Conservation that may meet the requirements of section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 for exemptions from land use consents

This table is presented to meet the requirements for enabling exemptions under Section 4(3) of the Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA). It does not exclude the need to meet all departmental requirements for the assessment of effects or other responsibilities under the RMA or other legislation (e.g. Building Act 2004, Historic Places Act 1993). Advice from the relevant local authority is required to determine whether a land use consent under the RMA is required.

All structures and tracks on public conservation land managed by the department are maintained, upgraded or built to the standards specified in SNZ HB 8630:2004.

This table does not imply that the facilities included within it will be managed in perpetuity.

Where work affecting historic assets potentially exempt from resource consent is planned, consultation would generally be expected with New Zealand Historic Places Trust prior to such work being carried out.

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
Tracks, roads and car parking areas for visitor purposes			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade of existing tracks and roads to meet current departmental service standards using current alignment. Service standard upgrades of existing tracks and roads through partial or complete realignment to take advantage of better grades and terrain features, or to incorporate elements of natural or historic landscape. Construction of new tracks as agreed in consultation with the community. Improvements to any existing track as considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact, health 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Construction of tracks and roads using cut to fill excavation, waste excavation and levelling using hand tools, motorised equipment and machinery. Excavation of batter slopes to a maximum height of 1.5 m. Vegetation removal from the full width of the track corridor and discretionary removal of any vegetation beyond the track and road corridor that is considered hazardous or that may adversely impact upon track components such as batter slopes, drainage or track surface materials. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards. Alterations to land contours and slopes during track construction and upgrade. Removal of vegetation from the track corridor and from immediately adjacent to the asset corridor. Disturbance of archaeological 	<p><i>Existing tracks, roads and car parks</i></p> <p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Albany Scenic Reserve track Browns Island Recreation Reserve (Motukorea) track Fort Takapuna Historic Reserve track and internal roads Goldie Bush Walkway Henderson Valley Scenic Reserve track Mangatawhiri Forest Conservation Area—Te Araroa Trail Mataitai Forest Conservation Area tracks Matietie Historic Reserve track Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve tracks Motuihe Island Recreation Reserve road and tracks Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve—roads and tracks, Home Bay Walkway, and Rotary Centennial Walkway Mt William Scenic Reserve track Mt William Walkway North Head Historic Reserve roads and tracks Okura Walkway

Activity scope	Management actions	Environmental impacts	Location
<p>and safety concern or visitor risk, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>4. Aggregate surfacing, including placement and compaction of local and imported materials (from approved weed-free sources).</p> <p>5. Use of local materials in the vicinity of the asset corridor where necessary for obtaining fill/surfacing materials.</p> <p>6. Ground works of in-ground timber steps, including formation and levelling, drainage, and timber construction.</p> <p>7. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from the track surface to existing natural contours using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, cut-outs and cross boards.</p> <p>8. Re-formation and widening of roads to provide safe access for two vehicles and road stability to the required standards. Drainage improvement to prevent erosion and deterioration of the road surface and structure, and to provide safe vehicle access.</p> <p>9. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the track or road to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>and historic features, including historic botanicals, on or in the immediate vicinity of the track or road.</p>	<p>▪ Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve roads and tracks</p> <p>▪ Stony Batter Historic Reserve roads and tracks</p> <p>▪ Stony Batter Walkway</p> <p>▪ Te Henga Walkway</p> <p>▪ Vining Walkway</p> <p>Great Barrier Island:</p> <p>▪ Bush's Beach Recreation Reserve track</p> <p>▪ Fitzroy Bay Landing Recreation Reserve—Akapoua campsite road</p> <p>▪ Great Barrier Forest Conservation Area roads and tracks</p> <p>▪ Harataonga Recreation Reserve road and loop track</p> <p>▪ Harataonga Walkway</p> <p>▪ Hirakimata Swamp Ecological Area tracks</p> <p>▪ Okiwi Recreation Reserve tracks</p> <p>▪ SS Wairapa Graves Walkway and route</p> <p>▪ Te Paparahi Conservation Area—Burrill's route</p> <p>▪ Wairahi Forest Sanctuary tracks</p> <p>Warkworth Area:</p> <p>▪ Dome Walkway</p> <p>▪ Goat Island Bay Walkway</p> <p>▪ Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island tracks</p> <p>▪ Kawau Island Historic Reserve roads and tracks</p> <p>▪ Leigh Recreation Reserve beach access tracks</p> <p>▪ Leigh Scenic Reserve—Omaha Cove walk</p> <p>▪ Logues Bush Scenic Reserve tracks</p> <p>▪ Motuora Island Recreation Reserve tracks</p> <p>▪ Moturekareka Island Scenic Reserve tracks</p> <p>▪ Mt Auckland Walkway Omaha Conservation Area, Omaha Scenic Reserve, Totara Peak Scenic Reserve, Dome Forest Conservation Area, Smyth Bush Scenic Reserve—Te Araroa Trail</p> <p>▪ Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), Kermadec Islands Nature Reserve roads and tracks</p> <p>▪ Tiritiri Matangi Island Scientific Reserve roads and tracks</p> <p>▪ Waihunga Moirs Hill Scenic Reserve tracks</p>

Recreational structures* and buildings		
<p>1. Upgrade of existing structures and buildings to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements are met, such as minimum access widths and safety barrier heights</p> <p>2. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar structures and buildings built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing structures and buildings as they reach the end of their projected/economic life.</p> <p>3. Construction of new structures and buildings required to meet service standards for existing tracks, roads, amenity areas and campgrounds.</p> <p>4. Construction of new structures and buildings as a component of development work for new tracks, roads, amenity areas and campgrounds.</p> <p>5. Improvements to any existing structure and building considered necessary to mitigate any environmental impact and health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose.</p>	<p>1. Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of structure and building footprints, and excavation of piles and footings.</p> <p>2. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment/treatment.</p> <p>3. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from structure and building footprint to existing natural contours using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps and cut-outs.</p> <p>4. Construction of structures and buildings such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, viewing platforms, huts, shelters, toilets and ladders.</p> <p>5. Maintenance of historic heritage features associated with the structure or building to ensure that their integrity is not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>1. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.</p> <p>2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps.</p> <p>3. Alterations to land contours and slopes during structure and building construction.</p> <p>4. Removal of vegetation from structure and building footprint and immediate surroundings.</p> <p>5. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas.</p> <p>6. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, and aesthetic impact on historic landscapes.</p>
<p><i>Existing structures and buildings</i></p> <p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Albany Scenic Reserve track ▪ Awhitu Conservation Area ▪ Browns Island Recreation Reserve (Motukorea) landing and track ▪ Fort Takapuna Historic Reserve ▪ Goldie Bush Walkway ▪ Mangatawhiri Forest Conservation Area—Te Araroa Trail ▪ Mataitai Forest Conservation Area amenity area and tracks ▪ Miranda Taramaire Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve wildlife viewing platform ▪ Motuihe Island Recreation Reserve—campsite, farmland and roads, HMNZS <i>Tamaki</i> / quarantine station site and wharf ▪ Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve—roads and tracks, Motutapu Walkway, battery site, Home Bay campsite and day use area, Motutapu Outdoor Education Camp, and US Naval magazine sites ▪ Mt William Scenic Reserve track ▪ Mt William Walkway ▪ North Head Historic Reserve ▪ Okura Bush Walkway ▪ Plows Road Conservation Area ▪ Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve—roads and tracks, controlled mine base, Islington Bay wharf and Rangitoto wharf amenity areas, summit boardwalk, summit viewpoint and picnic area, Yankee wharf, and baches/structures ▪ Stony Batter Historic Reserve gun emplacements ▪ Stony Batter Walkway ▪ Te Henga Walkway ▪ Vining Walkway ▪ Wiri Lava Cave Scientific Reserve <p>Great Barrier Island:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Awana Stream Recreation Reserve—Awana campsite ▪ Burgess Island Scenic Reserve (Pokohinu) wharf ▪ Bush's Beach Recreation Reserve picnic area and track ▪ Fitzroy Bay Landing Recreation Reserve—road and tracks, Akapoua campsite, and pontoon ▪ Great Barrier Forest Conservation Area—roads and tracks, Kaiaraara hut, Kiwiri Bay picnic area, The Green campsite, and Kaiaraara Bay seawall ▪ Harataonga Coastal Walkway ▪ Harataonga Recreation Reserve campsite 		

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Hirakimatā Swamp Ecological Area tracks and Mt Heale hut ▪ Okiwi Recreation Reserve—Whangapoua campsite ▪ Oruwharo Creek Recreation Reserve—Medlands campsite ▪ SS Wairarapa Graves Walkway ▪ Te Paparahi Conservation Area—Miners Head historic site 		
<p>Warkworth Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Atuanui Scenic Reserve car park ▪ Dome Forest Walkway ▪ Goat Island Bay Walkway ▪ Kawau Island Historic Reserve, Smeltinghouse Historic Reserve, Stony Hill Recreation Reserve—roads and tracks, Mansion House valley, and smelting house ▪ Lake Rototoa Scenic Reserve / Ototoa Conservation Area public toilet ▪ Leigh Recreation Reserve road end ▪ Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island Nature Reserve tracks ▪ Logues Bush Scenic Reserve tracks ▪ Moirs Hill Walkway ▪ Motutara Island Scenic Reserve ▪ Motuora Island Recreation Reserve tracks and campsite ▪ Moturekareka Island Scenic Reserve ▪ Mt Auckland Walkway ▪ Omaha Conservation Area, Omaha Scenic Reserve, Totara Peak Scenic Reserve, Dome Forest Conservation Area, Smyth Bush Scenic Reserve—Te Araroa Trail ▪ Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), Kermadec Islands Nature Reserve roads and tracks ▪ Tiritiri Matangi Island Scientific Reserve—tracks, Hobbs Beach anchorage, lighthouse picnic area and wharf amenity area ▪ Waihunga Moirs Hill Scenic Reserve track ▪ Wairere Scenic Reserve track 		
<p><i>Proposed future visitor accommodation</i></p> <p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Motuie Island Recreation Reserve ▪ Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve <p>Great Barrier Island Field Centre:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Great Barrier Forest Conservation Area ▪ Harataonga Recreation Reserve 		
<p>Warkworth Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Motuora Island Recreation Reserve ▪ Tiritiri Matangi Island Scientific Reserve 		

Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes		
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upgrade of existing campsites and amenities to meet departmental service standards so that visitor group requirements for campgrounds and amenity areas are met. 2. Scheduled 'like for like' (substantially similar campsites and amenities built on the same footprint or within the immediate vicinity) replacement of existing campground and amenity assets as they reach the end of their projected/economic life. 3. Construction of new campgrounds and amenities required to meet service standards for existing campgrounds and amenity areas. 4. Construction of new assets such as structures and buildings as a component of development work for new campgrounds and amenity areas. 5. Improvements to any existing asset or establishment of new assets considered necessary to manage, meet regulatory requirements, and mitigate any environmental impact or health and safety concern, or to provide improved access for any management purpose. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Preparatory site works such as vegetation removal, formation and levelling of campground and amenity footprint, and excavation of piles and footings. 2. Works associated with water reticulation and sewage containment/treatment, including effluent dispersal fields and in-ground waste tanks. 3. Construction of drainage and redirection of surface water from building and structural campground and amenity footprint to existing natural contours using various means, such as culvert pipes, drainage sumps, drainage sumps and cut-outs. 4. Construction of campsites and amenities such as bridges, boardwalks, stairs, handrails, safety barriers, shelters, toilets, showers and ladders. 5. Maintenance of historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the campsite or amenity to ensure that they are not adversely impacted. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas. 2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps. Fill materials not normally found on the site (e.g. scoria) may be imported. 3. Alterations to land contours and slopes during campsite and amenity construction. 4. Removal of vegetation from the asset footprint and from immediately around the campsite and amenities. 5. Aesthetic impact and altered sight-lines from man-made structures in natural areas. 6. Noise from increased usage of campsite and amenities 7. Increased water take for operation of, campsite and amenities. 8. Disturbance of archaeological and historic features, including historic botanicals, on or in the immediate vicinity of the campsite or amenity.
<p><i>Existing campsites and amenities</i></p> <p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Motiue Island Recreation Reserve campsite ▪ Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve—Home Bay campsite <p>Great Barrier Island Field Centre:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Awana Stream Recreation Reserve—Awana campsite ▪ Fitzroy Landing Area Recreation Reserve—Akapoua campsite ▪ Great Barrier Forest Conservation Area—The Green campsite ▪ Harataonga Recreation Reserve—Harataonga campsite ▪ Okiwi Recreation Reserve—Whangapoua campsite ▪ Oruawharo Creek Recreation Reserve—Medlands campsite <p>Warkworth Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Motuora Island Recreation Reserve campsite <p><i>Proposed future developments</i></p> <p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve—development of Boulder Bay or McKenzie Bay campsite <p>Great Barrier Island:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Te Paparahi Conservation Area—development of Miners Cove campsite and Rangiwahakaea Bay campsite 	<p><i>Existing campsites and amenities</i></p> <p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Motiue Island Recreation Reserve campsite ▪ Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve—Home Bay campsite <p>Great Barrier Island Field Centre:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Awana Stream Recreation Reserve—Awana campsite ▪ Fitzroy Landing Area Recreation Reserve—Akapoua campsite ▪ Great Barrier Forest Conservation Area—The Green campsite ▪ Harataonga Recreation Reserve—Harataonga campsite ▪ Okiwi Recreation Reserve—Whangapoua campsite ▪ Oruawharo Creek Recreation Reserve—Medlands campsite <p>Warkworth Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Motuora Island Recreation Reserve campsite <p><i>Proposed future developments</i></p> <p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve—development of Boulder Bay or McKenzie Bay campsite <p>Great Barrier Island:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Te Paparahi Conservation Area—development of Miners Cove campsite and Rangiwahakaea Bay campsite 	

Historic assets—remedial work and maintenance		
<p>1. Maintenance of historic places to departmental service standards, and ICOMOS (<i>TCOMOS New Zealand Charter for the Conservation of Places of Cultural Heritage Value (Revised 2010)</i>) and NZHPT standards and guidelines.</p> <p>2. Stabilisation of condition of historic assets by conservation treatments and land stabilising, e.g. construction of retaining walls.</p>	<p>1. Vegetation management, maintenance and improvement of tracks to and around historic places, maintenance of drainage channels, management of safety issues including barrier construction.</p> <p>2. Repairs and conservation treatments as scheduled to concrete, masonry, timber and earthwork structures.</p> <p>3. Maintenance of historic heritage features, including historic botanicals, associated with the historic asset to ensure that they are not adversely impacted.</p>	<p>1. Minor soil disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. Disturbance and soil compaction in fill areas.</p> <p>2. Surface water runoff, including modification of existing natural watercourses, and control and redirection of surface water using various means, such as culvert pipes and drainage sumps.</p> <p>3. Removal of vegetation from assets and immediate vicinity.</p>
<p>Auckland Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Browns Island Recreation Reserve (Motukorea) archaeological landscape ▪ Fort Takapuna Historic Reserve ▪ Motuhei Island Recreation Reserve quarantine station / HMNZS <i>Tamaki</i> site ▪ Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve—archaeological landscape, farm settlement sites, military installations and Reid homestead ▪ North Head Historic Reserve ▪ Plows Road Conservation Area manganese mining complex ▪ Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve—Gardeners Gap bach #108 and boatshed, Islington Bay bach community, Islington Bay community hall, tennis court and public toilets, Islington Bay public shelter and wharf abutment, Mackenzie Bay bach community, military installations, Rangitoto wharf bach community, and Rangitoto wharf promenade, swimming pool, changing sheds and stone arch ▪ St Johns Redoubt Historic Reserve ▪ Stony Batter Historic Reserve coastal defence complex ▪ Te Matuku Bay Cemetery Reserve <p>Great Barrier Island:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Burgess Island Scenic Reserve (Pohohinu) historic remains ▪ Great Barrier Forest Conservation Area—Kaiaraa Bay seawall and bakery site, Kaiaraa driving dams, Oreville stamping battery site, Tramline track, Whangaparapara sawmill site and steam engine remains, and Windy Canyon log hauler and track ▪ Harataonga Recreation Reserve—Harataonga Bay homestead and graves, and Harataonga Loop track pā ▪ Hirakimatā/Kaitoke Swamp Ecological Area Tramline track ▪ Onepoto Historic Reserve SS <i>Wairarapa</i> graves ▪ Te Paparahi Conservation Area Miners Head copper mine complex <p>Warkworth Area:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Burton Wells Scenic Reserve ▪ Casnell Island Scenic Reserve pā ▪ Karaka Point Marginal Strip Taupo pā ▪ Kawau Island Historic Reserve, Smeltinghouse Historic Reserve, School House Bay Recreation Reserve—archaeological landscape, coppermine enginehouse and boiler, coppermine smelting works, Mansion House Valley complex, School House Bay historic 		

			<p>cemetery, Sir George Grey Coach Road, and Two House Bay estate manager's cottage</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island (Nature Reserve) archaeological landscape ▪ Moturekareka Scenic Reserve ▪ Motutara Scenic Reserve ▪ Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), Kermadec Islands Nature Reserve—archaeological landscape, road and tracks, and meteorological station ▪ Sadler Point Conservation Area pā ▪ Ti Point Scenic Reserve pā ▪ Tiritiri Matangi Island Scientific Reserve—archaeological landscape and lighthouse complex ▪ Waihunga Moirs Hill Scenic Reserve farm settlement ▪ Whangateau Harbour Marginal Strip
Signs			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Erection of signage on public conservation land for the purpose of providing information and interpretation to the public. 2. Erection of signage on public conservation land for the purpose of informing people about fire lighting restrictions. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Works associated with the erection of signage. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Aesthetic impact from man-made structures in natural areas. 2. Removal of vegetation from sign footprint and immediate vicinity. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All public conservation land within Auckland ▪ Other land within 1 km of public conservation land for fire purposes or where permission has been given by the landowner
Biodiversity tracks, roads and structures (including staff accommodation)			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Refer to 'Activity scope' for 'Tracks and roads for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Refer to 'Management actions' for 'Tracks and roads for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'. <p>NB: Not all visitor standards noted above will apply to biodiversity tracks, roads and structures (including staff accommodation). In some cases a lesser standard may apply.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Refer to 'Environmental impacts' for 'Tracks and roads for visitor purposes', 'Structures and buildings for visitor purposes' and 'Campsites and amenities for visitor purposes'. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All public conservation land in Auckland where biodiversity programmes are being undertaken ▪ Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner

Other management-related activities			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Erection of fences on public conservation land and its boundaries. 2. Habitat enhancement. 3. Pest control and/or eradication. 4. Airstrips for fire-fighting purposes. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vegetation removal to provide clear lines for fences. 2. Some animal pest operations (note discharge permits will be required for operations utilising pesticides). 3. Earthworks and vegetation clearance associated with habitat enhancement, i.e. pond/drain creation or re-alignment and fire management. 4. General access required to undertake. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vegetation removal. 2. Soil disturbance, including disturbance of the duff layer and subsoil. 3. Death and likely eradication of target mammalian pests; possible death of non-target species. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All public conservation land in Auckland where biodiversity programmes are being undertaken ▪ Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner
Hazardous goods			
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use, transportation, storage and disposal of hazardous substances. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Storage, transportation and application of hazardous substances including, but not limited to, flammable liquids, pesticides and herbicides. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Will comply with all relevant legislative requirements. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ All public conservation land in Auckland where biodiversity programmes are being undertaken ▪ Other land not managed by the Department where permission has been given by the landowner

* Recreational structures for visitor purposes include viewing platforms, steps/stairs, boardwalks, bridges, handrails, safety fences, stiles, signage, etc.

Appendix 2

Important ecosystems and habitat types within Auckland

Note: These key ecosystem and habitat types listed below have been obtained from the National Heritage Management System (NHMS). They do not represent all ecosystem and habitats present within Auckland.

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Dune vegetation	Threatened and at risk plants and wildlife present. Mosaic of dune ridges, swales and wetlands. Dune vegetation present on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) eastern beaches (Whangapoua and Kaitoke), South Kaipara Head (Papakānuī, Waionui) to North Manukau Head (Whatipu), Te Arai/Pakiri, and in the Kermadec group on Raoul Island (Rangitāhua). Includes chenier plains at Miranda and chenier banks within Kaipara, Manukau and Waitemata Harbours.	Argentine ants (<i>Linepithema humile</i>), overgrazing, weeds, fire, trampling, sand erosion, vehicle and foot traffic, development for housing, recreation, farming, and forestry.	Private land, public conservation land and Auckland Council parks.	Weed control programmes, Argentine ant control programmes and dog-free zones. Public awareness programmes, restricted accessways, restoration programmes and restricted development.
Beach morning glory (<i>Ipomoea pes-caprae</i> subsp. <i>brasiliensis</i>), wīwī/knobby clubrush (<i>Ficinia nodosa</i>) vineyard/sedgeland				
Spinifex (<i>Spinifex</i> spp.), pīngao (<i>Ficinia spiralis</i>) grassland/sedgeland				
Pīngao sedgeland				
Oioi (<i>Apodasma similis</i>), wīwī/knobby clubrush sedgeland				
Panahi/shore bind weed (<i>Calystegia soldanella</i>), wīwī/knobby clubrush gravelfields, stonefields				
Kōwhhai (<i>Sophora microphylla</i>) forest on chenier gravels				
Forest of mild climates	Nationally significant upland forests valued for their species associations and biodiversity. Sometimes associated with naturally uncommon ecosystems, such	Weeds on Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, cats (<i>Felis catus</i>) and rats (<i>Rattus</i> spp.) on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), as well as deer (<i>Cervus</i> spp.) and possums (<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>)	Public conservation land, Auckland Council parks and some private land.	Biosecurity and pest control programmes. Advocacy to local authorities and communities, and community partnership programmes.
Tōwai (<i>Weinmannia silvicola</i>), southern rātā (<i>Metrosideros umbellata</i>), montane podocarp				
Tawa (<i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i>), <i>Weinmannia</i> , podocarp				

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
<p>Tōtara (<i>Podocarpus totara</i>), matai (<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>), kahikatea (<i>Dacrydium dacrydioides</i>)</p> <p>Kahikatea, puketea (<i>Laurelia novae-zelandiae</i>) swamp forest</p>	<p>as cloud forest and bird-burrowed soils. Threatened and at risk species present, as well as locally and regionally endemic species.</p> <p>Dense podocarp forest and swamp forest present in pockets such as Omaha Taniko wetland forest.</p> <p>Northern limit for some cool-climate species.</p> <p>Present on the uplands of Tamahunga, Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), and the Hunua and Waitakere Ranges.</p> <p>Occasionally found in frost hollows.</p> <p>Also important for recreation values and ecosystem services.</p>	<p>elsewhere. Loss of natural pollinators and fruit dispersers within mainland sites.</p> <p>Weeds, especially shade-tolerant species and species that block natural succession, forest fragmentation leading to disconnected patches and small fragments, forest clearance, fire, mammalian pests, plant diseases, and insect pests.</p>		
<p>Forest of warm climates</p>	<p>Kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>) forest</p> <p>Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest</p> <p>Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved-beech (<i>New Zealand beeches</i>) forest</p> <p>Tawa, kohekohe (<i>Dysoxylum spectabile</i>), mangleo (<i>Litsea calicaris</i>) broadleaved</p>	<p>Plant diseases, pest plants, pigs (<i>Sus scrofa</i>), possums, deer and rats, development in the surrounding landscape, habitat fragmentation, visitor pressure from recreational use, and fire.</p>	<p>Public conservation land, Auckland Council parks and private land.</p>	<p>Advocacy, surveillance for pests and pest management. Management of recreational use to restrict adverse impacts.</p>

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
podocarp forest	rare elsewhere, and for nationally threatened and at risk species. Some giant trees still remain.			
Pohutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), pūriri (<i>Vitex lucens</i>), karaka (<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>) broadleaved forest	Biodiversity refugia for local animal and plant species that are now largely absent from urban areas. Some sites are the source of species for biodiversity restoration projects.			
Kermadec pohutukawa (<i>Metrosideros kermadecensis</i>) forest	Other values include ecosystem services, recreation, educational and research opportunities, freshwater streams, and scenic landscapes.			
	Important areas include Rangitoto Island, Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Tamahunga, Hunua Ranges, Waitakere Ranges, Mataitai, Mangatawhiri-Vining, Atuanui, parts of Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Waiheke Island and Mokohinau Islands, Okura Scenic Reserve, and Raoul Island (Rangitāhua) in the Kermadec group.			

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
Geothermal vegetation	Geothermal heated water and steam	Some localised weeds.	Public conservation land.	Weed management as required to preserve the natural character of sites.
Saline communities	<p>Mānawa/mangrove (<i>Avicennia marina</i>) forest and scrub</p> <p>Sea rush (<i>Juncus maritimus</i>), oioi, ureure/glasswort (<i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i>) and māakoako/sea primrose (<i>Samolus repens</i>) rushland/herbfield</p> <p>Ureure/glasswort, māakoako/sea primrose herbfield</p> <p>Panahi/shore bind weed, wīwī/knobby clubbrush gravelfield/stonefield</p> <p>Coastal turf Herbfield</p> <p>Kermadec ngaio (<i>Myoporum rapense</i> subsp. <i>Kermadecense</i>) scrub, mixed herbfield/loamfield</p> <p>Horokaka/iceplant (<i>Disphyma australe</i>), ureure/glasswort (<i>Sarcocornia quinqueflora</i>), herbfield/loamfield</p>	<p>Weeds, rubbish, development, erosion and sedimentation, differing community values, and insect pests.</p>	<p>Public conservation land, common marine and coastal area, and private land.</p>	<p>Weed management, advocacy and education, and pest control.</p>
Wetlands	<p>Gumland</p> <p>Mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>), mingimingi, <i>Baumea</i> scrub/sedgeland</p>	<p>Weeds, fire, development, eutrophication, water management and grazing.</p>	<p>Public conservation land, Auckland council parks and private land.</p>	<p>Weed control programmes, fire protection, pest management and advocacy.</p>

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
<p>Oioi restiad rushland/reedland</p> <p><i>Baumea</i> sedgeland</p> <p>Mānuka, tangle fern (<i>Gleichenia dicarpa</i>) scrub/fermland</p> <p>Lakeshore turf</p> <p>Herbfield</p> <p>Flaxland</p> <p>Raupō (<i>Typha orientalis</i>) reedland</p> <p>Mānuka, wire rush (<i>Empodisma minus</i>) restiad rushland</p> <p><i>Carex</i>, <i>Schoenus</i> sedgeland</p> <p>Wire rush, tangle fern restiad rushland/fermland</p> <p>Herbfield/mossfield/sedgeland</p>	<p>Threatened habitats.</p> <p>Ecosystem services.</p> <p>Important areas include Te Henga wetlands, Te Ahumata gumlands, rushlands of Te Matuku Bay (McLeods Bay), Kaukapakapa Estuary Scientific Reserve, Motutapu Island wetlands, Whangapoua Estuary, the margins of Lakes Rototoa and Tomarata, and reedlands at Mangatawhiri wetland, Tawharanui.</p>			
Coastal cliff	<p>Habitat for threatened and at risk species, and biodiversity refugia within urban areas, including biodiversity-rich old pōhutukawa forest.</p> <p>Contains landscape and recreation values. Found along coastal areas of Auckland and on offshore islands.</p>	Goats (<i>Capra hircus</i>), weeds, fire and clearance for views.	Auckland Council parks, private land and public conservation land	Goat control, weed management and advocacy.
Lakes	<p>Small to moderately sized lakes occur within all regional dune systems, and in association with the volcanoes</p>	Aquatic pest plants, exotic fish, sedimentation and hydrological changes.	Private land, Auckland Council parks and public conservation land.	Pest surveillance, management and advocacy.
	<p>Volcanic</p> <p>Dune</p> <p>Riverine/swamp</p>			

Ecosystem/habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Administrative status	Management responses
<p>Windform</p> <p>Lake shore turf</p>	<p>of the Auckland Volcanic Field and Raoul volcano. Lakes are also associated with swamps at Te Henga and Kaitoke. Lakes of national significance are Jones lagoon at Tawharanui, the unnamed lake at Claris, and Lakes Tomarata, Wainamu, Puketi and Rototoa. Threatened and at risk bird, plant and fish species are present within some lakes.</p>			
Secondary vegetation	<p>Mānuka/kānuka (<i>Kunzea ericoides</i>) shrubland</p> <p>Tōtara, broadleaved forest</p>	Weed control, mammalian pests, rubbish disposal, clearance and fire.	Public conservation land and covenanted land.	Weed control, advocacy, pest management programmes and community restoration programmes.
Caves	Subterranean rockland, caves and stonefields	Quarrying and weeds.	Public conservation land, Auckland Council parks and private land.	Weed control, biosecurity surveillance and advocacy.
Scree, bare rock, braided rivers	Recent volcanic debris, including unvegetated lava flows	Weeds, ants, mammalian pests and visitor impacts.	Public conservation land.	Weed management and pest surveillance.

Appendix 3

Islands over 1 ha administered by the Department of Conservation in Auckland

Note: The island classification is aligned with the 10-year term of this CMS and represents the desired future state of the island (Department of Conservation 2010: The island strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation). The island classification is intended for guidance only, and needs to be read in conjunction with the outcome and policies for Places in Part 2 of this CMS.

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)*	Mammalian pests	Issues
Beehive (Taungamaro)	Recreation Reserve	Multiple use	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, disturbance of wildlife from dogs, maintaining biosecurity
Browns (Motukorea)	Recreation Reserve	Special Character	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity, protecting archaeological sites
Casnell	Scenic Reserve	Special Character	Possoms (<i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>), rabbits (<i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>), mustelids, rats (<i>Rattus</i> spp.), mice (<i>Mus musculus</i>)	Pest plants, protecting archaeological sites
Drury Creek	Recreation Reserve	Multiple Use	Possoms, rabbits, mustelids, rats, mice	Pest plants, protecting archaeological sites
Te Hāwera-a-Maki / Goat Island	Scientific Reserve	Special Character	Ship rats (<i>Rattus rattus</i>)	Reinvasion of animal pests, pest plants
Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier [†]	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity
Kakaraea Islands	Conservation Area	Multiple Use	All in low numbers	Maintaining biosecurity
Kermadec Islands				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Raoul (Rangitāhua) ▪ North Meyer ▪ South Meyer 	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Macauley 	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Recovery	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity Remoteness and access
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Cheeseman ▪ Curtis ▪ Haszard ▪ L'Esperance ▪ North Chanter 	Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact	Mammalian pest free	
Manukapua	Government Purpose Wildlife Management Reserve	Special Character	Possoms, rabbits, mustelids, rats, mice	Four-wheel drive use, informal camping, disturbance of wildlife

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)*	Mammalian pests	Issues
Millets	Unclassified Scientific Reserve	Special Character	Possums, rabbits, mustelids, rats, mice	Illegal building, waste disposal, reinvasion by deer, stray cattle
Mokohinau (Pokohinu) Islands				
▪ Burgess (Pokohinu) [‡]	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Mammalian pest free	Informal camping, fires, maintaining biosecurity, pest plants
▪ Atihau	Nature Reserve	Ecosystem Restoration	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity, unauthorised landings
▪ Fanal (Motukino)				
▪ Hokoromea				
▪ Arch Rock	Nature Reserve or Wildlife Sanctuary	Ecosystem Recovery	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants
▪ Lizard				
▪ Motuharakeke				
▪ Motupapa				
▪ Small islets				
▪ Groper (Tatapihi)	Nature Reserve	Minimum Impact	Mammalian pest free	Unauthorised landings, maintaining biosecurity
▪ Stack H				
Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga	Recreation Reserve	Multiple Use	Mammalian pest free	Dogs, pest plants, maintaining biosecurity
Motuora	Recreation Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity
Moturekareka	Recreation Reserve	Multiple Use	Mammalian pest free	Informal camping, pest plants, wilding pines (<i>Pinus</i> spp.)
Motutapu	Recreation Reserve	Multiple Use	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity, protecting archaeological and historic sites
Motutara	Scenic Reserve	Multiple Use	Mice	Informal camping, pest plants, wilding pines
Rakitu (Arid)	Scenic Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Ship rats	Future eradication of animal pests
Rangitoto [†]	Scenic Reserve	Special Character	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity, protecting historic features
Te Haupa (Saddle)	Scenic Reserve	Special Character	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, informal camping, maintaining biosecurity
Tiritiri Matangi	Scientific Reserve	Open Sanctuary	Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity

Islands not wholly administered by the Department of Conservation

Island	Administrative status	Desired island classification (10-year goal)*	Mammalian pests	Issues
Great Barrier (Aotea)	Various		Ship rats, kiore/Pacific rats (<i>Rattus exulans</i>), mice, pigs (<i>Sus scrofa</i>), rabbits, feral cats (<i>Felis catus</i>)	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity, protecting historic features, fire, protecting biodiversity
Kawau	Various		Ship rats, kiore/Pacific rats, mice, possums, wallabies (<i>Macropus eugenii</i> , <i>Macropus parma</i> , <i>Wallabia bicolor</i>), feral cats, stoats (<i>Mustela erminea</i>)	Protecting historic features, managing exotic plants, wallabies
Rakino	Various		Mammalian pest free	Pest plants, protecting pest-free status
Waiheke	Various		Ship rats, Norway rats (<i>Rattus norvegicus</i>), mice, stoats, goats (<i>Capra hircus</i>), pigs, feral cats	Pest plants, maintaining biosecurity

* The island classification is aligned with the 10-year term of this CMS and represents the desired future state of the island (Department of Conservation 2010: The island strategy: guidelines for managing islands administered by the Department of Conservation). The island classification is intended for guidance only, and needs to be read in conjunction with the outcome and policies for Places in Part Two of this CMS.

† These islands are subject to Treaty settlements that have resulted in parts of them being vested in tangata whenua (refer to Part Two—Places for more detail).

‡ Part of Burgess (Pokohinu) Island is classified as a lighthouse reserve.

Appendix 4

Priority ecosystems in Auckland identified by the Department through the application of its natural heritage prioritising processes in September 2013

Note: This list has been taken from the Department's national list of 951 ecosystem units, which represent the full range of New Zealand's terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems (except for sites on private land, which are not listed). Please note, the table does not necessarily list all nationally significant ecosystems present in Auckland. The list is subject to change as priorities are refined and revised - new sites may be added and others removed during the life of this CMS.

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the management unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Marine Reserves Place			
Pollen Island, South Motu Manawa Marine Reserve	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mānawa/mangrove (<i>Avicennia marina</i>) forest, saline rushland and herbfield 	Marine Reserve*	277.1
Te Hauturu-o-Toi / Little Barrier Island Place			
Hauturu/Little Barrier Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tōwai (<i>Weinmannia silvicola</i>), southern rātā (<i>Metrosideros umbellata</i>), montane podocarp forest Kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>), podocarp, broadleaved forest Pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>), pūriri (<i>Vitex lucens</i>), karaka (<i>Corynocarpus laevigatus</i>) broadleaved forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, beech (<i>New Zealand beeches</i>) forest Coastal cliff pōhutukawa and cliff shrubland Mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>) gumland Coastal stonefields 	Nature Reserve	3069.3
Kermadec Islands Place			
Macauley Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kermadec ngaio (<i>Myoporum rapense</i> subsp. <i>kermadecense</i>) scrub, mixed herbfield/loamfield 	Nature Reserve	270.4
Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Kermadec pōhutukawa forest Beach morning glory (<i>Ipomoea pescaprae</i> subsp. <i>brasiliensis</i>), wīwī/knobby clubrush (<i>Ficinia nodosa</i>) vineland/ sedgeland Recent volcanic debris Warm, shallow volcanic lakes Kermadec ngaio shrubland 	Nature Reserve	3046.9
Mokohinau Islands Place			
Mokohinau Islands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Coastal cliff pōhutukawa forest Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest Coastal herbfield and ngaio shrubland 	Scenic and Nature Reserve	161.6
Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place			
Mount Young	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest Kauri forest Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest 	Conservation Area	1219.1

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the management unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pōhutukawa coastal treeland/rockland • Rimu (<i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i>), taraire (<i>Beilschmiedia taraire</i>), tawa (<i>Beilschmiedia tawa</i>) forest • Tawa, kohekohe (<i>Dysoxylum spectabile</i>), mangleao (<i>Litsea calicaris</i>) broadleaved, podocarp forest 		
Hirikimatā-Kaitoke	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland • Dunelands and dune lakes • Mānuka scrubland fernland • Rhyolite upland shrubland and cloud forest 	Ecological Area	2268.5
Northern Great Barrier	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest • Kauri forest • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest • Pōhutukawa coastal treeland/rockland • Rimu, taraire, tawa forest • Tawa, kohekohe, mangleao broadleaved, podocarp forest 	Conservation Area	4080.4
Kaipara Harbour -Te Arai/Pakiri Place			
Lake Rototoa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dune shrubland, herbfields and lakes 	Scenic Reserve	130.3
Papakanui/Waionui	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oioi, wīwī/knobby clubbrush sedgeland • Spinifex, pīngao grassland/sedgeland • Mānawa/mangrove forest and scrub 	Conservation Area	1584.8
Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands Place			
Rangitoto Island	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pōhutukawa forest 	Scenic Reserve	2325.7
Other priority ecosystem units			
Tamahunga Ecological Area	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kahikatea (<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>) - puketea (<i>Laurelia novae-zelandiae</i>) forest • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest • Rimu, tawa, taraire forest 	Ecological Area	269.7
Omaha Taniko wetland forest	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kahikatea forest 	Scientific Reserve	76.6
Takatu Road	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Baumea</i> sedgeland • Oioi, wīwī/knobby clubbrush sedgeland 	Regional Park	9.2
Lake Wainamu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coastal dune shrubland and herbfields, dune wetlands and dune lakes 	QEII Covenant / Recreation Reserve	15.0
The Cascades (Waitakeres)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved forest • Mānuka/kānuka (<i>Kunzea ericoides</i>) forest • Tawa/kohekohe/mangleao broadleaved forest • Secondary scrub and shrubland 	Regional Park	1414.9
North Manukau Head	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Coastal pōhutukawa, pūriri, karaka broadleaved forest • Mānuka/kānuka forest • Tawa/kohekohe/taraire forest 	Regional Park / Scientific Reserve	1865.6
Mataitai Forest	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Rimu, taraire, tawa forest • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, beech forest 	Conservation Area	697.8
Kohukohunui (Hunua)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tawa, kohekohe, mangleao broadleaved podocarp forest 	Regional Park/ Conservation Area	1863.3

Name of ecosystem unit	Predominant ecosystem habitat types included within the management unit	Administrative status	Area (ha)
Mangatawhiri-Vinings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Kauri, podocarp, broadleaved, beech forest • Tawa, kohekohe, mangleao broadleaved, podocarp forest 	Conservation Area/ Scenic Reserve	1664.5
Lake Puketi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Small, shallow, warm, windformed lake (dune) 	Conservation Area	5.9

* This ecosystem habitat type refers to the terrestrial component of the Motu Manawa-Pollen Island Marine Reserve.

Appendix 5

Threats or pests and wild animals present in Auckland

Note: Not all pest species found within Auckland are listed in this appendix. Furthermore, this list does not prioritise or restrict management options for any exotic species found within areas managed by the Department. The management of any exotic species, including prevention, eradication, containment and ongoing surveillance, will be determined by considering conservation values of the site, the threat to conservation values posed by the species, current species distribution, current pests or wild animals at the site, the feasibility of control or eradication, and statutory requirements.

Table A5.1. Animal pests and wild animals.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Birds				
Eastern rosella <i>Platycercus eximius</i>	Widespread throughout the Auckland region	Disease spread; competition for nesting sites and food	Prevention and surveillance	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Galah <i>Cacatua rosei</i>	Ponui Island (Chamberlins Island), Hunua Ranges, Pukekohe	Disease spread; competition for nesting sites with other parrot species	Prevention and surveillance, and eradication from nature reserves	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Kookaburra <i>Dacelo novaeguineae</i>	West Auckland, Rodney and Kawau Island	Competition with native species; predation on a range of native species	Prevention and surveillance, and eradication from nature reserves	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island
Magpie <i>Gymnorhina tibicen</i>	Widespread the Auckland region	Competition and predation of lizards, insects, small birds, chicks and eggs	Prevention, surveillance and eradication	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island
Myna <i>Acidotheres tristis</i>	Widespread throughout the Auckland Region	Competition and predation of lizards, insects, small birds, chicks and eggs	Prevention and surveillance	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island
Rainbow lorikeet <i>Trichoglossus haematodus</i>	Widespread in captivity, occasionally released	Disease; competition	Prevention, surveillance and eradication	All public conservation land
Wild sulphur-crested cockatoo <i>Cacatua galerite</i>	Hunua Ranges, Waitakere Ranges, Awhitu	Disease; competition for nesting sites and food	Prevention and surveillance, and eradication from nature reserves	Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, other Hauraki Gulf islands managed by the Department
Freshwater fish (excluding recreational game fish species)				
Koi carp <i>Cyprinus carpio</i>	Scattered sites within the Auckland region and Awhitu	Biodiversity decline; reduced water quality; loss of habitat	Prevention, surveillance, control to low levels and eradication where management criteria are met	All freshwater sites managed by the Department, including Lake Rototoa Scenic Reserve, Lake Tomarata, and South Head dune lakes
Mosquitofish <i>Gambusia affinis</i>	Widespread within the Auckland region	Predation of freshwater species; competition with native fish species	Prevention, surveillance, control to low	All freshwater sites managed by the Department, including Lake

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
			levels and eradication where management criteria are met	Rototoa Scenic Reserve, Lake Tomarata and South Head dune lakes
Invertebrates				
Argentine ant <i>Linepithema humile</i>	Kawau, Great Barrier (Aotea), Tiritiri Matangi and Waiheke Islands, Auckland metropolitan area	Competition; predation; spread of plant diseases; impacts on plants, reptiles and birds	Prevention, surveillance, eradication and containment	Departmental facilities, sites managed by the Department that are free of Argentine ants and that meet management criteria, Tiritiri Matangi Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Australian paper wasp <i>Polistes chinensis</i>	Widespread	Reduced insect diversity; reduced food availability for birds; reduced visitor enjoyment; disruption to management activities	Containment	As required for species and ecosystem management plans, and safety
Big-headed ant <i>Pheidole megacephala</i>	Kermadec Islands, Coastal Auckland metropolitan areas	Threat to other invertebrates and birds	Surveillance and eradication, except in the Kermadec Islands; containment	Inner Hauraki Gulf islands, departmental facilities
Common wasp <i>Vespula vulgaris</i>	Widespread	Reduced insect diversity; reduced food availability for birds; reduced visitor enjoyment; disruption to management activities	Containment	As required for species and ecosystem management plans, and safety
Darwin's ant <i>Doleromyra darwiniana</i>	Central Auckland	Displacement and predation of other invertebrates; disease spread	Surveillance, prevention management and eradication	All areas managed by the Department that are free of Darwin's ant
German wasp <i>Vespula germanica</i>	Widespread	Reduced insect diversity; reduced food availability for birds; reduced visitor enjoyment; disruption to management activities	Containment and prevention	As required for species and ecosystem management plans, and safety
Mammalian pests				
Brush-tail possum/possum <i>Trichosurus vulpecula</i>	Widespread but eradicated from some islands	Overgrazing and predation	Surveillance, prevention and eradication, or control to low or zero density	Mammalian pest-free Hauraki Gulf islands, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Kermadec Islands, other priority ecosystem units

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Cat (feral) <i>Felis catus</i>	Widespread but eradicated from some islands	Loss of biodiversity; extinction or decline to low levels of local bird populations; loss of ecosystem processes	Prevention, eradication, and control to low or zero density	Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), any mammalian pest-free islands, Papakanui, Okahukura Peninsula reserves
Deer: Red deer <i>Cervus elaphus scotius</i> ; Fallow deer <i>Dama dama</i> ; Sika deer <i>Cervus nippon</i> ; Wapiti <i>Cervus elaphus nelsoni</i>	Awhitu, South Kaipara, Hunua Ranges	Localised plant extinctions; changes to and loss of plant community structure	Prevention, eradication, and control to low or zero density	Mainland reserves, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) and associated islands, other priority ecosystem units and buffer zones, mammalian pest-free islands
Ferret <i>Mustela furo</i>	Localised, eradicated from some islands	Predation of vulnerable species	Surveillance, and eradication from pest-free islands	Inner Hauraki Gulf islands, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Kermadec Islands
Goat (feral) <i>Capra hircus</i>	Scattered locations along the west coast, parts of Rodney, Hunua Ranges	Reduced ecosystem structure; localised plant extinctions	Prevention, surveillance and eradication; control to low densities where eradication is not possible	Goat-free Hauraki Gulf islands managed by the Department, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Kermadec Islands, other priority ecosystem units and buffers around such sites
Hare <i>Lepus europaeus</i>	Not present on many sites managed by the Department	Overgrazing; changes to ecosystem processes; plant extinctions	Prevention and eradication	Hare-free sites managed by the Department
Hedgehog <i>Erinaceus europaeus</i>	Widespread except on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) and mammalian pest-free inner Hauraki Gulf islands	Feed on native invertebrates, reptiles and ground-nesting birds	Eradication	Any mammalian pest-free islands within Auckland and Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Mouse <i>Mus musculus</i>	Widespread but eradicated from inner Hauraki Gulf islands; not present within the Kermadec Islands	Predation and competition	Prevention, surveillance, eradication and containment	Prevention and surveillance on all mouse-free islands; containment as management plans
Pig (feral) <i>Sus scrofa</i>	Widespread, except on mammalian pest-free islands; controlled to low density or localised eradication in some reserves	Implicated in the spread of plant diseases and the localised extinction of some plant species; known to eat native animals such as land snails	Eradication and control to low or zero density	Eradication on any mammalian pest-free island; control in any priority ecosystem units
Rabbit <i>Oryctolagus cuniculus</i>	Widespread but eradicated from some Hauraki Gulf islands	Grazing of threatened plant species; ecosystem transformation; maintenance of pest predator populations	Prevention, eradication from pest-free islands, and control to low densities at other sites	Inner Hauraki Gulf islands, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), other priority ecosystem units

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Rat: Kiore/Pacific rat <i>Rattus exulans</i> ; Norway rat <i>Rattus norvegicus</i> ; Ship rat <i>Rattus rattus</i>	Widespread but eradicated from some sites and controlled to low density at others	Loss of or changes to ecosystem processes and services; predation, grazing, and species declines and extinctions; alternative prey species for other pest predators	Prevention, eradication or control to low levels	All rat-free sites, and sites managed by the Department with rat management programmes for species or ecosystem management
Stoat <i>Mustela erminea</i>	Widespread but eradicated from some sites and controlled to low density at others	Predation of vulnerable species	Prevention, eradication from pest-free islands, and control to low or zero density at other sites	All stoat-free sites managed by the Department
Wallaby: Brush-tailed rock wallaby <i>Petrogale penicillata</i> ; Dama wallaby <i>Macropus eugenii</i> ; Parma wallaby <i>Macropus parma</i> ; Swamp wallaby <i>Wallabia bicolor</i>	Kawau Island, eradicated from Rangitoto Island	Over-grazing of plant communities	Prevention and eradication from wallaby-free islands	All sites except Kawau Island
Weasel <i>Mustela nivalis vulgaris</i>	Widespread but eradicated from some islands	Predation	Prevention, surveillance, and eradication on detection from pest-free islands	All weasel-free sites managed by the Department
Reptiles				
Rainbow skink <i>Lampropholis delicata</i>	Widespread	Predation and competition	Prevention	Islands free of rainbow skinks

Table A5.2. Plant pests.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
African club moss <i>Selaginella kraussiana</i>	Patchy distribution throughout Auckland, especially along tracks and streamsides	Overgrows streamside bryophyte communities and low-growing herbs	Prevention, surveillance and eradication where management meets required criteria	Inner Hauraki Gulf islands, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), other priority ecosystem units
Agapanthus <i>Agapanthus praecox</i>	Patchy distributions often associated with old garden sites or roadsides	Smothers native vegetation, especially in disturbed and stressed environments; forms monocultures	Site-led programmes, surveillance and eradication if found in new sites	
African feather grass <i>Pennisetum macrourum</i>	Localised	Forms tall thickets that suppress native herbs and shrubs	Surveillance and eradication	Dunes, wetlands
African olive <i>Olea europaea</i> subsp. <i>Cuspidata</i>	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), inner Hauraki Gulf islands	Forms thickets, suppresses regeneration	Eradication from Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), containment elsewhere	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)
Airplant <i>Bryophyllum pinnatum</i>	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)	Suppresses natural biodiversity in Raoul Island (Rangitāhua) dunes.	Containment leading to eradication	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)
Alligator weed <i>Alternanthera phloxeroides</i>	Widespread	Suppresses wetland species	Prevention and containment	
Banana passionfruit <i>Passiflora mixta</i> , <i>Passiflora tarminiana</i> , <i>Passiflora tripartita</i>	Widespread	Forms dense mats	Surveillance and eradication on detection	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), Hauraki Gulf islands
Banksia <i>Banksia integrifolia</i>	Widespread in coastal sites	Overtops native shrubland	Surveillance	Rangitoto Island
Black passionfruit <i>Passiflora edulis</i>		Forms dense mats		Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)
Black wattle <i>Acacia mearnsii</i>	Widespread, localised patches on Rangitoto Island	Forms dense stands	Prevention and containment	Rangitoto Island
Bladderwort <i>Utricularia livida</i> , <i>Utricularia gibba</i>		Smothers native bladderworts and wetland communities		
Boneseed <i>Chrysanthemoides monilifera</i> subsp. <i>Monilifera</i>	Rangitoto Island, Browns Island (Motukorea)	Forms dense thickets	Eradication and control to zero density	Rangitoto Island, Tiritiri Matangi Island, Browns Island (Motukorea)
Brush wattle <i>Paraserianthes lophantha</i>	Widespread	Forms dense stands	Containment	Rangitoto Island, Motutapu Island

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Buttercup bush <i>Senna septemtrionalis</i>	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), Kawau Island, Rangitoto Island	Forms dense thickets	Containment and eradication on Raoul (Rangitāhua) and Rangitoto Islands	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), Rangitoto Island, Kawau Island
Chinese privet <i>Ligustrum sinense</i>	Widespread	Forms dense thickets	Surveillance and control	Rangitoto Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Chocolate vine <i>Akebia quinata</i>	Localised	Smothers forest edge vegetation	Surveillance	Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Climbing asparagus <i>Asparagus scandens</i>	Widespread	Smothers vegetation	Eradication	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Crack willow <i>Salix fragilis</i>	Widespread	Forms dense stands	Prevention, containment and eradication	All priority ecosystem units
Dally pine <i>Psoralea pinnata</i>	Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) and localised patches in the Auckland region	Forms thickets in wetlands and along forest edges	Containment and suppression	Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), other priority ecosystem units
Evergreen buckthorn/rhamnus <i>Rhamnus alaternus</i>	Inner Hauraki Gulf islands and east coast	Forms dense thickets and can overtop native vegetation	Prevention and containment	Inner Hauraki Gulf islands
Fairy crassula <i>Crassula multicava</i>	Rangitoto Island	Forms dense patches that suppress small native plant species	Prevention and containment	Sites of high biodiversity value, Rangitoto summit, outlying patches away from main sites
Giant reed <i>Arundo donax</i>	Localised	Forms dense thickets	Prevention, containment and eradication	Priority ecosystem units and sites where absent
Grey willow <i>Salix cinerea</i>	Widespread but localised on some islands	Forms stands in wetlands that alter site hydrology and suppress other species	Prevention, containment and eradication	Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), other priority ecosystem sites
Kahili ginger <i>Hedychium gardnerianum</i>	Widespread but localised or absent from some islands	Forms dense thickets	Prevention, containment and eradication	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), other priority ecosystem units
Kikuyu <i>Pennisetum clandestinum</i>	Widespread but localised on some islands	Forms dense mats, climbs over shrubs and flax	Prevention, eradication where possible and containment	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island
Ladder fern <i>Nephrolepis cordifolia</i> var. <i>cordifolia</i>	Widespread but localised on some islands	Forms dense thickets	Prevention, containment and eradication	Rangitoto Island, other priority ecosystem units
Lantana <i>Lantana camara</i>	Localised, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Kawau Island, Rodney, Auckland	Forms thickets	Prevention, containment and eradication	All sites

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Madeira vine <i>Anredera cordifolia</i>	Localised	Forms dense mats that smother other plants	Prevention, containment and eradication	All priority ecosystem units
Mile a minute <i>Dipogon lignosus</i>	Localised	Forms dense, climbing mats	Prevention, containment and eradication	All priority ecosystem units
Moth plant <i>Araujia hortorum</i>	Widespread but localised on some islands	Forms dense, climbing mats	Prevention, containment and eradication	Rangitoto Island, Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Motutapu Island, Browns Island (Motukorea), all sites where absent
Mother of millions <i>Bryophyllum delagoense</i>	Rangitoto Island	Forms dense patches	Surveillance and containment	All priority ecosystem units
Mysore thorn <i>Caesalpinia decapetala</i>	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)	Forms dense mats	Eradication	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)
Norfolk Island pine <i>Araucaria heterophylla</i>	Localised	Forms dense stands	Containment	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), Rangitoto Island
Pampas <i>Cortaderia jubata</i> , <i>Cortaderia sellonana</i>	Widespread	Forms dense stands	Prevention, containment and eradication	All sites where absent, all priority ecosystem units
<i>Pennisetum</i> species	Localised	Forms dense mats	Prevention, containment and eradication	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)
Purple guava <i>Psidium cattleianum</i>	Localised	Forms dense stands	Prevention, containment and eradication	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), other priority ecosystem units
Queensland poplar <i>Homalanthus populifolius</i>	Localised	Forms dense mats	Prevention, containment and eradication	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island
Royal fern <i>Osmunda regalis</i>	Localised	Forms dense stands in wetland	Prevention, containment and eradication	All management units
Smilax <i>Asparagus asparagoides</i>	Widespread	Forms dense mats	Prevention, containment and eradication	All priority ecosystem units and sites where not currently present
Sweetpea shrub <i>Polygala myrtifolia</i>	Localised, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)	Forms dense stands	Prevention, containment and eradication	Rangitoto Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Sydney golden wattle <i>Acacia longifolia</i>	Widespread	Forms dense thickets, overtops native vegetation	Prevention, containment and eradication	All priority ecosystem units
Tasmanian ngaio <i>Ngaio insulare</i>	Localised on islands, occasional coastal	Forms dense stands, competes with native	Prevention, containment and	Inner Hauraki Gulf islands

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
	sites	species	eradication	
Tibouchina <i>Tibouchina urvilleana</i>	Localised	Forms dense stands	Containment	Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), historic plantings
Tree of heaven <i>Ailanthus altissima</i>	Localised	Forms dense stands	Prevention, containment and eradication	All priority ecosystem units and units where not currently present
Tree privet <i>Ligustrum lucidum</i>	Widespread but localised on some islands	Forms dense thickets	Prevention and eradication where possible	All priority ecosystem units and units where not currently present
Tuber ladder fern <i>Nephrolepis cordifolia</i> var. <i>cordifolia</i>	Widespread but localised at some sites	Forms dense stands	Prevention, containment and eradication where possible	All priority ecosystem units and units where not currently present
Tutsan <i>Hypericum androsaemum</i>	Localised	Forms dense stands	Prevention, containment and eradication	All priority ecosystem units
Veld grass <i>Erharta erecta</i>	Widespread but localised or absent from some sites	Forms dense mats	Prevention and eradication	All priority ecosystem units and units where not currently present
Wandering jew <i>Tradescantia fluminensis</i>	Widespread but not present on some islands	Forms dense mats that suppress some vegetation	Prevention and containment	All priority ecosystem units
Wild broom <i>Cytisus scoparius</i>	Not known	Forms dense stands	Prevention and eradication	All units
Wild kiwifruit <i>Actinidia</i> spp.	Localised patches	Scrambles over edge vegetation	Surveillance and removal	All units
Woolly nightshade <i>Solanum mauritianum</i>	Widespread but localised on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)	Forms dense patches and suppresses native vegetation	Boundary control and removal	Restoration islands, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)
Yellow ginger <i>Hedychium flavescens</i>	Scattered localities within the Auckland region	Forms dense patches	Removal	Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), Hunua

Table A5.3. Marine pests.

Common and scientific name	Distribution	Pressures/threats	Management response	Priority places for action
Asian paddle crab <i>Charybis japonica</i>	Hauraki Gulf	An aggressive crab that may reduce biodiversity values; carries viral diseases	Marine prevention and containment	All marine reserves in the Hauraki Gulf
Mediterranean fan worm <i>Sabella spallanzanii</i>	Waitemata Harbour	Forms dense colonies that smother other species	Marine prevention and containment	All marine reserves in the Hauraki Gulf
Sea squirt <i>Styela clava</i>	Waitemata Harbour and Hauraki Gulf	Forms dense colonies that smother other species	Marine prevention and containment	All marine reserves in the Hauraki Gulf
Undaria <i>Undaria pinnatifida</i>	Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), inner Hauraki Gulf	Potentially able to reduce recolonisation of disturbed marine sites by native species; competitive marine alga	Marine prevention and containment	All marine reserves in the Hauraki Gulf
Pacific oyster <i>Crassostrea gigas</i>	Widespread	Potential to reach high abundances and become a dominant zoning or habitat-modifying organism in estuarine marine reserves	Control	All marine reserves in the Hauraki Gulf
Asian date mussel <i>Musculista senhousia</i>	Waitemata Harbour	Forms dense colonies that smother other species	Control	All marine reserves in the Hauraki Gulf
Cunjevoi <i>Pyura praeputialis</i>	Northland east and west coasts	Deep mats overgrowing mussel beds and other indigenous intertidal species	Prevention	Cape Rodney–Okakari Point Marine Reserve, Tāwharanui Marine Reserve
Japanese mantis shrimp <i>Oratosquilla oratoria</i>	Kaipara Harbour	Ecological impact unknown	Research	Kaipara Harbour
Spartina <i>Spartina</i> spp.	Widespread	Colonises mudflats; displaces wading birds	Control	Kaipara and Manukau Harbours, Firth of Thames
Saltwater paspallum <i>Paspalum vaginatum</i>	Widespread	Colonises mudflats; displaces wading birds	Eradication	Kaipara and Manukau Harbours, Firth of Thames

Appendix 6

Threatened and at risk indigenous flora and fauna present in Auckland

Several thousand indigenous species are present in Auckland, of which over 100 are threatened or at risk. Appendix 6 lists a selection of species that are currently classified as ‘Threatened’ or ‘At Risk’. Not all species listed are directly managed by the Department.

Note: The threat status of these species may change over time.

Table A6.1. Flora.

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Sneezeweed Kōwhai ngutu-kākā, kākābeak Kōwhai ngutu-kākā, kākābeak Moss Pinaki, native carrot Hairy willow herb Native hibiscus A Piha moss Dwarf greenhood Dwarf musk Stalked adder’s tongue fern Kermadec fireweed L’Esperance Rock fireweed Fireweed	<i>Centipeda minima</i> subsp. <i>Minima</i> <i>Clianthus maximus</i> <i>Clianthus puniceus</i> <i>Cyclodictyon blumeanum</i> <i>Daucus glochidiatus</i> <i>Epilobium hirtigerum</i> <i>Hibiscus richardsonii</i> <i>Juncus holoschoenus</i> var. <i>holoschoenus</i> <i>Leptinella rotundata</i> <i>Libertia flaccidifolia</i> <i>Lindbergia maritima</i> <i>Linguella puberula</i> <i>Lobelia</i> aff. <i>Angulata</i> (AK212143) <i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>Impolitus</i> f. <i>hirtus</i> <i>Ophioglossum petiolatum</i> <i>Parahebe jovellanooides</i> <i>Phylloglossum drummondii</i> <i>Senecio kermadecensis</i> <i>Senecio lautus</i> subsp. <i>Esperensis</i> <i>Senecio scaberulus</i>
Nationally Endangered	Water brome Poor Knights spleenwort A gumland liverwort Forget-me-not Native ox-tongue Plumed greenhood Tauhinu	<i>Amphibromus fluitans</i> <i>Asplenium pauperequitum</i> <i>Geobelobryum unguiculatum</i> <i>Myosotis petiolata</i> var. <i>pansa</i> <i>Picris burbidgeae</i> <i>Plumatichilos tasmanicum</i> <i>Pomaderris phyllicifolia</i> subsp. <i>Phyllicifolia</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Annual fern Holloway’s crystalwort Pua o Te Reinga, dactylanthus, flower of Hades Pygmy sundew Turnip-rooted geranium Waitakere Rock koromiko Titīrangi Coastal cress Nau, Cook’s scurvy grass Matangaoa, New Zealand water cress Spiranthes, ladies tresses	<i>Anogramma leptophylla</i> <i>Atriplex hollowayi</i> <i>Dactylanthus taylorii</i> <i>Drosera pygmaea</i> <i>Geranium retrorsum</i> <i>Hebe bishopiana</i> <i>Hebe speciosa</i> <i>Lepidium flexicaule</i> <i>Lepidium oleraceum</i> <i>Machaerina complanata</i> <i>Pimelea tomentosa</i> <i>Rorippa divaricata</i> <i>Spiranthes novae-zelandiae</i>

At risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Kohurangi, Kirk's tree daisy	<i>Brachyglottis kirkii</i> var. <i>kirkii</i>
	Sea sedge	<i>Carex litorosa</i>
	Sand coprosma	<i>Coprosma acerosa</i>
		<i>Cyperus insularis</i>
	Tūrutu, swamp blueberry	<i>Dianella haemata</i>
	Sand spike sedge	<i>Eleocharis neozelandica</i>
	Waiū-atua, shore spurge	<i>Euphorbia glauca</i>
	Rāwiri	<i>Kunzea ericoides</i> var. <i>linearis</i>
	Dwarf musk	<i>Mazus novaezeelandiae</i> subsp. <i>novaezeelandiae</i>
		<i>Myriophyllum robustum</i>
	Stout water milfoil	<i>Nephrolepis flexuosa</i>
	Native ladder fern	<i>Paspalum orbiculare</i>
	Native paspalum, scrobic	<i>Peraxilla tetrapetala</i>
	Pikirangi, pirita, red mistletoe	<i>Pittosporum kirkii</i>
	Kirk's kōhūhū	<i>Ptisana salicina</i>
	Para, para tawhiti, king fern	<i>Solanum aviculare</i> var. <i>aviculare</i>
Poroporo, tupia, taapia, Tupeia, white mistletoe	<i>Tupeia antarctica</i>	
Recovering	None listed	
Relict	Giant-flowered broom	<i>Carmichaelia williamsii</i>
	Koru, colensoa	<i>Colensoa physaloides</i>
	Pīngao, golden sand sedge	<i>Ficinia spiralis</i>
	Sickle fern	<i>Pellaea falcata</i>
	Parapara	<i>Pisonia brunoniana</i>
	Swamp leek orchid	<i>Prasophyllum hectorii</i>
	Pūhā, shore pūhā, New Zealand sow thistle	<i>Sonchus kirkii</i>
Tūrepo, large-leaved milk tree	<i>Streblus banksii</i>	
Naturally Uncommon	Kermadec Islands hutu	<i>Arachniodes aristata</i>
	Shuttleworth's spleenwort	<i>Ascarina lucida</i> var. <i>lanceolata</i>
		<i>Asplenium shuttleworthianum</i>
		<i>Blechnum norfolkianum</i>
	Pātōtara, parsley fern	<i>Botrychium australe</i>
	Kermadec sedge	<i>Carex kermadecensis</i>
	Moss	<i>Cephalozeiella</i> aff. <i>pulcherrima</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Cheilolejeunea</i> "AK287598"
	Kermadec tree fern	<i>Cyathea kermadecensis</i>
	Milnes tree fern	<i>Cyathea milnei</i>
	Short-hair plume grass	<i>Dichelachne inaequiglumis</i>
	A Kermadec rasp fern	<i>Doodia milnei</i>
	Mokimoki	<i>Doodia mollis</i>
		<i>Doodia squarrosa</i>
	Great Barrier inaka	<i>Dracophyllum patens</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Drepanolejeunea tematensis</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Drepanolejeunea vesciculosa</i> subsp. <i>evesciculosa</i>
	Moss	<i>Ectropothecium sandwichense</i>
	Sinclair's tamingi	<i>Epacris sinclairii</i>
	Creeping fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia procumbens</i>
	Rawlings strap fern	<i>Grammitis rawlingsii</i>
	Monoao	<i>Halocarpus kirkii</i>
	Kermadec koromiko	<i>Hebe breviracemosa</i>
	Giant hypolepis	<i>Hypolepis dicksonioides</i>
	Imperata	<i>Imperata cheesemaniae</i>
	Beach morning glory	<i>Ipomoea pes-caprae</i> subsp. <i>brasiliensis</i>
	Great Barrier Island kānuka,	<i>Kunzea sinclairii</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Lejeunea anisophylla</i>
	Kawaka, New Zealand cedar	<i>Libocedrus plumose</i>
	Liverwort	<i>Lopholejeunea</i> "black"
	Kawakawa	<i>Macropiper excelsum</i> subsp. <i>psittacorum</i>
	Kermadec pōhutukawa	<i>Metrosideros kermadecensis</i>

	Native musk, creeping musk	<i>Mimulus repens</i> <i>Myriophyllum votschii</i> <i>Myrsine kermadecensis</i> <i>Nephrolepis brownie</i> <i>Plagiochila pacifica</i> <i>Pouzolzia australis</i> <i>Sicyos mawhai</i> <i>Sophora fulvida</i> <i>Sphagnum perichaetiale</i> <i>Telaranea tetrapila</i> var. <i>cancellata</i> <i>Telaranea tridactylis</i> <i>Thismia rodwayi</i>
	Rough sword fern	
	Liverwort	
	Kermadec nettle tree	
	Māwhai, sicyos, ambush vine	
	Kōwhai	
	Sphagnum moss	
	Liverwort	
	Liverwort	
	Thismia	

Table A6.2. Fungi.

Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical		<i>Cordierites acanthophora</i> <i>Dichomotus newhookii</i> <i>Gomphus dingleyae</i> <i>Gomphus novaezealandiae</i> <i>Phaneochaete citrina</i> <i>Polyporus pleurogena</i> <i>Uredo salicorniae</i>

Table A6.3. Fauna (vertebrates).

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Pārerā, grey duck Bryde's whale Maui's dolphin White tern Kera wēra, orca Kermadec white-faced storm petrel Takahē Taraiti, tara teoteo, fairy tern Kākāpō Tuturuatu, New Zealand shore plover	<i>Anas superciliosa superciliosa</i> <i>Balaenoptera edeni/brydei</i> <i>Cephalorhynchus hectori</i> <i>Gygis alba royana</i> <i>Orcinus orca</i> (Type A) <i>Pelagodroma albiclunis</i> <i>Porphyrio hochstetteri</i> <i>Sterna nereis davisae</i> <i>Strigops habroptilus</i> <i>Thinornis novaeseelandiae</i>
Nationally Endangered	Matuku, Australasian bittern Kewa, southern right whale Tara puka, black-billed gull Pekapeka, northern lesser short-tailed bat Hihi, stitchbird Amokura, red-tailed tropicbird Masked booby Terehu, bottlenose dolphin	<i>Botaurus poiciloptilus</i> <i>Eubalaena australis</i> <i>Larus bulleri</i> <i>Mystacina tuberculata aupaourica</i> <i>Notiomystis cincta</i> <i>Phaethon rubricauda</i> <i>Sula dactylatra fullageri</i> <i>Tursiops truncatus</i>
Nationally Vulnerable	Ngutu pare, wrybill North Island brown kiwi Kōkako Pekapeka, long-tailed bat Pohowera, banded dotterel Tūturiwhatu, northern New Zealand dotterel Weka Taranui, Caspian tern Kākā Niho taniwha, chevron skink Kāruhiruhi, pied shag Weweia, dabchick Tāiko, black petrel	<i>Anarhynchus frontalis</i> <i>Apteryx mantelli</i> <i>Callaeas wilsoni</i> <i>Chalinolobus tuberculata</i> (North Island) <i>Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus</i> <i>Charadrius obscurus aquilonius</i> <i>Gallirallus australis greyi</i> <i>Hydroprogne caspia</i> <i>Nestor meridionalis septentrionalis</i> <i>Oligosoma homalonotum</i> <i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i> <i>Poliocephalus rufopectus</i> <i>Procellaria parkinsoni</i>

At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Tititipounamu, rifleman Mātātā, fernbird Kororā, North Island blue penguin Tōrea, pied oystercatcher Poaka, pied stilt Peketua, Hochstetter's frog Moko kākārīki, Auckland green gecko Ornate skink Striped skink Toanui, flesh-footed shearwater Hakoko, sooty shearwater Tara, white-fronted tern	<i>Acanthisitta chloris granti</i> <i>Bowdleria punctata</i> <i>Eudyptula minor iredalei</i> <i>Haematopus finschi</i> <i>Himantopus himantrophus leucocephalus</i> <i>Leiopelma hochstetteri</i> (Warkworth, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)) <i>Naultinus elegans elegans</i> <i>Oligosoma ornatum</i> <i>Oligosoma striatum</i> <i>Puffinus carneipes</i> <i>Puffinus griseus</i> <i>Sterna striata striata</i>
Recovering	Pāteke, brown teal Kermadec petrel Little spotted kiwi Tōrea, variable oystercatcher Towns' skink Tīeke, North Island saddleback	<i>Anas chlorotis</i> <i>Cyanoramphus novaezelandiae cyanurus</i> <i>Apteryx owenii</i> <i>Haematopus unicolor</i> <i>Oligosoma townsi</i> <i>Philesturnus rufusater</i>

At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Relict	Pāpā, Pacific gecko Duvaucel's gecko Peketua, Hochstetter's frog Waikaka, black mudfish Moko skink Egg-laying skink Pūweto, spotless crake White-naped petrel Tiī, Cook's petrel Kermadec petrel Kermadec little shearwater Pakahā, fluttering shearwater Wedge-tailed shearwater Tuatara	<i>Dactylocnemis pacificus</i> <i>Hoplodactylus duvaucelii</i> <i>Leiopelma hochstetteri</i> (Hunua, Waitakere sites) <i>Neochanna diversus</i> <i>Oligosoma moco</i> <i>Oligosoma suteri</i> <i>Porzana tabuensis plumbea</i> <i>Pterodroma cervicalis</i> <i>Pterodroma cookii</i> <i>Pterodroma neglecta</i> <i>Puffinus assimilis kermadecensis</i> <i>Puffinus gavia</i> <i>Puffinus pacificus</i> <i>Sphenodon punctatus</i>
Naturally Uncommon	White-capped noddy Mokohinaus gecko Koekoeā, long-tailed cuckoo Dwarf inanga Moho pererū, banded rail New Zealand sooty tern Kawau, black shag Kawau paka, little shag Kawau tūi, little black shag Kōtuku-ngutupapa, royal spoonbill Grey ternlet	<i>Anous tenuirostris minutus</i> <i>Dactylocnemis "Mokohinaus"</i> <i>Eudynamys taitensis</i> <i>Galaxias gracilis</i> <i>Gallirallus philippensis assimilis</i> <i>Onychoprion fuscata kermadeci</i> <i>Phalacrocorax carbo novaehollandiae</i> <i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i> <i>Phalacrocorax sulcirostris</i> <i>Platalea regia</i> <i>Procelsterna cerulea albivittata</i>

Table A6.4. Other fauna of note.

Threatened species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Nationally Critical	Kākābeak gall mite A polychaete worm A stag beetle Takahē louse Land slug	<i>Aceria clianthi</i> <i>Boccardiella magniovata</i> <i>Geodorcus ithaginis</i> <i>Radicola roderickii</i> <i>Schizoglossa worthyae</i>

	Snakeskin scale	<i>Umbonichiton pellaspi</i>
Nationally Endangered	None listed	
Nationally Vulnerable	Kiwi louse Kōkako louse A gumland moth A northern pimelea moth Kōkako louse	<i>Apterygon mirum</i> <i>Brueelia</i> sp. (kōkako) <i>Clepsicosma</i> sp. "Titirangi" <i>Notoreas perornata</i> s.l., Northland/Auckland populations <i>Phlopterus novaezealandiae</i>
At Risk species		
Threat status	Common name	Scientific name
Declining	Northland rhytida Kakahi, freshwater mussel Katipo	<i>Amborhytida dunni</i> <i>Hyridella menziesii</i> <i>Lactrodectus katipo</i>
Relict	Wētāpunga, Little Barrier giant wētā	<i>Deinacrida heteracantha</i>
Naturally Uncommon	Earthworm Fly Spider Fly Hemipteran Hemipteran Fly Moth Hemipteran Kākā louse Hymenopteran Moth Moth Fly Hemipteran Beetle Earthworm Beetle Beetle Beetle Spider Spider Spider Beetle Fly Land snail Little Barrier kiwi louse Spider Moth Beetle Land snail Land snail	<i>Acanthodrilus kermadecensis</i> <i>Achalcus</i> sp. (Raoul Island) <i>Anoteropsis blesti</i> <i>Calliphora hilli kermadecensis</i> <i>Carystoterpa subtacta</i> <i>Cermada kermadecensis</i> <i>Chelipoda venatrix</i> <i>Ctenarchis cramboides</i> <i>Diomocoris raoulensis</i> <i>Forficuloecus meinertzhagenii</i> <i>Hylaeus kermadecensis</i> <i>Isonomeutis restincta</i> <i>Izatha dasydisca</i> <i>Kaurimyia thorpei</i> <i>Kikihia cutora exulis</i> <i>Mecodema pluto</i> <i>Megascolides rubicundus</i> <i>Menimus moehauensis</i> <i>Menimus pubiceps</i> <i>Menimus puncticeps</i> <i>Migas insularis</i> <i>Migas sandageri</i> <i>Novafroneta annulipes</i> <i>Omedes nitidus</i> <i>Pollenia dysaethria</i> <i>Pronesopupa senex</i> <i>Rallicola (Aptericola) rodericki</i> <i>Stanwellia hapua</i> <i>Stathmopoda aristodoxa</i> <i>Tangarona pensus</i> <i>Tornatellides subperforatus kermadecensis</i> <i>Tornatellinops iredalei</i>
	Land snail Hemipteran Fly Fly	<i>Tubuaia raoulensis</i> <i>Ugyops (Paracona) raouli</i> <i>Zalea earlyi</i> <i>Zalea wisei</i>
Recovering	Pāteke louse	<i>Anaticola</i> sp.

Appendix 7

Nationally iconic species in Auckland

These species were identified through using a combination of web-based and phone-based public surveys in which those participating were asked what species they thought were quintessentially kiwi, contributing to their identity as New Zealanders.

	Common name	Scientific name
Flora	Ferns Kauri Rimu Pōhutukawa Kōwhai	<i>Agathis australis</i> <i>Dacrydium cupressinum</i> <i>Metrosideros excelsa</i> <i>Sophora</i> spp.
Fauna	Kiwi Tūī Tuatara Kākāpō	<i>Apteryx</i> spp. <i>Prothemadera novaeseelandiae</i> <i>Sphenodon punctatus</i> <i>Strigops habroptilus</i>

Appendix 8

Marine habitats and ecosystems in Auckland

The Coastal Classification and Mapping Scheme depth zones are as follows: shallow—0–30 m; deep—30–200 m; upper slope—200–500 m; mid-slope—500–1000 m; lower slope—1000–4000 m.

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Kermadec Islands bioregion:				
Intertidal	Exposed rocky shore	Generally low diversity, but high levels of endemism in some groups, particularly the Mollusca. Only truly subtropical marine ecosystem in New Zealand. Includes New Zealand's only populations of reef-building corals and the largest known population of spotted black grouper (<i>Epinephelus daemeli</i>). Juvenile and adult green turtle (<i>Chelonia mydas</i>) habitat. Internationally significant scientific and biodiversity values. An essentially pristine marine environment.	Natural threats to biodiversity include submarine and subaerial volcanism.	Kermadec Islands Marine Reserve: all marine habitats within the Territorial Sea surrounding Raoul (Rangitāhua), Macauley, Curtis and Cheeseman Islands, and L'Esperance Rock. A large benthic protected area covers Quota Management Area (QMA) 10.
	Moderate rocky shore			
	Exposed beach			
Insular shelves	Exposed shallow reef	Commercial fishing of migratory or highly mobile species outside marine reserve boundaries.		
	Moderate shallow reef	Illegal fishing.		
	Exposed volcanic sediments	Marine debris.		
	Moderate volcanic sediments	Deep-sea petroleum and mineral exploration.		
	Deep reef and deep volcanic sediments	Very poorly known. Generally low diversity. Rocky substrata at around 90–100 m depth may be covered in coralline algae. Abundant fish life: sharks, rays, convict grouper (<i>Epinephelus septemfasciatus</i>), warehanga/kingfish (<i>Seriola lalandi</i>), tarakihi (<i>Nemadactylus macropterus</i>), demoiselles (<i>Chromis dispilus</i>), pink maomao (<i>Caprodon longimanus</i>).		
Upper and mid-slope (200–1000 m)	Rocky substrata (outcropping rock, large boulders, tallus fields)	Very poorly known. Low diversity but endemism apparent in a number of groups. Hard substratum often mostly barren of encrusting life. The sessile fauna of reefs is dominated by cup corals, stalked crinoids and brisingid sea stars. Dense populations of stalked crinoids occur in places. Flatfishes are abundant on soft sediments.		
	Mixed sediment (cobbles, pebbles and soft sediment)			
	Extensive areas of soft sediments (sands and muds)			

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
	Active hydrothermal vents	Beds of <i>Bathymodiolus</i> and <i>Gigantidus gladius</i> mussels, bacterial mats, and other associated 'vent fauna.' Both species of habitat-forming bivalve are endemic to this region.		
Lower slope		Largely unknown below 1500 m depth.		
Coastal and oceanic waters		Important part of the migratory corridor of South West Pacific hamupēke/humpback whales (<i>Megaptera novaeangliae</i>).		
Northeastern bioregion (Te Arai Point to Miranda):				
Outer Hauraki Gulf	Moderate rocky shore	Shore bird habitat.	Ongoing coastal development resulting in direct and indirect habitat loss; point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of fine sediments, nutrients and other contaminants; litter; and chronic noise pollution and disturbance. Trampling of intertidal organisms in high-use areas. Overfishing resulting in trophic cascades. Removal of epifauna and habitat homogenisation by mobile fishing gear. Invasive marine species. Toxic algal blooms.	Cape Rodney–Okakari Point (Leigh) and Tāwharanui Marine Reserves: representative examples of shallow coastal habitats.
	Sheltered rocky shore	High recreational use and high natural character values.		
	Moderate beach	Productive reef systems supporting diverse invertebrate and reef fish fauna. Algal forests an important source of nutrients to surrounding soft sediments.		
	Sheltered beach			
	Moderate shallow reef			
	Sheltered reef			
	Moderate shallow sand	Diverse epifauna and infauna, including dense populations of the New Zealand lancelet (<i>Epigonichthys hectori</i>) in areas undisturbed by mobile fishing gear.		
	Rhodoliths (maerl beds)			
	Moderate shallow gravel			
	Shallow mud	Productive commercial, customary and recreational shellfish and finfish fisheries. Juvenile tāmure/snapper (<i>Pagrus auratus</i>) nursery habitat.		
	Deep sand	Habitat of important inshore commercial fishes—most notably tāmure/snapper, araara/trevally (<i>Pseudocaranx dentex</i>), kumukumu/gurnard (<i>Chelidonichthys kumu</i>).	Removal of epifauna and habitat homogenisation by mobile fishing gear.	
	Deep mud			
	Deep reefs	Deep offshore reefs, particularly those associated with offshore islands, support diverse fish and benthic invertebrate assemblages,	Overfishing. Low-relief reefs vulnerable to disturbance by mobile fishing gear.	

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
		including populations of protected black corals and gorgonians.	Anchors and entanglement in lines can damage/destroy black corals, gorgonians and other fragile epifauna.	
	High-current reef	High epifaunal and infaunal diversity.		
	High-current, deep sands, gravel and mud, dog cockle (<i>Glycymeris glycymeris</i>) drift	Important fish habitat.		
	Water column	Productive pelagic ecosystem providing internationally significant seabird habitat. Also nationally significant Bryde's whale (<i>Balaenoptera brydei</i>) habitat. Other protected species occurring here include aihe/common dolphin (<i>Delphinus delphis</i>) and terehu/bottlenose dolphin (<i>Tursiops truncatus</i>), kera wēra/killer whale (<i>Orcinus orca</i>), blue whale (<i>Balaenoptera musculus</i>), whale shark (<i>Rhincodon typus</i>) and manta ray (<i>Manta birostris</i>).	Ship strike. Underwater noise pollution. Marine debris. Toxic algal blooms (can be result of natural processes, species introductions via ballast water, or eutrophication of coastal waters).	
Whangateau, Matakana and Mahurangi estuaries	Mānawa/mangroves (<i>Avicennia marina</i>)	Relatively healthy estuarine ecosystems with low levels of contamination.	Catchment development/clearance and reclamation resulting in habitat loss; point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of freshwater, fine sediments, nutrients and other contaminants; litter; and chronic noise pollution and disturbance.	
	Karepō/seagrass (<i>Zostera</i> spp.)	Productive customary and recreational fisheries.		
	Intertidal sand and mud flats	Feeding, roosting and breeding areas for coastal and wading birds.		
	Estuarine sands and muds	Migratory corridor for diadromous fishes.	Overfishing.	
	Estuarine reefs		Invasive marine species. Sea level rise and mānawa/mangrove expansion potentially threaten wading bird habitat.	
Whangapoua Creek	Saltmarsh	Remnant subtidal mussel reef (formerly a widespread habitat type) in main channel; relatively pristine with intact coastal vegetation sequences.	Catchment development/clearance and reclamation.	
	Mānawa/mangrove			
	Karepō/seagrass			
	Intertidal sand and mudflats			
	Biogenic reefs			

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
Inner Hauraki Gulf and the Firth of Thames	Saltmarsh	The Firth of Thames' extensive tidal flats make it an internationally important feeding area for wading birds, with up to 25 000 birds, most of which are migratory, using these at any time. It is listed as a wetland of international importance under the Ramsar Convention, and is one of New Zealand's three most important wading bird habitats.	Sea level rise and mānawa/mangrove expansion potentially threaten wading bird habitat.	Long Bay–Okura and Te Matuku Marine Reserves: representative examples of sheltered inner Gulf coastal habitats.
	Mānawa/mangrove			
	Sheltered beach			
	Sheltered rocky shore			
	Tidal sand and mudflats			
	Shallow mud			
	High-current mud			
	Sheltered shallow reef	Productive benthic and pelagic ecosystem providing primary nursery habitat for at least 15 coastal fish species.	Suspended sediments, excess nutrients and other contaminants in terrestrial runoff.	Firth of Thames/ Tikapa Moana Ramsar site—this 8927-ha site lies within the Coastal Marine Area, with jurisdiction vested in Land Information New Zealand (LINZ), Waikato Regional Council and the Department of Conservation.
	High-current shallow reef			
	High-current shallow gravel			
	Dog cockle	Foraging area for little shearwaters (<i>Puffinus assimilis</i>), aihe/common dolphins, kera wēra/killer whales and Bryde's whales.	Stock grazing impacts on saltmarsh habitat.	
	Water column			
			Benthic communities have been extensively modified by historic trawling and shellfish dredging (e.g. loss of productivity and ecosystem services provided by natural mussel beds).	
			Aquaculture (benthic effects, loss of pelagic habitat).	
			Trampling of intertidal organisms in high-use areas.	
			Overfishing.	
			Invasive marine species.	
			Underwater noise pollution.	
			Ship strike (threatens the resident Bryde's whale population).	
			Toxic algal blooms.	
Waitemata Harbour	Mānawa/mangroves	Large estuarine harbour and side-arms support commercial, recreational and customary fisheries, very high recreational use, marinas, and a naval facility and commercial port.	Historic and ongoing coastal development resulting in habitat loss; point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of freshwater, fine sediments and contaminants; litter; chronic noise pollution and disturbance.	Motu Manawa–Pollen Island Marine Reserve: representative examples of mānawa/mangrove, saltmarsh, intertidal flats and estuarine sands.
	Saltmarsh			
	Estuarine rocky shore			
	Estuarine beach			
		Feeding, roosting and breeding areas for coastal and wading birds. Primary fish nursery habitat. Migratory corridor for diadromous fishes.	Overfishing	Invasive marine species.
	Intertidal sand and mud flats			
	Karepō/seagrass			
	Estuarine sands			
	Shallow, high-current sands			
	Estuarine reef			

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
West Coast North Island bioregion (Kaipara Harbour to Port Waikato):				
Kaipara Harbour	Mānawa/mangroves	Very large, relatively healthy estuarine environment. High natural character values. Extensive intertidal and subtidal karepō/seagrass beds. Most significant nursery habitat for tāmure/snapper, makō/rig (<i>Mustelus lenticulatus</i>) and possibly tope/school shark (<i>Galeorhinus galeus</i>) in upper North Island. Dense subtidal shellfish beds in the harbour entrance. Very productive customary, commercial and recreational fishery. Nationally significant feeding, roosting and breeding areas for coastal and wading birds. Kera wēra/killer whale and mangō taniwha/ great white shark (<i>Carcharodon carcharias</i>) feeding area. Migratory corridor for diadromous fishes.	Historic and ongoing coastal development resulting in habitat loss; and point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of fine sediments, nutrients and other contaminants. Tidal power development. Aquaculture. Sand mining. Overfishing. Invasive species (e.g. Japanese mantis shrimp (<i>Oratosquilla oratoria</i>)) Sea level rise potentially threatens wading bird and other coastal habitats.	
	Saltmarsh			
	Estuarine rocky shore			
	Estuarine beach			
	Intertidal sand and mud flats			
	Karepō/seagrass			
	Estuarine sands			
	Shallow, high-current sands			
	Estuarine reef			
Manukau Harbour	Mānawa/mangroves	Very large, relatively healthy, estuarine environment. Commercial port. Productive customary, commercial and recreational fisheries. High recreational use. Nationally significant feeding, roosting and breeding areas for coastal and wading birds. Maui's dolphin (<i>Cephalorhynchus hectori mauī</i>) habitat. Kekeno/New Zealand fur seal (<i>Arctocephalus forsteri</i>) haulout at Destruction Gully. Kera wēra/killer whale and mangō taniwha/ great white shark feeding area.	Ongoing loss of coastal fringe habitats, including wetlands, saltmarsh and mānawa/mangroves. Progressive catchment urbanisation resulting in increasing point source and diffuse (non-point source) discharges of fine sediments, nutrients and other contaminants. Some inlets and tributaries containing sediments with high levels of contaminants from historic industrial and agricultural discharges. Overfishing. Invasive marine species. Sea level rise potentially threatens wading bird and other coastal habitats. Chronic disturbance of wading birds.	West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary.
	Saltmarsh			
	Estuarine rocky shore			
	Intertidal sand and mud flats			
	Estuarine sands			
	Shallow, high-current sands			

Ecosystem	Habitat type	Significant values	Pressures/threats	Protected areas
		Migratory corridor for diadromous fishes.		
Exposed outer coast	Exposed beach	High natural character. Biota of intertidal and shallow subtidal rocky reefs poorly known—generally low diversity but distinctive assemblages adapted to a turbid, high-energy environment.	Accelerated coastal erosion due to sea level rise.	
	Exposed rocky shore		Marine debris.	
	Exposed shallow reef			
Inner to mid-shelf	Exposed shallow sand	Poorly known.	Set nets and inshore trawling threaten Maui's dolphin.	West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary.
	Deep sand	Core Maui's dolphin habitat.	Marine debris.	
	High-current shallow sand	Mangō taniwha/great white shark habitat.		
	Water column	Productive inshore and pelagic fisheries.	Overfishing.	

References

- Anderson, O.F.; Bagley, N.W.; Hurst, R.J.; Francis, M.P.; Clark, M.R.; McMillan, P.J. 1998: Atlas of New Zealand fish and squid distributions from research bottom trawls. *NIWA Technical Report 42*. 303 p.
- Beaumont, J.; Rowden, A.A.; Clark, M.R. 2009: Deepwater biodiversity of the Kermadec Islands Coastal Marine Area. NIWA Client Report: WLG2009-55; NIWA Project: DOC08310. 123 p.
- Compton, T.J.; Morrison, M.A.; Leathwick, J.R.; Carbines, G.D. 2012: Ontogenetic habitat associations of a demersal fish species, *Pagrus auratus*, identified using boosted regression trees. *Marine Ecology Progress Series 462*: 219–230.
- Department of Conservation; Ministry of Fisheries 2011: Coastal marine habitats and marine protected areas in the New Zealand Territorial Sea: a broad scale gap analysis. Vol. 1–3. Department of Conservation and the Ministry of Fisheries, Wellington, New Zealand.
- Hurst, R.J.; Bagley, N.W.; Anderson, O.F.; Francis, M.P.; Griggs, L.H.; Clark, M.R.; Paul, L.J.; Taylor, P.R. 2000: Atlas of juvenile and adult fish and squid distributions from bottom and midwater trawls and tuna longlines in New Zealand waters. *NIWA Technical Report 84*. 162 p.
- Kendrick, T.H.; Francis, M.P. 2002: Fish assemblages in the Hauraki Gulf, New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research* 36: 699–717.
- Ramsar Wetlands Information Sheet: www.wetlandtrust.org.nz/documents/Firth_factsheet.pdf viewed 19 September 2012.

Appendix 9

Significant geological features, landforms and landscapes in Auckland

Table A9.1. Significant geological features and landforms.

Note: An empty cell in the protected area column means that the feature is listed as not protected in the GNS/Department of Conservation data match.

Source: Auckland Regional Plan, outstanding natural landscapes, proposed plan change 8: Appendix F-2. Sites based on regional landscape assessments undertaken for Auckland Regional Council. All sites have one or more assessment criteria ranked 'very high'.

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Ambury Road lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—a complex 140-m-long lava cave with two branches; many flow features and well-preserved, unusual lava stalagmites	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Auckland Domain volcano; Map R11	Nationally significant—a large tuff ring with a central scoria cone surrounded by alluvium (castle and moat), and an external, subsurface lava flow	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Auckland Grammar School lava exposure; Map R11	Nationally significant—notable exposure of a well-preserved, columnar jointed lava unit up to 25 m high; popular rock climbing venue	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Bartrum Bay submarine canyon wall and trace fossils, Muriwai; Map R11	Internationally significant—notable exposure where trace fossils are seen in a bathyal submarine canyon wall	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Browns Island (Motukorea) scoria cone with motukoreaite; Map R11	Internationally significant—Motukorea is a whole volcanic system in miniature and is the least damaged of Auckland's volcanoes; partly submerged by rising post-glacial sea level; type locality for the mineral motukoreaite	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Protected
Cave of a Thousand Press-ups; Map R11	Nationally significant—a network lava cave about 270 m in length	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Cochranes Gap accretionary lapilli; Map R12	Nationally significant—notable example of large (5-20 mm diameter) accretionary lapilli within a pyroclastic flow deposit	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Protected
Crater Hill quarry exposures; Map R11	Nationally significant—excellent exposures of lithic tuff, basaltic lapilli and crater rim collapse features; useful teaching sites	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Crater Hill tuff ring and crater; Map R11	Nationally significant—notable Manukau City explosion craters and tuff rings; unique example in Auckland field of the cooled remnants of a lava lake that filled the crater and later withdrew down the vent; two lava caves present	Already destroyed by human actions	
East Pakatoa Island broken formation; Map S11	Nationally significant—a world class example of broken formation exposed in extremely fresh high tidal exposures	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Farm Cove ignimbrite; Map R11	Nationally significant— notable exposures of a rhyolitic ignimbrite flow deposit, showing that Auckland is within the range of superheated pyroclastic flows erupted from the centre of the North Island; the deposit here is 3 m thick and buries charred vegetation	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Flat Top Hill Tangihua structure, Kaukapakapa; Map Q10	Nationally significant—an example of structural deformation in the southernmost mass of Tangihua Volcanics; unusually large apophyllite and stilbite crystals exposed in quarry	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Helena Rubinstein lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—a branched lava cave totalling about 320 m in length, with many lava rolls	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Hobsonville complex landslide; Map R11	Nationally significant—a complex landslide consisting of coastal slip and flow occurring in one of the few places where pumice silts exist at sea level; well-defined landform of scientific/educational value	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Ihumatao Pleistocene buried fossil forests; Map R11	Nationally significant— notable New Zealand example of a fossilised mature kauri (<i>Agathis australis</i>) forest, and of a fossil forest, buried and preserved beneath volcanic ash	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Protected
Kawau Island pillow lavas; Map R09	Nationally significant— notable New Zealand tubular pillow lava	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Kitenui lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—one of the longest and best-preserved lava caves under Auckland City	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Kiwi Esplanade pahoehoe lava flow; Map R11	Nationally significant— notable example of pahoehoe lava surfaces	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Protected
Lino lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—lava cave about 90 m long	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Man o' War Passage; Map S08	Nationally significant— notable narrow sea passage between cliffed shorelines; spectacular scenic feature of tourist value	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Mathesons Bay basal Waitemata Group thrusts-cut unconformity and Miocene reef corals; Map R09	Nationally significant—easily accessible, well-exposed educational stop showing onlap of early Miocene Waitemata sediments on Waipapa Group; richest New Zealand locality for the unusual chaliciform reef corals	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
McLaughlins Mountain and Matukuturua stonefields; Map R11	Nationally significant—highly visible quarried remains of scoria cone; southernmost volcano in the Auckland Volcanic Field; the only significant remains of the three volcanoes in the Wiri area; includes a small crater lake/wetland inside a small remaining arc of tuff ring; significant area of pre-European horticultural stonework gardens	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Protected

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Mercer Bay chimney and sea cave; Map Q11	Nationally significant—a good example of a sea cave that has eroded vertically upwards along joint planes to form a 100-m-high chimney opening near the top of the cliffs; well-defined landform of scientific/educational and scenic value	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Miranda chenier plain and coastal flats; Map S12	Internationally significant—important area for study of chenier plain development in a tectonically stable, progradational coast; only known occurrence in the world of a chenier plain gravel ridge association (in conjunction with Whakatiwai gravel ridges)	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Mortimer Pass lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—the only rift cave known in Auckland, about 35 m long	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Motor Holdings lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—lava cave about 114 m long, containing some lava rolls	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Motukaha gravel tombolo, Waiheke; Map R11	Nationally significant—best Auckland example of a narrow gravel tombolo	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Motutapu Island human footprints; Map R10	Nationally significant—fossil human footprints and dog paw prints preserved in Rangitoto Ash; only known archaeological evidence of people witnessing and being affected by an eruption (Rangitoto) in the Auckland Volcanic Field; unique in New Zealand	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Motutapu Miocene basal Waitemata Group contact, with fossil giant barnacles; Map R10	Nationally significant—classic locality for showing the sedimentary relationship of the early Miocene Waitemata Group to the underlying basement, and the character of the early Miocene coastline; classic type locality of the giant barnacle <i>Bathylasma aucklandica</i> ; high educational significance for Auckland geology classes	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Mt Mangere scoria cone; Map R11	Nationally significant—notable large, well-preserved scoria cone with a breached crater; within the crater, the lava plug (surrounded by gas vents) is unique in the Auckland field	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Protected in part (Auckland Council)
Mt Royal lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—excellent example of a lava cave, lava stalactites and dribbles; also several excellent gas chimneys	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Maungarei/Mt Wellington fused cowpat bombs; Map R11	Nationally significant—notable example of cowpat bombs, uniquely large (up to 0.8 m across and 0.2 m thick) and partially fused together to create this deposit on the crest of the crater	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Protected
Maungarei/Mt Wellington scoria cone; Map R11	Nationally significant—the largest scoria cone in the Auckland Volcanic Field; the cone (Maungarei) also has notable archeological significance	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Protected (Auckland Council)

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Muriwai pillow lavas, Maori Bay; Map Q11	Internationally significant—quality exposed and preserved pillow lavas, inter-bedded with fossiliferous sediments that give an indisputable bathyal depth	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Muriwai volcanoclastic sediments; Map Q11	Internationally significant—well-exposed in coastal cliff and intertidal platforms; best exposures in New Zealand of submarine canyons and channels filled with volcanoclastic sediments	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Protected (Auckland Council)
Nihotupu Gorge volcanoclastic flysch, Waitakere Ranges; Map Q11	Nationally significant—best-exposed section through this interfingering lateral facies boundary between Waitemata basin flysch and Waitakere volcanoclastic pile	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
North Piha stranded sea cave and stalactites; Map Q11	Nationally significant—only known carbonate stalactites in volcanogenic rocks in the North Island; associated with excellent, easily accessible sea cave formed in non-calcareous, gritty andesitic sandstone of the Piha Formation	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Protected (Auckland Council)
Maungakiekie/ One Tree Hill scoria cone; Map R11	Nationally significant—a large, complex scoria cone with extensive lava fields mantled by tephra from the Three Kings volcano; has features of archeological significance, including terracing, food storage pits, living sites and fortifications	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Orakei Basin tuff ring; Map R11	Nationally significant—a large, conspicuous tuff ring within a closely populated suburb; it has been breached by a stream and invaded by rising sea level	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Orakei Greensand Miocene fossils; Map R11	Nationally significant—historically important locality collected by Hochstetter in 1859; type locality of several Mollusca and especially of numerous Foraminifera described by Karrer in 1864	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Protected
Oruawhoro hyaloclastite; Map Q09	Nationally significant—best example of hyaloclastite and associated vent complex in the Miocene volcanics of Northland; well exposed	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Panmure Basin explosion crater; Map R11	Nationally significant—relatively complete ex-explosion crater and associated tuff ring; naturally breached to form a tidal lagoon	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Papakanui dune field, Kaipara South Head; Map Q09	Nationally significant—a large area of mobile dune fields and 3-km-long active sandspit	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Protected
Parnell Baths Parnell Grit; Map R11	Nationally significant—type locality for Parnell Grit; an important educational site	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Point England accretionary lapilli (chalazoidites); Map R11	Nationally significant—an exposure of rhyolitic, co-ignimbritic deposits from the Taupo Volcanic Zone	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Pollen Island mudflats; Map R11	Nationally significant—best remaining largely unmodified area of salt marsh, mānawa/mangroves (<i>Avicennia marina</i>) and estuarine and harbour mudflats in Waitemata Harbour	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Protected
Pukaki Lagoon tuff ring and crater; Map R11	Nationally significant—notable Manukau example of an explosion crater and tuff ring; a large, well-preserved explosion crater and surrounding tuff ring with minimal urban development	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Pukekohe East tuff ring; Map R12	Nationally significant—the best-preserved tuff ring in the South Auckland Volcanic Field	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Puketutu Island intrusive lava flow; Map R12	Nationally significant—Noteworthy example of a lava flow intruding and baking soft sediment, pushing up an anticline of tuff and intruding as dikes along the fractured anticline crest	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Rakino Island prehistoric quarry; Map R11	Nationally significant—notable extensive prehistoric greywacke fine sandstone, and argillite quarry and working area	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Rangitoto hornito; Map R11	Nationally significant—only publicly accessible example of a hornito in New Zealand	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Protected
Rangitoto pillow lava lobes; Map R11	Nationally significant—rare New Zealand example of lava lobes that flowed into the sea and were rapidly cooled in the intertidal zone	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Protected
Rangitoto southern lava cave (unnamed); Map R11	Nationally significant—an unmodified 60-m-long straight remnant of a much longer collapsed lava cave	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Protected
Rangitoto volcano; Map R11	Nationally significant—the youngest and largest volcano in the Auckland field; it has an uneroded aa lava surface with a few caves and trenches; plant colonisation of the rocky surface is of botanical interest	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Protected
Ratcliffe lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—lava cave about 130 m long	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Robertson Hill scoria cone; Map R11	Nationally significant—a small, cratered, scoria cone within a large, swamp-filled, tuff ring forming a ‘castle-and-moat’ structure	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Ruapotaka lava shaft, Maungarei/Mt Wellington; Map R11	Nationally significant—a vertical lava cave containing some well-preserved gas bubble craters about 15 cm in diameter	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Scotlands lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—a lava cave about 160 m long	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Sels lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—rare examples of lava caves that were formed in lava flows confined within a volcanic crater	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Slater Point fossil sea stack, Kawau Island; Map R09	Nationally significant—notable example of a fossil sea stack; it is buried by shallow marine conglomerate	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
South Kaipara Barrier Quaternary coastal sequence; Map Q09	Nationally significant—first described New Zealand Quaternary coastal zone sequence correlated closely with classified European sequence	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
South Te Henga pillows and hyaloclastites; Map Q11	Nationally significant—well-exposed pillow lavas and hyaloclastites	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Stewarts lava cave (Mortimer's Cave); Map R11;	Nationally significant—a two-part lava cave about 180 m long, with two levels and a cave-in-cave feature; typical features such as lava rolls, drip formations, etc.	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Stony Batter karstic basalt boulders, Waiheke Island; Map S10	Internationally significant—noteworthy example of fluted basalt; northernmost occurrence of Kīwitahi Volcanics; Waiheke Island's only volcano	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Tahuna Torea cusped foreland and shell spit; Map R11	Nationally significant—notable example of a cusped foreland formed from two sandshell spits; narrow shell spit extends a further 1 km out across Tamaki Estuary	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	Protected
Takanini pumicite; Map R12	Nationally significant—an exposure in South Auckland of primary tephra from the Taupo Volcanic Zone	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	Protected
Takapuna chabazite; Map R11	Internationally significant—the most silica-poor reported sedimentary chabazite	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Takapuna Reef fossil forest; Map R11	Nationally significant—the only New Zealand and a significant world example of a standing forest that has been preserved as lava moulds by lava flows that passed through it	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Tawharanui fossiliferous Jurassic section; Map R09	Nationally significant—very rare occurrence in Northland of basement fossils	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	Protected
The Gap volcanoclastic conglomerate and Taitomo Cave, South Piha; Map Q11	Nationally significant—best exposure of high-energy, marine coarse volcanoclastic facies in Waitakere Ranges; best example of contemporary sea arches and blowholes on the west coast of Northland and Auckland	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
The Watchman dacite dome and crater; Map Q11	Nationally significant—a good example of flow structures in volcanic rocks; only flow-banded dacite in Waitakere Ranges; well-exposed crater from initial explosive eruption	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Underground Press lava cave; Map R11	Nationally significant—a 40-m-long lava cave with a large main chamber; flow features, stalactites and stalagmites are present; historic	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	

Feature	Significance	Pressure/threat	Protected area
Waiwera Parnell Grit; Map R10	Nationally significant—easily accessible, educational locality showing a complex volcanic sediment gravity flow interbedded with flysch	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Weiti River shell spits; Map R10	Internationally significant—some of the best examples in New Zealand of actively forming intertidal shell spits		
Whakatiwai gravel ridges; Map S12	Nationally significant—notable area for study of gravel ridge development in a tectonically stable progradational coast; only known occurrence in the world of a chenier plain gravel ridge association (in conjunction with Miranda chenier plain)	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	
Whangapoua Estuary, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island); Map S08	Nationally significant—notable pristine estuary on Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)	Vulnerable to significant modifications by human actions	
Whatipu Caves and pyroclastic breccia dikes; Map Q11	Nationally significant—sea caves, now abandoned due to aggrading coastline; best exposed group of pyroclastic dikes of volcanic origin in northern New Zealand	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Whatipu coastal flats; Map Q11	Nationally significant—extensive area of sandflats and low dunes, most of which were deposited between 1900 and 1930 AD.	Probably not vulnerable to any likely human actions	
Wiri lava cave; Map R11	Internationally significant—the best example and longest known lava cave in New Zealand	Vulnerable to complete destruction by human actions	

Table A9.2. Significant landscapes (listed in order of significance ranking).

Feature	Significance	Protected area*
Area 88: Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)—includes Kaikoura (Selwyn), Broken (Pig) and Rakitu (Arid) Islands	Extensive island landscape, spectacular coastal landscapes, and lowland to hill country environments that include wetlands and very large tracts of coastal forest; the centre of the island is dominated by spectacular hills, ridges and bluffs; rated very high on six out of seven assessment criteria.	Largely protected
Area 89: Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island	Discrete and intact 'pre-European' island landscape; spectacular rocky coastal landscapes and steep hill country, with an extensive tract of indigenous coastal forest; a pronounced uplifted landform, distinctive conical shape, very limited coastal edge; rated very high on six out of seven assessment criteria.	Protected
Area 6: Papakanui Spit - Waionui Inlet / South Kaipara Head	Harbour and estuary, wild nature (coastal) South Kaipara Head duneland, Papakanui sand spit and Waionui Inlet extending north of Rangitira Beach; dominated by a massive dune system of the south head of the Kaipara Harbour mouth; rated very high on five out of seven assessment criteria.	Protected in part

Feature	Significance	Protected area*
Area 44: Mahurangi–Waiwera	An iconic landscape, with deep river valleys of the Puhoi and Waiwera Rivers, and enclosed coastal estuaries that feed into the Hauraki Gulf, framed by a dramatic sequence of headlands, sedimentary cliffs, coastal ridges and native forest extending well inland; also includes mānawa/mangrove colonies and a patchwork of open pasture; rated very high on four out of seven assessment criteria.	Largely unprotected
Area 74: Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, Browns (Motukorea) and Tiritiri Matangi Islands	Iconic Hauraki Gulf island landscapes that include two distinctive volcanic features and other sedimentary island landforms; widely viewed landmark; rated very high on four out of seven assessment criteria.	Protected
Area 28: Coastline from Pakiri River to Omaha Cove	Highly dramatic and dynamic landscape of steep coastal cliffs and a main ridgeline descending to rock shoals and coves, including Te Hāwera-a-Maki / Goat Island, that face the open waters of the outer Hauraki Gulf; Cape Rodney is a major point of transition between more sheltered Gulf waters and the open sea; rated very high on four out of seven assessment criteria.	Largely unprotected
Area 37: Tawharanui Peninsula	Spectacular peninsula landscape, headlands, steep cliffs and shoals with ocean beaches and bays; inland reaches include ridges and valleys in a mixture of bush, pasture, some low-density development and some small-scale pine woodlots; rated very high on four out of seven assessment criteria.	Largely unprotected
Area 78: Waiheke Island eastern end	Extensive sequence of rolling to steep hill country and rocky/embayed coastline at the eastern end of Waiheke Island; large areas of remnant native forest intermixed with open pasture and vineyards; convoluted shoreline; includes Stony Batter historic defence features; rated very high on three assessment criteria and high on four others.	Largely unprotected
Area 73: Waitakere Ranges and coastline	Extensive sequence of re-emerging to mature native forest on hill country including Manukau Harbour margins, and a dynamic, dramatic West Coast; iconic landscape; excludes major areas of settlement, e.g. Piha; rated very high on three assessment criteria and high on four others.	Largely unprotected
Area 40: Mahurangi East Regional Park	Dramatic large peninsula with outer coastal cliffs and gently shelving harbour margins on the eastern side of the Te Kapa River; remnant native forest with pasture, as well as coastal pōhutukawa (<i>Metrosideros excelsa</i>); rated very high on three assessment criteria and high on four others.	Protected in part
Area 20: Tāpora Dune islands and coastal marine area	Extensive area of low dune islands, intertidal flats/banks, wetland / salt marsh, mānawa/mangrove colonies and marginal coastal terraces that contain a mixture of wetland species, mānuka (<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>) and pampas (<i>Cortaderia selloana</i>); rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on five others.	Protected in part
Area 29: Ti Point	Dramatic peninsula with outer coastal cliffs and gently shelving harbour margins at the northeastern side of Whangateau Harbour; includes remnant coastal native forest with pasture and pōhutukawa; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on five others.	Largely unprotected
Area 43: West Mahurangi Harbour	An iconic combination of ridges, river and stream valleys, bays, and harbour headlands; complex harbour topography enframed by large pockets of native forest—includes the Mahurangi River up to Warkworth and its bush-clad escarpment; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on five others.	Largely unprotected

Feature	Significance	Protected area*
Area 7: Muriwai/Rangitira Beach (north of Muriwai settlement)	Linear and extensive open beach on the edge of the Tasman Sea, extending to inland dune system; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on four others.	Largely unprotected
Area 22: Pakiri Beach	Pakiri Ocean Beach extending into dune system for most of its length, together with some coastal terrace landforms at the southern end near Pakiri Stream; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on four others.	Largely unprotected
Area 55: West Coast Awhitu Peninsula	Dynamic coastline with massive dune formations, which includes major coastal ridges and headlands, steep valleys and gullies around lakes and wetlands, and remnant native forest; very scenic landscape; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on four others.	Largely unprotected
Area 62: Hunua Ranges (part in Manukau Area)	Second major hill range flanking Auckland's metropolitan area; dominated by native forest and water catchments with lake reservoirs; significant areas of native forest and maturing vegetation; low levels of built modification; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on four others.	Largely protected (Auckland Council)
Area 77: Waiheke Island northern headlands, Hakaimango Point to Onetangi Bay	Headland and rocky coastal landforms, areas of remnant forest and pasture, steep cliffs, and rock shoals, framing larger bays along the northwestern coastline of Waiheke Island; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on four others.	Largely unprotected
Area 27: Mt Tamahunga	Very prominent tract of hill country and mostly native forest (Omaha Conservation Area) around Mt Tamahunga; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on three others.	Largely protected
Area 65: Mataitai Forest	Dissected hill country that combines a highly significant tract of native forest, shrubland and stream corridors, with pockets of pasture on the hill country margins; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on three others.	Largely protected
Area 66: North Clevedon	Dissected hill country overlooking Clevedon; steep sequence of ridges and stream corridors, and extensive area of remnant native forest and shrubland that contrasts with surrounding pastoral farmland and exotic forestry; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on three others.	Largely unprotected
Area 81: Waiheke Island, Whakanewha	Sequence of rolling hill country in native forest and regenerating shrubland extending down to a large raupō (<i>Typha orientalis</i>) wetland basin; linked with the wetland and intertidal margins of Rocky Bay; rated very high on two assessment criteria and high on three others.	Largely unprotected
Area 19: Oruawharo Heads, Okahukura Peninsula	Coastal headlands, ridges and slopes that are largely covered in remnant native forest and culminate in the Oruawharo Heads, with a large enclosed bay and mānawa/mangrove colony, and intertidal banks, and which extends into the Oruawharo River; rated very high on one assessment criterion and high on six others.	Protected in part
Area 33: Omaha kahikatea (<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>) swamp forest	Significant remnant of indigenous kahikatea forest on the edge of Whangateau Harbour. Extensive intertidal areas, some mānawa/mangroves and salt marsh; rated very high on one assessment criterion and high on five others.	Largely protected
Area 46: Upper Puhoi Valley	Very dramatic and dissected hill country with a complex sequence of stream corridors in which mature native forest dominates the higher slopes and ridge crests flanking lower lying pasture; includes the bush-covered escarpment following the Puhoi River; rated very high on one assessment criterion and high on five others.	Protected in part

Feature	Significance	Protected area*
Area 41: Te Kapa River headwaters (Mahurangi)	Attractive harbour / rural landscape, with gently rolling and enclosed slopes that lead down to Mahurangi Harbour around the Te Kapa River; remnant native forest and open pasture, mānawa/mangroves and harbour waters; rated very high on one assessment criterion and high on three others.	Largely unprotected

* Protected status is as indicated in the Department's Geographical Information System and is described as follows: protected, largely protected, protected in part, largely unprotected, unprotected. Protected status is a guide only, and is based on the overall description of the location (not just area title) as used in the landscape assessment.

Appendix 10

Recreation destinations in Auckland

Note: The different types of visitor destination are defined individually in the glossary and taken from the Department's "Destination Management Framework".

Recreation destinations located in backcountry or remote settings are not included in this table but are addressed in general in Parts One and Two of this CMS.

Icon Destinations
<p>Cape Rodney–Okakari Point Marine Reserve (including Goat Island Bay road end)</p> <p>North Head Historic Reserve—Historic Icon Site</p> <p>Rangitoto summit track and short walks near Rangitoto Wharf</p> <p>Tiritiri Matangi Island (Tiritiri Matangi wharf, Hobbs track, Wattle track, Kawerau track, Ridge track, Tiritiri Matangi lighthouse area)</p>
Gateway Destinations
<p>Aotea Track, Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island)</p> <p>Kawau Island Historic Reserve</p> <p>Motutapu Island Recreation Reserve</p> <p>Rangitoto Island Scenic Reserve remaining tracks and sites</p> <p>Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga—potential Gateway Destination</p> <p>Te Henga walkway (part of the Hillary Trail)—potential Gateway Destination</p>
Local Treasure Destinations
<p>Akapoua campsite</p> <p>Albany Reserve track</p> <p>Awana campsite</p> <p>Browns Island (Motukorea)</p> <p>Burton Wells Scenic Reserve</p> <p>Bush's Beach picnic area and track</p> <p>Casnell Island</p> <p>Dome Forest walkway—SH1 tearooms to viewing platform</p> <p>Fort Takapuna</p> <p>Goat Island Bay walkway</p> <p>Goldie Bush walkway</p> <p>Harataonga campsite</p> <p>Henderson Valley Reserve</p> <p>Kaiarara Bay seawall</p> <p>Kawau Island smelting house</p> <p>Logues Bush tracks</p> <p>Long Bay Marine Reserve</p> <p>Mahurangi Scenic Reserve / Scott Point track</p> <p>Matietie track, Waiheke</p> <p>Medlands campsite</p> <p>Miranda wildlife viewpoint</p> <p>Moirs Hill walkway</p> <p>Moirs Hill wildlife track</p> <p>Motu Manawa–Pollen Island Marine Reserve</p> <p>Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga</p> <p>Motuora Island</p>

Local Treasure Destinations
Moturekareka and Motutara Islands
Mt Auckland SH16 car park
Mt William Walkway
Okura Bush walkway
Old Lady Walk
Omaha Cove walk
Oreville Battery
Port Fitzroy Landing Reserve
Rangitawhiri Reserve track
Rangitoto, Controlled Mine Base
Raroa Reserve
SS Wairarapa Graves route, Onepoto Bay
SS Wairarapa Graves Walkway (Tapuwai)
Stony Batter gun emplacements, Waiheke
Stony Batter - Opopo Bay - Hooks Bay Walkway
Te Henga Walkway
Te Matuku Marine Reserve
The Green Campsite and track
Tiritiri, East Coast and Link tracks
Tiritiri, Wharf road
Wairere track
Warrens Creek / Link / Bridle tracks
Whangaparapara Old Mill track
Whangapoua campsite
Windy Canyon track to Lookout

Appendix 11

Prescriptions for the management of visitor management zones

Refer to Volume II for maps of the visitor management zones in Auckland.

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
General description	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Areas inside or on the periphery of urban areas Typically includes a historic or cultural site 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remnant native forest, wetlands, marine reserves and historic or cultural sites in areas dominated by farmland and plantation forest 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Where the majority of visitation occurs; typically small areas, scattered within or on the periphery of large, relatively natural areas Includes the vicinity of main 'scenic' roads passing through public conservation lands Often focused on a particular attraction 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Large-scale natural settings generally accessed first through front country Includes popular walks and tramps set within large-scale natural settings and/or that access other settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Catchments beyond the backcountry zone, forming the wild lands in the interior of large, protected areas, with basic low-use tracks, marked routes and huts in some places 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Gazetted wilderness
Accessibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enabled for people of most ages and abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typically via sealed and unsealed roads, and in some cases by boat Enabled for people of most ages or abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Readily accessible areas, usually via sealed roads, or scheduled ferry or air services Mostly by car, but also tour buses and guided parties to some sites Enabled for people of most ages and abilities 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> People will have travelled some distance to reach these settings 'Backcountry accessible' focuses on gravel roads, four wheel drive roads, navigable waters and aircraft landing sites Motorised ground access generally restricted to roads and designated routes 'Backcountry walk-in' is focused beyond the influence of motorised access 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Typically 5 or more hours travel from front country Access supported by aircraft in some areas 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Usually requires passing through backcountry and remote to reach the boundary

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
Predominant visitor groups	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short-stop travellers and day visitors 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predominantly short-stop travellers, day visitors and over-nighters Other visitors in transition to backcountry and remote settings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Predominantly 'backcountry comfort seekers' and 'backcountry adventurers' 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'Backcountry adventurers' and 'remoteness seekers' 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 'Remoteness seekers'
Facility setting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> High-standard footpaths, cycleways and modified landscapes High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Short walks, campsites and picnic areas, for a range of ages and abilities High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Good-quality facilities, services and easy access Sometimes the origin for tramping tracks and routes, with signs and information to make this transition clear High degree of control via information and direction signs, and barriers 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A range of facility standards, including any designated vehicle routes, and popular walks and tramping tracks Evidence of control limited to essential directional signs and barriers on Great Walks, and where there are significant hazards 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Basic huts, bridges, low-use tracks and marked routes Evidence of control is limited to essential signs 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No facilities
Desired visitor experience and interactions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Varying, from activities with large groups, time with small groups/families, some time away from other groups and, in some cases, solitude 				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Reasonable expectation of isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people Interaction with few other groups Considerable self-reliance on backcountry skills 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete isolation from sights, sounds and activities of other people Maximum interaction with only one other group is generally acceptable
Preferred maximum party size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is socially appropriate Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 50 Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 50 for periodic tour bus parties Conforming concessions schedule—15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 8 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 4

Setting	Urban	Rural	Front country	Backcountry—accessible and walk-in	Remote	Wilderness
Typical visitor interaction levels	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> What is socially appropriate 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 20 or less people seen per hour 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 30 or less people seen per visit duration 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 15 or less other people seen per day for 'backcountry adventurer' tracks or routes 40 or less people seen per day for 'backcountry comfort seeker' tracks or routes 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> One other party seen per day 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Less than one party per week
Concessions operations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessionaire activity may be permitted in all these visitor management zones, subject to conditions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects, including compliance with criteria within this table; the outcomes and policies for Part 2—Places and Part 3 apply Concessionaire client activities should not be advantaged or disadvantaged compared with those for non-concessionaire visitors, unless there is a specified reason for different management; the outcomes, and policies for Part 2—Places and Part 3 apply 					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions should only be granted for this setting where consistent with policies for wilderness areas
Concessions effects management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Avoid, remedy or mitigate effects by setting conditions 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Avoid or mitigate effects. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions activity to be indistinguishable from other predominant recreational approved activities 		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessions should only be granted for this setting where consistent with policies for wilderness areas
Aircraft management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aircraft access for visitor use purpose should not be approved other than in accordance with Policies 3.5.1 to 3.5.11 (Aircraft) in Part 3 and the outcomes and policies in Part 2—Places 					<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Aircraft access should only be granted where consistent with policies for wilderness areas

Appendix 12

Actively conserved historic places on public conservation land or managed by the Department in Auckland

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
Offshore and Outlying Islands Place				
Burgess Island (Pokohinu) historic remains	Mokohinau Islands, Hauraki Gulf	Lighthouse complex, World War II radar station, wharf and jetty	Vegetation; deferred maintenance; coastal erosion	Backcountry / accessible by private boat
Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island archaeological landscape	Hauraki Gulf	Māori settlement and cultivation area	Damage by further development; movement of stones by visitors; pressure to remove non-indigenous plant species	Backcountry / accessible by boat—entry permit required
Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)—archaeological landscape	Kermadec Islands	Polynesian settlement, early 20 th century European agricultural settlement	Natural erosion; inadvertent targetting of significant plant species	Non-visitor / accessible by boat—entry permit required
Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)—Boat Cove Road / Denham Bay / Bells Ravine tracks	Kermadec Islands	Polynesian settlement, early 20 th century European agricultural settlement	Natural erosion; inadvertent targetting of significant plant species	Backcountry / accessible by boat—entry permit required
Raoul Island (Rangitāhua)—meteorological station	Kermadec Islands	One of only two self-sufficient remote meteorological stations	Inappropriate modification	Backcountry / accessible by boat—entry permit required
Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island) Place				
Harataonga Bay homestead and graves	Harataonga	Cemetery and colonial farming	Lack of cyclical maintenance; fire	Non-visitor / homestead under lease—no access; graves accessible on foot from Harataonga campsite
Harataonga loop track pā (T8/2)	Harataonga	Pā site on recreation track	Vegetation; coastal erosion	Backcountry / accessible on foot from Harataonga campsite
Kaiaraara Bay seawall and bakery site	Port Fitzroy	Commercial occupation site of Colonial period	Deferred maintenance of vegetation control and erosion	Local Treasure
Kaiaraara driving dams	Great Barrier Forest	Commercial structure from timber industry	Structural collapse	Gateway / accessible on foot from Port Fitzroy Road
Miners Head copper mine complex	Te Paparahi	Early commercial mining—1842	Erosion; fossicking; chamber collapse	Backcountry / accessible by private boat
Oreville stamping battery site	Near Claris	Mining stamping battery site	Revegetation; visitor safety	Local Treasure / accessible by car from Whangaparapara

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
				Road
SS <i>Wairarapa</i> graves	Whangapoua Beach	Gravesites ×2	Lack of maintenance; coastal erosion at Onepoto site; political opposition to the size of the reserve within tribal lands	Local Treasure / accessible on foot from Mabey Road and Motairehe Road
Tramline track	Great Barrier Forest	Tramping track	Lack of maintenance	Gateway / Accessible on foot from Aotea Road
Whangaparapara sawmill site and steam engine remains	Great Barrier Forest	Ruins of sawmill complex, including steam engine	Corrosion; vegetation	Backcountry / accessible on foot from Whangaparapara Road
Windy Canyon track log hauler	Great Barrier Forest	Remnant structure of timber industry	Timber rot	Local Treasure / Accessible on foot from Aotea Road
Kawau Island Place				
Kawau Island—Mansion House valley complex (including house, chattels, gardens and jetty)	Hauraki Gulf	Integrated visitor historic site	Lack of funding; staffing; deferred maintenance	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Kawau Island—archaeological landscape	Hauraki Gulf	Māori settlement, copper mining, Sir George Grey estate	Pine (<i>Pinus</i> spp.) harvesting; inappropriate planting; weeds	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Kawau Island—coppermine enginehouse and boiler	Hauraki Gulf	Copper mining	Wave erosion; fabric deterioration from tidal action	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Kawau Island—coppermine smelting works	Hauraki Gulf	Copper mining	Fabric deterioration	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Kawau Island—School House Bay historic cemetery	Hauraki Gulf	Early European settlement	Pine removal and replanting	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Kawau Island—Sir George Grey Coach Road	Hauraki Gulf	Sir George Grey estate	Pine removal and replanting	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Kawau Island—Two House Bay estate manager's cottage	Hauraki Gulf	Sir George Grey estate	Further modification; loss of historic fabric during maintenance	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
Tiritiri Matangi Island Place				
Tiritiri Matangi Island—archaeological landscape	Hauraki Gulf	Māori settlement	Revegetation; track construction	Non-visitor / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Tiritiri Matangi Island—lighthouse complex	Hauraki Gulf	One of only three surviving lighthouse settlements	Inappropriate modification; encroachment of new facilities; historic fabric deterioration	Icon / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands Place				
Motutapu Island—archaeological landscape	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Māori occupation, defending New Zealand	Visitors; vandalism; erosion	Non-visitor / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Motutapu Island—farm settlement sites	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Colonial farming	Visitors; vandalism; erosion	Non-visitor / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Motutapu Island—Reid homestead	Home Bay, inner Hauraki Gulf	Colonial farming	Fire	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Motutapu and Rangitoto Islands—military installations	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Defending New Zealand	Corrosion; concrete decay; loss of field of view	Local Treasure / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Rangitoto Island—Gardiners Gap bach #108 and boatshed	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Recreation	Deferred maintenance	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Rangitoto Island—Islington Bay community hall, tennis court and public toilets	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Recreation	Deferred maintenance	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Rangitoto Island—Islington Bay public shelter and wharf abutment	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Recreation	Deferred maintenance	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Rangitoto Island—Islington Bay bach community	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Recreation	Deferred maintenance	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Rangitoto Island—Mackenzie Bay bach community	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Recreation	Deferred maintenance	Gateway / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Rangitoto Island—Rangitoto Wharf bach community	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Recreation	Deferred maintenance	Icon / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
Rangitoto Island—Rangitoto Wharf promenade (swimming pool, changing sheds and stone arch)	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Recreation	Deferred maintenance	Icon / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Motuihe Island/Te Motu-a-Ihenga Place				
Motuihe quarantine station / HMNZS <i>Tamaki</i> site	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Defending New Zealand	Visitors; vandalism; erosion	Local Treasure / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Browns Island (Motukorea) Place				
Browns Island (Motukorea) archaeological landscape	Inner Hauraki Gulf	Māori occupation, colonial farming	Visitors; vandalism; erosion; loss of site visibility	Local Treasure / accessible by private boat or water taxi from Auckland
Coast Defence Reserves Place				
Fort Takapuna Historic Reserve	South of Narrow Neck Beach, Devonport, Auckland	Defending New Zealand	Visitors; vandalism; erosion	Local Treasure / accessible by car or on foot from Devonport, Auckland
North Head Historic Reserve	Devonport, Auckland	Defending New Zealand, machinery	Visitors; vandalism	Icon / accessible by car or on foot from Devonport, Auckland
Waiheke Island—Stony Batter coastal defence complex	Waiheke Island, Hauraki Gulf	Defending New Zealand	Corrosion; concrete decay	Local Treasure / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Other actively conserved historic places				
Burton Wells Scenic Reserve	Mahurangi Harbour	Pā site	Visitor impacts; earthworks if carried out	Local Treasure / accessible on foot from Mahurangi East Road
Casnell Island pā	Mahurangi Harbour	Pā site ×2	Gradual deterioration from vegetation	Local Treasure / accessible on foot (tidal) from Mahurangi East Road
Mahurangi River Historic Reserve	Warkworth	Early industrial	Integration with adjacent landowners responsible for site	Non-visitor / accessible by private boat
Moir's Hill farm settlement	Warkworth	Early European farm settlement	Vehicle damage; fossicking; deterioration of trees; weeds	Local Treasure / accessible on foot from Moir Hill Road
Moturekareka and Motutara Scenic Reserves	Hauraki Gulf	Māori and European settlement, industry	Erosion	Local Treasure / accessible by private boat
Plows Road manganese mining complex	Plows Road, Hunua	Mining—general (manganese)	Stability of tunnels / visitor safety	Local Treasure / accessible on foot from carpark—3 h
Sadler Point pā	Entrance to	Pā site	Vegetation regrowth;	Non-visitor /

Place	Location	Heritage topics and significance	Pressure/threats	Destination management category / access
	Mahurangi Harbour		erosion	accessible by private boat
St Johns Redoubt Historic Reserve	Manukau	New Zealand Wars	Machinery damage	Non-visitor / accessible by car
Taupo pā	Okahukura Peninsula	Pā site	Overgrazing; modification of swamp area	Non-visitor / accessible on foot from Kakaraea Road
Ti Point pā	Ti Point, near Whangateau	Pā site	Root damage to earthworks; erosion	Non-visitor / accessible on foot from Ti Point Road
Waiheke - Te Matuku Bay cemetery	Waiheke Island, Hauraki Gulf	Cemetery	Visitors; vandalism; vegetation regrowth	Local Treasure / accessible by ferry from Auckland or private boat
Whangateau Marginal Strip	Whangateau	19 th century Māori and European settlement	Stock damage; fossicking; deterioration of trees	Non-visitor / accessible on foot from Ti Point Wharf Road

Appendix 13

Te Uri O Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002

Schedule 3 Kirihipi overlay areas for Manukapua Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve

Description of Area

The area to which this schedule applies is the area known as the Manukapua Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve, as shown on SO Plan 70052.

Preamble

Under section 42 of Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act 2002 (clause 5.1.3 of the deed of settlement), the Crown acknowledges the statement by Te Uri o Hau of the cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional values of Te Uri o Hau relating to Manukapua Government Purpose (Wildlife Management) Reserve, as set out below.

Statement of values by Te Uri o Hau relating to Manukapua

Manukapua (cloud of birds) is extremely significant to Te Uri o Hau because it is the remains of Taporapora, the tauranga waka (landing place) of our ancestral waka (canoe), the Mahuhu ki te Rangi.

When the Mahuhu ki te Rangi and its crew arrived in the Kaipara region from Hawaiki, they named the tauranga waka Taporapora after a remembered place in Hawaiki. Te Uri o Hau traditional history recalled by our kaumatua and kuia states that Taporapora was then a peninsula that extended from the present day location of Manukapua out to the Tasman sea creating a north and south channel at the mouth of the Kaipara Harbour.

Rongomai (Ariki of the Mahuhu ki te Rangi) and some crew members settled and built their whareniui (meeting house) on Taporapora. The tupuna (ancestors) used the whareniui to recite ancient knowledge, karakia (incantations), waiata (songs) and whakapapa (genealogy) with rangitira (chiefs) from around the region. This whareniui housed their taonga (treasures) brought with them from Hawaiki.

Rongomai married a wahine (woman) from the surrounding area and relocated his kaianga (village) from Taporapora to Manukapua and the Okahukura Peninsula. From this kaianga he used the surrounding land and water to gather kai (food) for the people. Te Uri o Hau whaikorero (oration) passed down from generation to generation talks of Rongomai's drowning and of a great tempest that washed away Taporapora because Rongomai did not perform the appropriate karakia before he went fishing.

For Te Uri o Hau, histories such as these represent the links and the continuity between the past and present generations. They reinforce tribal identity and solidarity, and document the events that shaped Te Uri o Hau as a people.

It is only evident at high tide that Manukapua is an island. At low tide one is able to walk from the Okahukura peninsula to Manukapua. One can also see the remains of the whenua (land) of Taporapora at low tide.

For many generations and still today the waters surrounding Manukapua provide kaimoana (seafood) such as patiki (flounder), kanae (mullet), pioke (shark), tamure (snapper), kuakua (scallop), pipi, and kutae (mussel) for Te Uri o Hau. The shifting sandbars of the Kaipara Harbour protect this source of kai for Te Uri o Hau. The whenua of Manukapua and the surrounding areas provided manu (birds) of many species and many of those species still nest and roost here today.

The mauri (life force) of Manukapua represents the essence that binds the physical and spiritual elements of all things together, generating and upholding life. All elements of the natural environment possess a life force and all forms of life are related. Mauri is a critical element of the spiritual relationship for Te Uri o Hau.

[Schedule 5.1] 4 Specific principles relating to Manukapua

The following specific principles are directed at the Minister of Conservation avoiding harm to, or the diminishing of, the Te Uri o Hau Values related to the Kirihipi Overlay Area:

- a) (Encouragement of respect for Te Uri o Hau association with Manukapua;
- b) Accurate portrayal of Te Uri o Hau association with Manukapua; and
- c) Recognition of Te Uri o Hau relationship with urupa, wahi tapu, and wahi taonga, including archaeological sites.

[Schedule 5.1] 5 Actions by the Director-General of Conservation in relation to specific principles

Pursuant to clause 5.1 of the Deed of Settlement, the Director-General has determined that the following actions will be taken by the Department of Conservation in relation to the specific principles:

- a) Encouragement of respect for Te Uri o Hau association with Manukapua
 - i) Staff, conservation board members, concessionaires and the public will be provided with information about the Te Uri o Hau Values and the existence of the Kirihipi Overlay Area over Manukapua;
 - ii) A sign will be erected explaining to visitors to Manukapua that activities such as picnicking on urupa sites denigrates their tapu status;
 - iii) A review will be undertaken of conditions to be applied generally to new concessions (including renewals);
 - iv) The removal of all rubbish and wastes from Manukapua will be encouraged;
 - v) As far as reasonably practicable, waste, particularly human waste, will be disposed of in a way that minimises the risk of contamination of the Kaipara Harbour and environs; and
 - vi) Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity will be consulted about the siting and design of new structures, and particular regard had to its views.
- b) Accurate portrayal of Te Uri o Hau association with Manukapua
 - i) As far as reasonably practicable, Te Uri o Hau association with Manukapua will be accurately portrayed in all of its new public information and educational material; and
 - ii) Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity will be consulted in the provision of the Department's new public information or educational material, and as far as reasonably practicable, the Department will only use Te Uri o Hau cultural information with the consent of Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity.
- c) Recognition of Te Uri o Hau relationship with urupa, wahi tapu and wahi taonga, including archaeological sites
 - i) Significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation will be avoided wherever possible;
 - ii) Where significant earthworks and disturbances of soil and/or vegetation cannot be avoided, Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity will be consulted and particular regard will be had to its relevant policies, including those relating to wheua tangata (unidentified human remains) and Archaeological sites; and
 - iii) Any wheua (human remains) or taonga found or uncovered will be left untouched and Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity informed as soon as possible.

Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol

The following document forms part of the schedules to the Te Uri o Hau Deed of Settlement

DEED OF SETTLEMENT:SCHEDULE 5.18

FORM OF DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION PROTOCOL

SCHEDULE 5.18

FORM OF DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION PROTOCOL

(Clause 5.12.2(a))

A PROTOCOL issued by the CROWN through the MINISTER OF CONSERVATION regarding DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION / TE PAPAATAWHAI INTERACTION with TE URI OHAU ON SPECIFIED ISSUES

1 INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 Under the Deed of Settlement dated [] between Te Uri o Hau and the Crown (*the Deed of Settlement*), the Crown, through the Minister of Conservation (*the Minister*) agreed to issue a Protocol setting out how the Department of Conservation (*the Department*) will interact with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] [*insert name and description once entity established in accordance with the Deed*] on specified issues.
- 1.2 Both the Department and Te Uri o Hau are seeking a relationship consistent with Te Tiriti o Waitangi/the Treaty of Waitangi principle of partnership that achieves over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both Te Uri o Hau and the Department.
- 1.3 Te Uri o Hau accept a responsibility to preserve, protect, and manage natural and historic resources through its tino rangatiratanga and kaitiakitanga.
- 1.4 The purpose of the Conservation Act 1987 (*the Act*) is to manage natural and historic resources under that Act and the Acts in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act. The Minister and Director-General are required to exercise particular functions, powers and duties under that legislation.

2 PURPOSE OF THE PROTOCOL

- 2.1 The purpose of this Protocol is to assist the Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost co-operation to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both.
- 2.2 The Protocol sets out a framework that enables the Department and Te Uri o Hau to establish a healthy and constructive working relationship that is consistent with section 4 of the Act. It provides for Te Uri o Hau to have meaningful input into the decision making processes and management of conservation lands within the Te Uri o Hau Protocol Area.

3 PROTOCOL AREA

This Protocol applies across Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area which means the area identified in the map included in Attachment A of the Protocol.

4 TERMS OF ISSUE

This Protocol is issued pursuant to section [] of the Te Uri o Hau Claims Settlement Act [] (*the Settlement Legislation*) and *clause 5.12* of the Deed of Settlement and is subject to the Settlement Legislation and the Deed of Settlement. The provisions of the Settlement Legislation and the Deed of Settlement specifying the terms on which this Protocol is issued are set out in Attachment B of the Protocol.

5 IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

5.1 The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Te Uri o Hau on a continuing basis by:

- (a) maintaining information on [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity]'s office holders, and their addresses and contact details;
- (b) providing reasonable opportunities for [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to meet with the Department;
- (c) holding alternate meetings at the Area Office and a Te Uri o Hau Marae or other venue chosen by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to review implementation of the Protocol every six months, unless otherwise agreed (such meetings will include a once yearly report back to Te Uri o Hau people to be held on relevant Te Uri o Hau Marae); and
- (d) training relevant staff on the content of the Protocol and briefing Conservation Board members on the content of the Protocol.

6 SPECIFIC PROJECTS

6.1 Within the first year of this Protocol being issued, and on a continuing basis, the Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will identify practical ways in which:

- (a) Te Uri o Hau can exercise *kaitiakitanga* over ancestral lands, natural and historic resources and other *taonga* managed by the Department;
- (b) The Department can manage *wahi tapu*, and *taonga tapu* and other places of historic or cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau in a manner which respects Te Uri o Hau *tikanga* and values;
- (c) Te Uri o Hau can actively participate in conservation management and activities; and
- (d) Specific projects may be undertaken by the Department in the following years (for example, restoration and enhancement projects) including timetables for implementing those projects.

6.2 The Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will on an annual basis identify priorities for undertaking specific projects requested by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] for the upcoming business year. The identified priorities will be taken forward by the Department into its business planning process and considered along with other priorities.

6.3 The decision on whether any specific projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator, after following the co-operative process set out above.

- 6.4 If the Department decided to proceed with a specific project requested by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department will meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan and timetable for implementation of the specific projects in that business plan.

7 CULTURAL MATERIALS

- 7.1 Cultural materials for the purpose of the Protocol are plants, plant materials, materials derived from animals, or birds for which the Department is responsible in the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area. Some of these materials are of importance to Te Uri o Hau in maintaining its culture, including medicinal practices and gathering of mahinga kai in accordance with Te Uri o Hau tikanga.
- 7.2 Current legislation means that generally some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering and possession of cultural materials.
- 7.3 The Department will:
- (a) Consider requests from [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the relevant legislation;
 - (b) Agree, where appropriate, for [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance, or culling of species, or where materials become available as a result of road kill;
 - (c) Consult with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in circumstances where there are competing requests from non-Te Uri o Hau persons or entities for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes; and
 - (d) Work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to develop procedures for monitoring sustainable levels and methods of use of cultural materials.

8 HISTORIC RESOURCES / WAHITAPU

- 8.1 Te Uri o Hau consider that Te Tiriti o Waitangi the Treaty of Waitangi covered wahi tapu, including urupa, wahi taonga, and other places of historic significance as taonga (priceless treasures) for all the hapu and iwi of Aotearoa. The Department will respect the great significance of these taonga by fulfilling the obligations contained in this section of the Protocol.

The Department has a statutory role to conserve historic resources in protected areas and will endeavour to do this for sites of significance to Te Uri o Hau in association with them and according to Te Uri o Hau tikanga.

- 8.3 The Department accepts that non-disclosure of locations of places known to Te Uri o Hau may be an option that [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] chooses to take to preserve the wahi tapu nature of places. The responsibility for identifying and assessing Te Uri o Hau heritage values largely rests with Te Uri o Hau. There may be situations where [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will ask the Department to treat information it provides on wahi tapu sites in a confidential way. The Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will work together to establish processes for dealing with information on wahi tapu sites in a way that recognises both the management challenges that confidentiality can present and respects the views of Te Uri o Hau.
- 8.4 To assist in this process, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will notify the Area Manager of any concerns with the Department's management of wahi tapu areas and the Department will take reasonable steps to address the situation.

- 8.5 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] at the Area Office level to respect the Te Uri o Hau values attached to identified wahi tapu, wahi taonga and places of historic significance on lands administered by the Department by:
- (a) managing sites of historic significance to Te Uri o Hau according to standards of conservation practice which care for places of cultural heritage value, their structures, materials and cultural meaning, as outlined in the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) New Zealand Charter 1993;
 - (b) ensuring as far as possible when issuing and renewing concessions that give authority for other parties to manage land administered by the Department, that those parties:
 - (i) Manage the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993; and
 - (ii) When issuing and renewing concessions to carry out activities on the land administered by the Department, request that the concessionaire consult with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] before using cultural information of Te Uri o Hau;
 - (c) undertaking protection and conservation of wahi tapu and other sites of Maori significance in co-operation with tangata whenua;
 - (d) informing [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] if wheua tangata (human remains) are found; and
 - (e) assisting in recording and protecting wahi tapu and other places of cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau where appropriate, to ensure that they are not desecrated or damaged.

9 INDIGENOUS FLORA AND FAUNA

- 9.1 The Department's primary objective is to enhance population numbers and distributional ranges of threatened indigenous species and subspecies where recovery action will be effective. An important part of this work is to prioritise threatened species according to their degree of threat and/or significance. The Department has a ranking system that sets out the national priorities for the conservation of New Zealand's threatened plants and animals.
- 9.2 In relation to management of threatened indigenous species within the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, the Department will:
- (a) where a national recovery programme is being implemented within Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will be consulted and opportunities provided for [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to provide input into decision-making processes and ongoing work that is carried out;
 - (b) where research and monitoring projects are carried out, where it is reasonably practicable, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will be provided with opportunities to participate and to input into decision-making processes; and
 - (c) encourage and provide advice to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in the management or protection of threatened species on land owned by Te Uri o Hau.
- 9.3 Given the importance of the New Zealand Fairy Tern and its highly endangered status the Department will:
- (a) where research and monitoring projects within the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area are carried out, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will be provided with opportunities to participate and be involved in decision-making processes; and
 - (b) provide [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] with copies of the proceedings and publications of the relevant species recovery group for New Zealand Fairy Tern species.

10 MARINE MAMMALS

- 10.1 The Department administers the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Regulations 1992. These Acts provide for the establishment of marine mammal sanctuaries, for permits in respect of marine mammals, the disposal of sick or dead specimens and the prevention of marine mammal harassment. All species of marine mammal occurring within New Zealand, and New Zealand's fisheries waters are absolutely protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. Under that Act, the Department is responsible for the protection, conservation and management of all marine mammals.
- 10.2 The Department's role/responsibility at marine mammal stranding includes responsibility for the welfare of the stranded animals, the disposal of any dead marine mammals (including any part of a marine mammal), the health and safety of its staff and any volunteers under its control, and the public.
- 10.3 [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] will identify key contact people who will be available at short notice to make decisions on Te Uri o Hau desire to be involved/perform rituals consistent with Te Uri o Hau tikanga etc.
- 10.4 Prompt notification of all stranding events will be provided by the Department to the nominated Te Uri o Hau representatives.
- 10.5 If at any stage of a stranding the animal(s) is (are) in an obviously distressed condition, or it is clear that a refloating operation is unsuccessful, euthanasia will be required. The decision to euthanase is the responsibility of the Department's stranding control officer. The Department will make every effort to inform [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in advance of any decision to euthanase. If Te Uri o Hau representatives are not available at the time a decision is made to euthanase it will be the responsibility of the stranding control officer to make decisions in the best interest of the marine mammals and public safety.
- 10.6 Both [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department acknowledge the scientific importance of information gathered at a stranding. Decisions concerning the exact nature of the scientific samples required and the subsequent disposal of any dead animals, including their availability to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], will depend on the species.
- 10.7 Depending on the circumstances, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] may want to proceed with the recovery of bone following the collection of scientific data as outlined above, or be unavailable to participate, or wish to officiate only in the appropriate rituals prior to euthanasia.
- 10.8 Because the in-situ recovery of bones involves issues relating to public safety, including the risk of infection from dead and decaying tissue, it needs to be attempted only by the informed and skilled. Te Uri o Hau bone recovery teams will also want to ensure that the appropriate tikanga is understood and followed. However, both the Department and Te Uri o Hau acknowledge that in certain circumstances burial may be the most practical option.
- 10.9 As part of the disposal process, burial sites will be discussed and, where practical, agreed upon in advance by both the Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in order to meet all the health and safety requirements and to avoid the possible violation of wahi tapu (sacred sites).

11 RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT

- 11.1 Te Uri o Hau and the Department have mutual concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act. These include effects on:
- wetlands;
 - riparian management;

- freshwater fish habitat;
- water quality management;
- protection of historic resources; and
- protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

- 11.2 From time to time, [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department will seek to identify further issues of mutual interest. It is recognised that concerns in any particular resource management issue may diverge and that each of them will continue to make separate submissions.
- 11.3 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] at the Area Office level to discuss the general approach that will be taken by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern.
- 11.4 The Department will:
- (a) have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act; and
 - (b) make non-confidential resource information available to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to assist in improving their effectiveness in Resource Management Act advocacy work.

12 FRESHWATER FISHERIES

- 12.1 Freshwater fisheries are managed under two pieces of legislation; the Fisheries Act 1983 (administered by the Ministry of Fisheries) and the Conservation Act. The Conservation Act deals specifically with the conservation of non-commercial freshwater fisheries.
- 12.2 The Department will consult with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] and where reasonably practicable provide for its participation in the conservation and management (including research) of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats.
- 12.3 The Department will work at an Area Office level to provide for active participation by [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:
- (a) seeking to identify areas for co-operation in advocacy, consistent with the Resource Management Act section in this Protocol, focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats;
 - (b) consulting with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] where the Department is developing or contributing to research and monitoring programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements; and
 - (c) considering [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

13 PEST CONTROL

- 13.1 A key objective and function of the Department is to prevent, manage and control threats to natural, historic and cultural values from pests. This needs to be done in a way that maximises the value from limited resources available to do this work.

13.2 The Department will;

- (a) seek and facilitate early consultations with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] on pest control activities within Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, particularly in relation to the use of poisons; and
- (b) provide [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] with opportunities to review/assess programmes and outcomes.

14 VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

14.1 The Department has a role to share knowledge about natural and historic heritage with visitors, to satisfy their requirements for information, increase their enjoyment and understanding of this heritage, and develop an awareness of the need for its conservation. In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department needs to recognise the importance to Te Uri o Hau of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.

14.2 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] at the Area Office level to encourage respect for Te Uri o Hau values by:

- (a) seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars, consulting on the provision of interpretation and visitor facilities (if any) at wahi tapu, wahi taonga and other places of historic or cultural significance to Te Uri o Hau, subject to *clause 9.3* of this Protocol;
- (b) ensuring that Department information on new panels, signs, and visitor publications includes Te Uri o Hau perspectives and references to the significance of the sites to Te Uri o Hau where appropriate, including the use of traditional Te Uri o Hau place names;
- (c) encouraging Te Uri o Hau participation in the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes;
- (d) acknowledging Te Uri o Hau have requested participation in any waste management programmes undertaken by the Department; and
- (e) acknowledging [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity]'s interest in training and employment.

15 CONCESSION APPLICATIONS

15.1 The Department will work with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] to identify categories of concessions of concern to Te Uri o Hau.

15.2 In relation to the categories of concern identified by the Department and [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] the Department will:

- (a) inform [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity] of any applications or renewals of applications of in the area covered by this Protocol;
- (b) when a concession is publicly notified, the Department will at the same time provide separate written notification to [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity]; and
- (c) prior to issuing concessions to carry out activities on land managed by the Department within the Te Uri o Hau DOC Protocol Area, and following consultation with [Te Uri o Hau Governance Entity], the Department will ensure that the concessionaire is informed of Te Uri o Hau *tikanga* and values.

Appendix 14

Ngāti Manuhiri Claims Settlement Act 2012

The following document forms part of the schedules to the Deed of Settlement.

<p style="text-align: center;">A PROTOCOL ISSUED BY THE CROWN THROUGH THE MINISTER OF CONSERVATION AND THE DIRECTOR-GENERAL OF CONSERVATION ON SPECIFIED ISSUES</p>

PURPOSE OF PROTOCOL

- 1.1 This Protocol sets out how the Department of Conservation (the “Department”) and the trustees of the Ngāti Manuhiri Settlement Trust (“the Governance Entity”) will work together in fulfilling conservation objectives across the Ngāti Manuhiri area of interest. It is a framework to foster the development of a positive, collaborative and enduring relationship into the future between Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department of Conservation.
- 1.2 This Protocol forms part of the Ngāti Manuhiri – Crown Agreement in Principle, agreed by Cabinet on 17 December 2009. The terms of the Ngāti Manuhiri – Deed of Settlement applies to this Protocol and should be read as part of this Protocol.
- 1.3 This Protocol shall apply within the Ngāti Manuhiri rohe, referred to as the “Protocol Area” or “Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area”.

ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

Joint Objectives

- 1.4 Ngāti Manuhiri, the Minister and the Director-General are committed to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area, for present and future generations.
- 1.5 The Ngāti Manuhiri rohe is primarily contained within the Department of Conservation’s Auckland Conservancy Area.

Ngāti Manuhiri Manuhiritanga

- 1.6 Ngāti Manuhiri, as represented by the Governance Entity, describe their cultural, traditional and historic association with the land and waters, and indigenous flora and fauna within their rohe, as manuhiritanga. Manuhiritanga is “the practice and recognition of Ngāti Manuhiri tribal whakapapa, tikanga, kawa, lore and tinorangatiratanga that over arch all whenua, moana and taonga of Ngāti Manuhiri”.

Minister, Director-General and Department of Conservation

- 1.7 The Department administers 24 Acts and has functions under a number of other Acts. Its functions include managing “for conservation purposes, all land, and all other natural and historic resources” under the Conservation Legislation. This must be interpreted and administered so as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that those principles are consistent with the Conservation Legislation.

STRATEGIC COLLABORATION

- 1.8 As soon as is practicable after the signing of this Protocol the parties will meet to agree long-term strategic objectives for their relationship (“the strategic objectives for the partnership”).
- 1.9 Thereafter, the Governance Entity will meet with senior staff of the Department (including the Auckland Conservator, the Warkworth Great Barrier Island Area Manager and Pou Kura Taiao) within the Protocol Area at least once a year. At these meetings, the parties will determine whether meetings involving other senior managers of the Department and the Governance Entity are required on particular issues.
- 1.10 The Governance Entity and the Department undertake separate business planning processes prior to the beginning of each new financial year. These business planning processes determine Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department’s work priorities and commitments for the year. For the Department, business planning processes largely sit with Area Managers. The parties will meet at an early stage in their annual business planning processes to discuss timeframes for the development of annual work programmes, and to identify potential projects to be undertaken together or separately which are consistent with the strategic objectives for the relationship.
- 1.11 If a specific project is undertaken, the Department and the Governance Entity will determine the nature of their collaboration on that project which may include finalising a work plan for that project. If a specific project is not undertaken, the parties will advise one another of the reason(s) for this.
- 1.12 As part of annual discussions, and as part of ongoing dialogue, the parties will advise each other of:
- a) any significant changes that have occurred or are proposed (including structural, legislative, policy or administrative changes) regarding how either party is working in the Protocol Area; and
 - b) potential opportunities for applying for funding for conservation purposes from external sources (either jointly or individually with the support of the other party).
- 1.13 Each year, the parties will provide a letter or similar form of written advice to the other that describes the work that party has carried out in that financial year to achieve the strategic objectives for the relationship.

Planning documents

- 1.14 The Department and the Governance Entity will meet to identify and seek to address issues affecting Ngāti Manuhiri at an early stage (before public consultation, if any, and throughout the process) in the preparation, review or amendment of any Statutory Planning Document within the Protocol Area.

FRESHWATER FISHERIES

- 1.15 Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department share aspirations for conservation of freshwater fisheries within the Protocol Area. Freshwater fisheries will be a key focus in the strategic objectives for the relationship.
- 1.16 The Department’s statutory functions include the preservation, as far as practicable, of all indigenous freshwater fisheries, and the protection of recreational freshwater fisheries and their habitats. The Department is responsible for the regulation of whitebait fishing under the Whitebait Regulations. Its work also focuses on fisheries and habitats that are located on public conservation land, species under recovery plans, and biosecurity issues. In all other areas, advocacy for the conservation of freshwater fisheries is undertaken primarily through Resource Management Act processes.
- 1.17 The parties will co-operate in the conservation of freshwater fisheries and freshwater habitats. Establishing these aims in the strategic objectives for the relationship will ensure that actions towards these are integrated into the annual business planning process. These actions may include: areas for co-operation in the protection, restoration and enhancement of riparian vegetation and habitats (including marginal strips); and the development or implementation of research and monitoring programmes.

STATUTORY AUTHORISATIONS

- 1.18 The strategic objectives for the relationship will guide the parties to determine appropriate engagement on Statutory Authorisations within the Protocol Area.
- 1.19 As part of these strategic objectives, the Governance Entity and the Department will identify categories of statutory authorisations that may impact on the cultural, traditional and/or historic values of Ngāti Manuhiri. These categories will be reviewed as agreed. The Department will advise and encourage all prospective applicants within the Protocol Area to consult with the Governance Entity before filing their application. The Department will also consult the Governance Entity at an early stage on such categories of authorisations or renewal of authorisations within the Protocol Area.
- 1.20 The Department will consult with the Governance Entity and have regard to its views for Statutory Authorisations for Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island.
- 1.21 For the types of statutory authorisations that Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department agree have potential significance the Department and the Governance Entity see the benefit of seeking agreement, in a timely manner, on an appropriate response to the application, before the decision is made under the relevant legislation.
- 1.22 As the Department works within time limits to process concession applications, it will notify the Governance Entity (as part of the meetings referred to in paragraph 4.2) of the time frames for providing advice.
- 1.23 It is expected that the strategic objectives for the relationship will guide the parties to determine potential opportunities for Ngāti Manuhiri to obtain statutory authorisations on public conservation land within the Protocol Area, including concessions for cultural tours.

STATUTORY LAND MANAGEMENT

- 1.24 The strategic objectives for the relationship will guide the parties' engagement on statutory land management activities within the Protocol Area. Ngāti Manuhiri has an ongoing interest in the range of statutory land management activities that are occurring within the Protocol Area.
- 1.25 From time to time, the Department and the Governance Entity will identify the categories of statutory land management activities that have potential to affect Ngāti Manuhiri sites of significance, and where consultation is appropriate. This includes when: the Minister is considering vestings or management appointments for reserves held under the Reserves Act 1977; other management arrangements with third parties; changing reserve classifications; or disposing of reserves.
- 1.26 Before vesting or making an appointment to control and manage a reserve under the Reserves Act for a Ngāti Manuhiri site of significance, the Department will discuss with the Governance Entity whether Ngāti Manuhiri wishes to be given such a vesting or appointment subject to agreed conditions (if any).

CULTURAL MATTERS

- 1.27 The Department will facilitate, in accordance with legislative requirements, Ngāti Manuhiri access to cultural materials and will consider potential impacts on Ngāti Manuhiri where cultural materials are requested by other persons.
- 1.28 Ngāti Manuhiri will develop a Cultural Materials Plan regarding the access, restoration, enhancement and use of taonga cultural materials. Ngāti Manuhiri will work collaboratively with the Department on this, subject to the Department's available resources. Discussions on the plan may include:
- a) identification of cultural materials, their current state, and desired conservation outcomes within the Protocol Area;
 - b) streamlined authorisations process for iwi members to gather cultural materials (within existing legislation). This may include multi-site and multi-take permits to the Governance Entity, which may in turn enable the Governance Entity to authorise its own members to take and use flora materials within the Protocol Area for cultural purposes in accordance with the permit issued to the Governance Entity;

- c) processes for consultation when there are requests from other persons or entities to take cultural materials;
- d) opportunities to plant and harvest cultural materials on public conservation land;
- e) waiver or reduction of recovery of authorisation costs for cultural materials applications; and
- f) opportunities for the Department and Ngāti Manuhiri to work collaboratively on cultural materials enhancement within the Protocol Area (including knowledge transfer, education, wānanga, and preservation techniques).

SITES OF SIGNIFICANCE

- 1.29 Both parties recognise that there are wāhi tapu and sites of significance to Ngāti Manuhiri on lands managed under Conservation Legislation.
- 1.30 Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department share aspirations for protecting wāhi tapu, sites of significance and other historic places. The parties will work together and endeavour to conserve, in accordance with best practices, sites of significance in areas managed under Conservation Legislation within the Protocol Area. This will be done according to Ngāti Manuhiri tikanga and professional standards for conservation of historic places.
- 1.31 The parties will develop a process for advising one another of sites of significance and wāhi tapu. Information relating to Ngāti Manuhiri sites of significance will be treated in confidence by the Department in order to preserve the wāhi tapu nature of places, unless otherwise agreed by the Trust.
- 1.32 The parties will consult each other in relation to recommendations for public conservation lands containing sites of significance that are to be named in the Protocol Area.

SPECIES AND HABITAT PROTECTION (INCLUDING NATIONAL PROGRAMMES AND PEST CONTROL)

- 1.33 The parties share aspirations of protecting ecosystems and indigenous flora and fauna within the Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area. These aspirations will be reflected in the strategic objectives for the relationship.
- 1.34 The Department aims to conserve the full range of New Zealand's ecosystems, maintain or restore the ecological integrity of managed sites, and ensure the survival of threatened species, in particular those most at risk of extinction. This work involves a number of national programmes.
- 1.35 As part of annual discussions the Department will update the Governance Entity of any national sites and species programmes operating in the Protocol Area and will discuss with the Governance Entity how Ngāti Manuhiri wish to be involved in these programmes, particularly where they will progress the strategic objectives for the relationship. The Department and the Governance Entity will also discuss opportunities and processes for collaboration with one another on other field projects of mutual interest.
- 1.36 Preventing, managing and controlling threats to natural, historic and cultural values from animal and weed pests is an integral part of protecting the unique biodiversity of New Zealand. This is done in a way that maximises the value from limited resources available to do this work.
- 1.37 It is envisaged that the strategic objectives for the relationship will determine the strategic outcomes sought from pest control programmes within the Protocol Area, including: monitoring and assessment of programmes; the use of poisons; and co-ordination of pest control where Ngāti Manuhiri is the adjoining landowner. Through the annual business planning process, the parties will create actions to progress these strategic objectives.

VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

- 1.38 Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department wish to share knowledge about natural and historic heritage within the Protocol Area with visitors and the general public. This is important to increase enjoyment and understanding of this heritage, and to develop awareness of the need for its conservation.

- 1.39 The parties will encourage respect for and awareness of conservation in, and the Ngāti Manuhiri relationship with, the Protocol Area, including by:
- a) raising public awareness of positive conservation relationships developed between the parties;
 - b) engaging with each other in the development of visitor and public information published by either party that relates to Ngāti Manuhiri values in land and resources managed under Conservation Legislation, particularly where that information relates to Ngāti Manuhiri sites of significance and aspirations to the land; and
 - c) the Department obtaining the consent of the Governance Entity for the disclosure of information received from the Governance Entity relating to Ngāti Manuhiri values.

CONSERVATION ADVOCACY

1.40 From time to time, Ngāti Manuhiri and the Department will each have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act 1991 and other legislation. The Department's advocacy role includes matters of concern to it under the Resource Management Act.

1.41 The Governance Entity and the Department will seek to identify issues of mutual interest and/or concern ahead of each party making submissions in relevant processes.

CROSS-ORGANISATIONAL OPPORTUNITIES

1.42 As part of the annual business planning process, the parties will discuss:

- a) opportunities and processes to share scientific and cultural resource and information, including data and research material (including to assist Ngāti Manuhiri to exercise their role under the Deed and as kaitiaki);
- b) opportunities for developing mutual understanding and developing relationships, with respect to conservation, environmental and cultural matters within the Protocol Area. Options may include wānanga, education, training, development and secondments;
- c) opportunities to be involved or to nominate individuals to take part in relevant training initiatives run by both parties, including cadetships and/or biosecurity accreditation for Te Hauturu-o-Toi / Little Barrier Island;
- d) potential opportunities for full time positions, holiday employment or student research projects which may arise within the Protocol Area. Ngāti Manuhiri may propose candidates for these roles or opportunities; and
- e) staff changes and key contacts in each organisation.

1.43 Where appropriate, the Department will consider using Ngāti Manuhiri individuals or entities as providers of professional services (such as oral history and interpretation projects). In doing so, the Department recognises the affect that this may have on mana whakahaere of Ngāti Manuhiri. Normal conflict of interest processes will be implemented to avoid a perceived or actual conflict of interest.

DISPUTE RESOLUTION

- 1.44 If a dispute arises in connection with this Protocol, every effort will be made in good faith to resolve matters at a local level. This may require the Department's Warkworth Great Barrier Island Area Manager to meet with a representative of the Governance Entity within a reasonable timeframe to endeavour to find a resolution to the matter.
- 1.45 If this process is not successful, the matter may be escalated to a meeting of the Department's Auckland Conservator and a nominated representative of the Governance Entity who will meet within a reasonable timeframe.
- 1.46 If a negotiated outcome cannot be reached from this process, the parties may agree for the issue to be escalated to a meeting between the Director-General (or nominee) and the Chief Executive of the Governance Entity.
- 1.47 If the Department and the Governance Entity agree that the matter is of such significance that it requires the attention of the chair of the Governance Entity and the Minister, then this matter will be escalated to a meeting of the chair of the Governance Entity and the Minister (or their nominees). The parties acknowledge this measure will be a means of last resort.

REVIEW AND AMENDMENT

- 1.48 The parties agree that this Protocol is a living document that should be updated and adapted to take account of future developments and additional co-management opportunities. If requested by either party, the first review of this Protocol will take place no later than three years after the date this Protocol is signed, and if requested by either party will be reviewed every three years thereafter.
- 1.49 The parties may only vary this Protocol by agreement in writing.

DEFINITIONS

- 1.50 In this document:

Conservation Legislation means the Conservation Act 1987 and the statutes in the First Schedule of the Act;

Crown has the meaning given to it in section 2(1) of the Public Finance Act 1989;

Cultural materials means plants, plant materials, and materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds for which the Department is responsible within the Ngāti Manuhiri rohe and which are important to Ngāti Manuhiri in maintaining and expressing their cultural values and practices;

Department means the Minister of Conservation, the Director-General and the Departmental managers to whom the Minister of Conservation's and the Director-General's decision-making powers can be delegated;

Kaitiaki means guardian in accordance with tikanga Māori;

Ngāti Manuhiri has the meaning set out in the Deed of Settlement;

Ngāti Manuhiri Protocol Area or **Protocol Area** means the area identified in the map included in the Attachment of this Protocol.

Statutory Authorisations means an authorisation granted under the Conservation Legislation including a Concession granted under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987;

Statutory Planning Document includes any relevant Conservation Management Strategy or Conservation Management Plan under the Conservation Act 1987;

Tikanga Māori refers to Māori traditional customs.

SCHEDULE 1

SUMMARY OF TERMS OF ISSUE

This Conservation Protocol is issued subject to the provisions of the deed of settlement and the Settlement Legislation. A summary of the relevant provisions is set out below.

1. AMENDMENT AND CANCELLATION

1.1 The Minister may amend or cancel this Protocol, but only after consulting with Ngāti Manuhiri and having particular regard for its views (section 20).

2. NOTING

2.1 A summary of the terms of this Protocol must be noted in the Conservation Documents affecting the Protocol Area, but the noting:

2.1.1 is for the purpose of public notice; and

2.1.2 does not amend the Conservation Documents for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987 or the National Parks Act 1980 (section 24).

3. LIMITS

3.1 This Protocol does not:

3.1.1 restrict the Crown from exercising its powers and performing its functions and duties, in accordance with the law and government policy, including:

(a) introducing legislation; or

(b) changing government policy; or

(c) issuing a Protocol to, or interacting or consulting with, anyone the Crown considers appropriate including any iwi, hapu, marae, whanau or representatives of tangata whenua (section 21);

3.1.2 restrict the responsibilities of the Minister or the Department or the legal rights of Ngāti Manuhiri (section 21); or

3.1.3 grant, create or provide evidence of an estate or interest in, or rights relating to:

(a) land held, managed or administered under Conservation Legislation; or

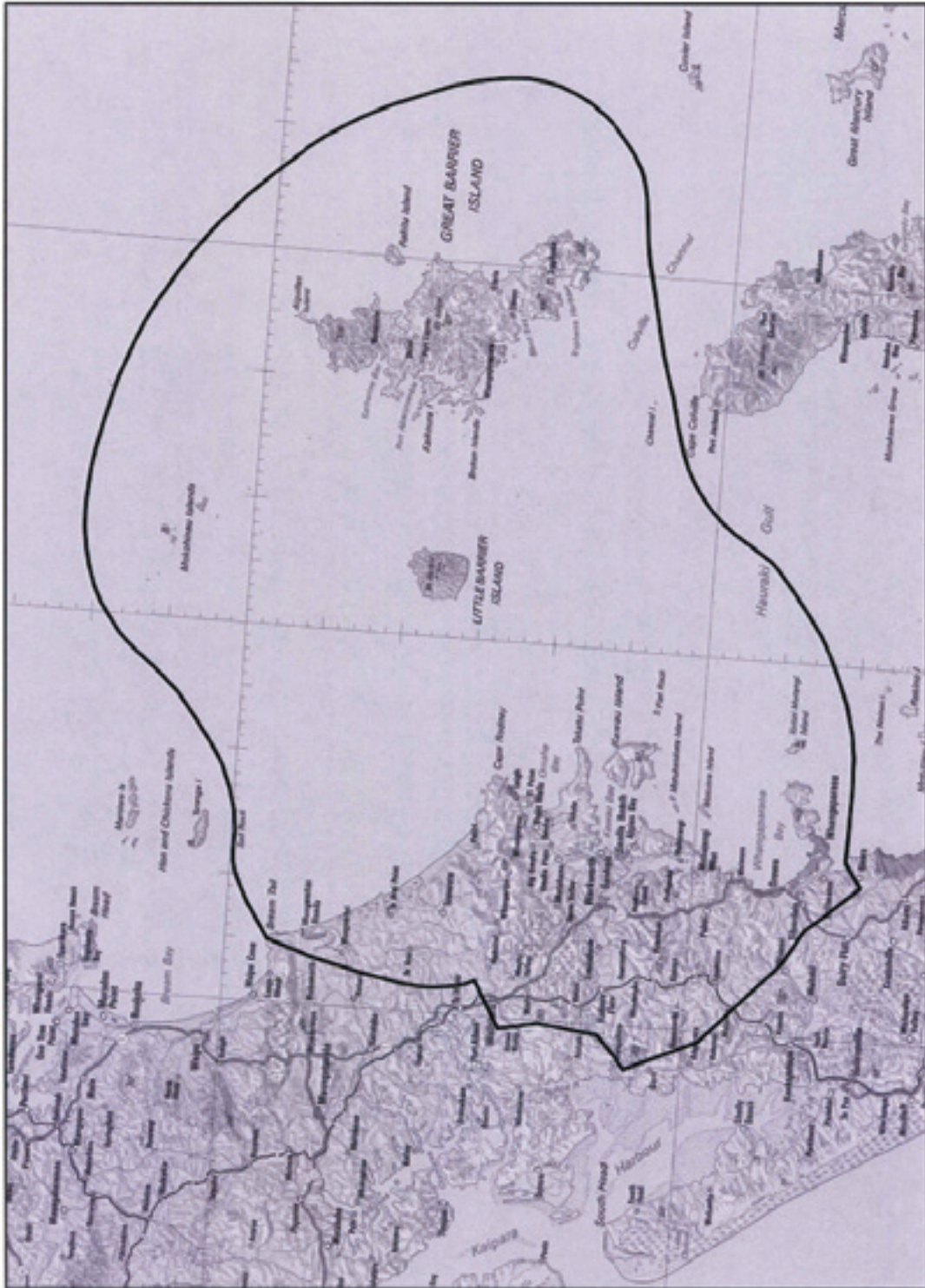
(b) flora or fauna managed or administered under the Conservation Legislation (section 23).

4. BREACH

4.1 Subject to the Crown Proceedings Act 1950, Ngāti Manuhiri may enforce the Protocol if the Crown breaches it without good cause, but damages or monetary compensation will not be awarded (section 22).

4.2 A breach of this Protocol is not a breach of the Deed of Settlement.

ATTACHMENT 1
DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION PROTOCOL AREA MAP



Appendix 15

Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei Claims Settlement Act 2012

The following document forms part of the schedules to the Deed of Settlement

Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei Conservation Protocol

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

A PROTOCOL ISSUED BY THE CROWN THROUGH THE MINISTER OF CONSERVATION REGARDING DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION INTERACTION WITH NGĀTI WHĀTUA ŌRĀKEI ON SPECIFIED ISSUES

1. INTRODUCTION

- 1.1 Under the Deed of Settlement dated [] between Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei and the Crown, the Crown, through the Minister of Conservation, agreed to issue a Protocol setting out how the Department of Conservation (“the Department”) will interact with the Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei governance entity on specified issues.
- 1.2 Both the Department and Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei are committed to establishing and maintaining a positive and collaborative relationship that gives effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi as provided for in section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987. Those principles provide the basis for the ongoing relationship between the parties to the Protocol to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both the governance entity and the Department, as set out in this Protocol.
- 1.3 The purpose of the Conservation Act 1987 is to enable the Department to manage natural and historic resources under that Act and to administer the Acts in the First Schedule to the Act. The Minister and Director-General are required to exercise particular functions, powers and duties under that legislation.

2. PURPOSE OF THE PROTOCOL

- 2.1 The purpose of this Protocol is to assist the Department and Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei to exercise their respective responsibilities with the utmost co-operation to achieve over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both.
- 2.2 The Protocol sets out a framework that enables the Department and Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei to establish a healthy and constructive working relationship that is consistent with section 4 of the Conservation Act. It provides for Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei to have meaningful input into certain policy, planning and decision-making processes, management of conservation lands and fulfilment of statutory responsibilities within the Protocol Area.

3. PROTOCOL AREA

- 3.1 This Protocol applies across the Protocol Area which means the area identified in the map included in Attachment A of this Protocol.

4. TERMS OF ISSUE

- 4.1 This Protocol is issued pursuant to section 22 of the Ngāti Whātua o Orakei Claims Settlement Act [20--] and clause 5.3 of the Deed of Settlement. A summary of the provisions of the Settlement Legislation and the Deed of Settlement specifying the terms on which this Protocol is issued is set out in Attachment B of the Protocol.

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

5. IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

- 5.1 The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei on a continuing basis by:
- 5.1.1 Maintaining information on the governance entity's office holders, and their addresses and contact details;
 - 5.1.2 Providing a primary departmental contact for the governance entity being the Area Manager who will act as a liaison person with other departmental staff;
 - 5.1.3 Providing reasonable opportunities for the governance entity to meet with Departmental managers and staff;
 - 5.1.4 Holding alternate meetings at the Area Office and a Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei marae or other venue chosen by the governance entity to review implementation of the Protocol every six months, unless otherwise agreed. Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei may, when such meetings are held at a Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei marae or other venue chosen by the governance entity, arrange for an annual report back to the Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei people at such meetings; and
 - 5.1.5 Training relevant staff on the content of the Protocol and briefing the Auckland Conservation Board members on the content of the Protocol.
- 5.2 Within the first year of this Protocol being issued, and on a continuing basis, the Department and the governance entity will identify practical ways in which:
- 5.2.1 Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei can exercise kaitiakitanga over ancestral lands, natural and historic resources and other taonga managed by the Department;
 - 5.2.2 The Department can manage wahi tapu, and taonga tapu and other places of historic or cultural significance to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei in a manner which respects Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei tikanga and values;
 - 5.2.3 The Department can acknowledge the governance entity's interest in training and employment opportunities with the Department and the governance entity's role as a trainer for the Department; and
 - 5.2.4 Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei can actively participate in conservation management and activities including the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes.

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION**6. SPECIFIC PROJECTS**

- 6.1 The Department and the governance entity will on an annual basis identify priorities for undertaking specific projects requested by the governance entity. The identified priorities for the upcoming business year will be taken forward by the Department into its business planning process and considered along with other priorities.
- 6.2 The decision on whether any specific projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator and Deputy Director-General, after following the co-operative processes set out above.
- 6.3 If the Department decides to proceed with a specific project requested by the governance entity, the governance entity and Department will meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan and timetable for implementation of the specific projects in that business plan.
- 6.4 If the Department decides not to proceed with a specific project requested by the governance entity, the Department will advise the governance entity of the reason(s) for this.

7. CULTURAL MATERIALS

- 7.1 Cultural materials for the purpose of this Protocol are plants, plant materials, and materials derived from animals or birds for which the Department is responsible in the Protocol Area. Some of these materials are of importance to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei in maintaining its culture, including medicinal practices, toi mahi and gathering of mahinga kai in accordance with Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei tikanga.
- 7.2 Current legislation means that generally some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering and possession of cultural materials.
- 7.3 The Minister and/or Director General will:
- 7.3.1 Consider requests from the governance entity for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the relevant legislation;
 - 7.3.2 Agree, where appropriate, for the governance entity to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance, or where materials become available as a result of road kill; and
 - 7.3.3 Consult with the governance entity in circumstances where there are competing requests from persons or entities other than Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes.
- 7.4 The Department will work with the governance entity to develop procedures for monitoring sustainable levels and methods of use of cultural materials in accordance with the relevant legislation.

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

8. HISTORIC RESOURCES / WAHI TAPU

- 8.1 Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei consider that Te Tiriti o Waitangi / the Treaty of Waitangi covered wahi tapu, including urupa, wahi taonga, and other places of historic significance as taonga (priceless treasures) for all the hapu and iwi of Aotearoa. The Department will respect the great significance of these taonga by fulfilling the obligations contained in this section of the Protocol.
- 8.2 The Department has a statutory role to conserve historic resources in protected areas and will endeavour to do this for sites of significance to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei in association with the governance entity and according to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei tikanga.
- 8.3 The Department accepts that non-disclosure of locations of places known to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei may be an option that the governance entity chooses to take to preserve the wahi tapu nature of places. The responsibility for identifying and assessing Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei heritage values rests largely with Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei. There may be situations where the governance entity will ask the Department to treat information it provides on wahi tapu in a confidential way. The Department and the governance entity will work together to establish processes for dealing with information on wahi tapu sites in a way that recognises both the management challenges that confidentiality can present and respects the views of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei.
- 8.4 To assist in this process, the governance entity will notify the Area Manager of any concerns with the Department's management of wahi tapu areas and the Department will take all reasonable steps to address the situation.
- 8.5 The Department will work with the governance entity at the Area Office level to respect Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei values attached to identified wahi tapu, wahi taonga and places of historic significance on lands administered by the Department by:
- 8.5.1 Managing sites of historic significance to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei according to standards of conservation practice which care for places of cultural heritage value, their structures, materials and cultural meaning, as outlined in the International Council on Monuments and Sites (ICOMOS) New Zealand Charter 1993;
 - 8.5.2 Undertaking protection and conservation of wahi tapu and other sites of significance in co-operation with Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei;
 - 8.5.3 Consulting with the governance entity before any work is carried out by a party other than the Department or the governance entity (eg a community restoration trust) on land administered by the Department;
 - 8.5.4 Ensuring as far as possible that when another entity (e.g. community trust) is undertaking work on land managed by the Department the work undertaken is consistent with the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993;
 - 8.5.5 Informing the governance entity if wheua tangata are found; and
 - 8.5.6 Assisting in recording and protecting wahi tapu and other places of cultural significance to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei where appropriate, to ensure that they are not desecrated or damaged.

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

9. INDIGENOUS FLORA AND FAUNA

- 9.1 One of the Department's primary objectives is to ensure the survival of species and their genetic diversity. An important part of this work is to prioritise recovery actions in relation to the degree of threat to a species. The Department prioritises recovery actions at both a national and local level.
- 9.2 In recognition of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei's cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association with indigenous flora and fauna occurring naturally within the Protocol Area for which the Department has responsibility, the Department will in relation to any of those species that Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei may identify as important to them through the processes provided under clauses 5 and 6:
- 9.2.1 Where a national recovery programme is being implemented within the Protocol Area, inform and, where it is practicable to do so, provide opportunities for the governance entity to participate in that programme;
- 9.2.2 Provide opportunities for the governance entity to input into any Conservation Management Strategy reviews, or the preparation of any statutory or non-statutory plans, policies or documents that relate to the management of those species within the Protocol Area;
- 9.2.3 Inform the governance entity before commencing any research and monitoring projects being carried out by the Department within the Protocol Area, and, where reasonably practicable, provide opportunities for the governance entity to participate in those projects.
- 9.2.4 Advise the governance entity of the receipt of any research reports relating to indigenous species within the Protocol Area, and provide copies or the opportunity for the governance entity to study those reports.

10. MARINE MAMMALS

- 10.1 The Department administers the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978 and the Marine Mammals Regulations 1992. These provide for the establishment of marine mammal sanctuaries, for permits in respect of marine mammals, the disposal of sick or dead specimens and the prevention of marine mammal harassment. All species of marine mammal occurring within New Zealand and New Zealand's fisheries waters are absolutely protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. Under that Act the Department is responsible for the protection, conservation and management of all marine mammals, including their disposal and the health and safety of its staff and any volunteers under its control, and the public.
- 10.2 The Department believes that there are opportunities to meet the cultural interests of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei and to facilitate the gathering of scientific information. This Protocol is intended to meet both needs by way of a co-operative approach to the management of whale strandings and to provide general guidelines for the management of whale strandings in the Protocol Area, and for the recovery by Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei of bone and other material for cultural purposes from dead marine mammals.
- 10.3 In achieving these objectives, the Protocol also aims to enable the Department to give effect to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi / the Treaty of Waitangi as expressed in section 4 of

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

the Conservation Act as well as assisting the conservation of cetacean species by contribution to the collection of specimens and scientific data of national and international importance.

- 10.4 There may be circumstances during a stranding in which euthanasia is required, for example if the animal is obviously distressed or if it is clear that a refloating operation is unsuccessful. The decision to euthanase is the responsibility of the Department's stranding control officer. The Department will make every effort to inform the governance entity before any decision to euthanase. If Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei representatives are not available at the time a decision is made to euthanase, it will be the responsibility of the stranding control officer to make decisions in the best interests of the marine mammals and public safety.
- 10.5 Both the Department and Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei acknowledge the scientific importance of information gathered at strandings. Decisions concerning the exact nature of the scientific samples required and the subsequent disposal of any dead animals, including their availability to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei, will depend on the species.
- 10.6 The following species ("category 1 species") are known to strand most frequently on New Zealand shores. In principle these species should be available to the governance entity for the recovery of bone once scientific data and samples have been collected. If there are reasons why this principle should not be followed, they must be discussed between the parties to this Protocol. Category 1 species are:
- 10.6.1 Common dolphins (*Delphinus delphis*)
 - 10.6.2 Long-finned pilot whales (*Globicephala melas*)
 - 10.6.3 Sperm whales (*Physeter macrocephalus*).
- 10.7 The following species ("category 2 species") are either not commonly encountered in New Zealand waters, or may frequently strand here but are rare elsewhere in the world. For these reasons their scientific value has first priority. In most instances, bone from category 2 species will be made available to the governance entity after autopsy if requested.
- 10.7.1 All baleen whales
 - 10.7.2 Short-finned pilot whale (*Globicephala macrorhynchus*)
 - 10.7.3 Beaked whales (all species, family Ziphiidae)
 - 10.7.4 Pygmy sperm whale (*Kogia breviceps*)
 - 10.7.5 Dwarf sperm whale (*Kogia simus*)
 - 10.7.6 Bottlenose dolphin (*Tursiops truncatus*)
 - 10.7.7 Maui's dolphin (*Cephalorhynchus hectori maui*)
 - 10.7.8 Dusky dolphin (*Lagenorhynchus obscurus*)

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

- 10.7.9 Risso's dolphin (*Grampus griseus*)
 - 10.7.10 Spotted dolphin (*Stenella attenuata*)
 - 10.7.11 Striped dolphin (*Stenella coeruleoalba*)
 - 10.7.12 Rough-toothed dolphin (*Steno bredanensis*)
 - 10.7.13 Southern right whale dolphin (*Lissodelphis peronii*)
 - 10.7.14 Spectacled porpoise (*Australophocoena dioptrica*)
 - 10.7.15 Melon-headed whale (*Peponocephala electra*)
 - 10.7.16 Pygmy killer whale (*Feresa attenuata*)
 - 10.7.17 False killer whale (*Pseudorca crassidens*)
 - 10.7.18 Killer whale (*Orcinus orca*)
 - 10.7.19 Any other species of cetacean previously unknown in New Zealand waters.
- 10.8 If Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei does not wish to recover the bone or otherwise participate the governance entity will notify the Department whereupon the Department will take responsibility for disposing of the carcass.
- 10.9 Because the in-situ recovery of bones involves issues relating to public safety, including the risk of infection from dead and decaying tissue, it needs to be attempted only by the informed and skilled. Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei bone recovery teams will also want to ensure that the appropriate cultural tikanga is understood and followed. However, both parties acknowledge that generally burial will be the most practical option.
- 10.10 Subject to the prior agreement of the Conservator, where disposal of a dead stranded marine mammal is carried out by the governance entity, the Department will meet the reasonable costs incurred up to the estimated costs that would otherwise have been incurred by the Department to carry out the disposal.
- 10.11 The Department will:
- 10.11.1 Reach agreement with the governance entity on authorised key contact people who will be available at short notice to make decisions on the desire of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei to be involved when there is a marine mammal stranding;
 - 10.11.2 Promptly notify the key contact people of all stranding events;
 - 10.11.3 Discuss, as part of the disposal process, burial sites and, where practical, agree sites in advance which are to be used for disposing of carcasses in order to meet all the health and safety requirements and to avoid the possible violation of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei tikanga; and

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

10.11.4 Consult with the governance entity should the Department wish to prepare plans for research and monitoring of the seal population within the Protocol Area.

10.12 In areas of over-lapping interest, Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei, will work with the Department and the relevant iwi to agree on a process to be followed when managing marine mammal strandings.

11. RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991

11.1 Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei and the Department both have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act 1991. Areas of common interest may include riparian management, effects on freshwater fish habitat, water quality management, and protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

11.2 From time to time, the governance entity and the Department will seek to identify further issues of likely mutual interest for discussion. It is recognised that their concerns in any particular resource management issue may diverge and that the Department and the governance entity will continue to make separate submissions in any Resource Management Act processes.

11.3 In carrying out advocacy under the Resource Management Act the Department will:

11.3.1 Discuss with the governance entity the general approach that may be taken by Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern;

11.3.2 Have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act; and

11.3.3 Make non-confidential resource information available to the governance entity to assist in improving their effectiveness in resource management advocacy work.

12. FRESHWATER FISHERIES

12.1 Freshwater Fisheries are managed under two sets of legislation: The Fisheries Act 1983 and 1996 (administered by the Ministry of Fisheries) and the Conservation Act 1987. The Conservation Act deals specifically with the conservation of non-commercial freshwater fisheries and habitat. The whitebait fishery is administered under the Whitebait Fishing Regulations 1994, made under the Conservation Act 1987.

12.2 The Department and the governance entity will work together to ensure that the Department is aware of relevant tikanga relating to freshwater fisheries.

12.3 The Department will work at an Area Office level to provide for active participation by the governance entity in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:

12.3.1 Seeking to identify areas for co-operation focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats;

12.3.2 Consulting with the governance entity where the Department is developing or contributing to research and monitoring programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements; and

12.3.3 Considering the governance entity as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

13. PEST CONTROL

13.1 A key objective of and function of the Department is to prevent, manage or control threats to natural, historic and cultural values from pests. This needs to be done in a way that maximises the value from limited resources available to do this work.

13.2 The Department will:

13.2.1 Seek and facilitate early consultations with the governance entity on pest control activities within the Protocol Area, particularly in relation to the use of poisons; and

13.2.2 Provide the governance entity with opportunities to review and assess programmes and outcomes.

14. VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

14.1 The Department has a role to share knowledge about natural and historic heritage with visitors to satisfy their requirements for information, increase their enjoyment and understanding of this heritage, and develop an awareness of the need for its conservation. In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department will recognise the importance to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei of their cultural, traditional and historic values and the association of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei with the land the Department administers within the Protocol Area.

14.2 The Department will work with the governance entity at the Area Office level to encourage respect for Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei values by:

14.2.1 Seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between the governance entity, the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars;

14.2.2 Consulting on the provision of interpretation and visitor facilities (if any) at wahi tapu, wahi taonga and other places of historic or cultural significance to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei within the Protocol Area; and

14.2.3 Ensuring that information on new panels, signs and visitor publications includes Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei perspectives and references to the significance of the sites to Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei where appropriate, including the use of traditional Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei place names.

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

15. CONCESSION APPLICATIONS

- 15.1 The Department will work with the governance entity to identify categories of concessions that may impact on the cultural, spiritual or historical values of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei.
- 15.2 In relation to the concession applications within the categories identified under clause 15.1, the Minister will:
- 15.2.1 Consult with the governance entity with regard to any applications or renewals of applications within the Protocol Area;
 - 15.2.2 When a concession is publicly notified, the Department will at the same time provide separate written notification to the governance entity;
 - 15.2.3 Prior to issuing concessions to carry out activities on land managed by the Department within the Protocol Area, and following consultation with the governance entity, the Minister will advise the concessionaire of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei tikanga and values and encourage communication between the concessionaire and the governance entity if appropriate; and
 - 15.2.4 Ensure as far as possible when issuing and renewing concessions that give authority for other parties to manage land administered by the Department, that those parties:
 - (a) Be required to manage the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993; and
 - (b) Be encouraged to consult with the governance entity before using cultural information of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei.

16. APPOINTMENTS TO BOARDS

- 16.1 The Department will recommend that the Minister consult the governance entity when carrying out consultation with tangata whenua for the purpose of appointing tangata whenua members to the Hauraki Gulf Forum under s 16(2)(e) of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000.
- 16.2 The Department will notify the governance entity when nominations are invited for appointments to the Auckland Conservation Board, and will provide the governance entity with any information or material that will assist in making a nomination or nominations.

17. CONSULTATION

- 17.1 Where the Department is required to consult under this Protocol, the basic principles that will be followed by the Department in consulting with the governance entity in each case are:
- 17.1.1 Ensuring that the governance entity is consulted as soon as reasonably practicable following the identification and determination by the Department of the proposal or issues to be the subject of the consultation;

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

- 17.1.2 Providing the governance entity with sufficient information to make informed discussions and submissions in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation;
- 17.1.3 Ensuring that sufficient time is given for the effective participation of the governance entity in the decision making process and the preparation of submissions by the governance entity in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation;
- 17.1.4 Ensuring that the Department will approach the consultation with the governance entity with an open mind, and will genuinely consider any concerns that the governance entity may have in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation.

18. REVIEW

- 18.1 The parties agree that this Protocol is a living document which should be updated and adapted to take account of future developments. The first review of this Protocol will take place 12 months after the Tāmaki Makaurau Collective deed comes into effect in respect of any amendments to this Protocol that are necessary or appropriate in light of the Collective relationship document with the Department, which Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei will be part of. If requested by either party the Protocol will be reviewed every three years thereafter.
- 18.2 The parties may only vary this Protocol pursuant to clause 18.1 by agreement in writing.

19. DEFINITIONS

In this Protocol:

Concession means a lease, license permit or easement granted under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987;

Conservation Management Strategy has the same meaning as in the Conservation Act 1987;

Crown means the Sovereign in right of New Zealand and includes, where appropriate, the Ministers and Departments of the Crown that are involved in, or bound by the terms of the Deed of Settlement to participate in, any aspect of the redress under the Deed of Settlement;

Department means the Minister of Conservation, the Director-General and the Departmental managers to whom the Minister of Conservation's and the Director-General's decision-making powers can be delegated;

governance entity means Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei Trustee Limited as trustee of the Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei Trust;

Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei has the meaning set out in clauses 8.5 and 8.6 of the Deed of Settlement;

Kaitiakitanga means guardianship in accordance with tikanga;

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

SIGNED for and on behalf of
THE SOVEREIGN
in right of New Zealand by
the Minister of Conservation

WITNESS

Name _____

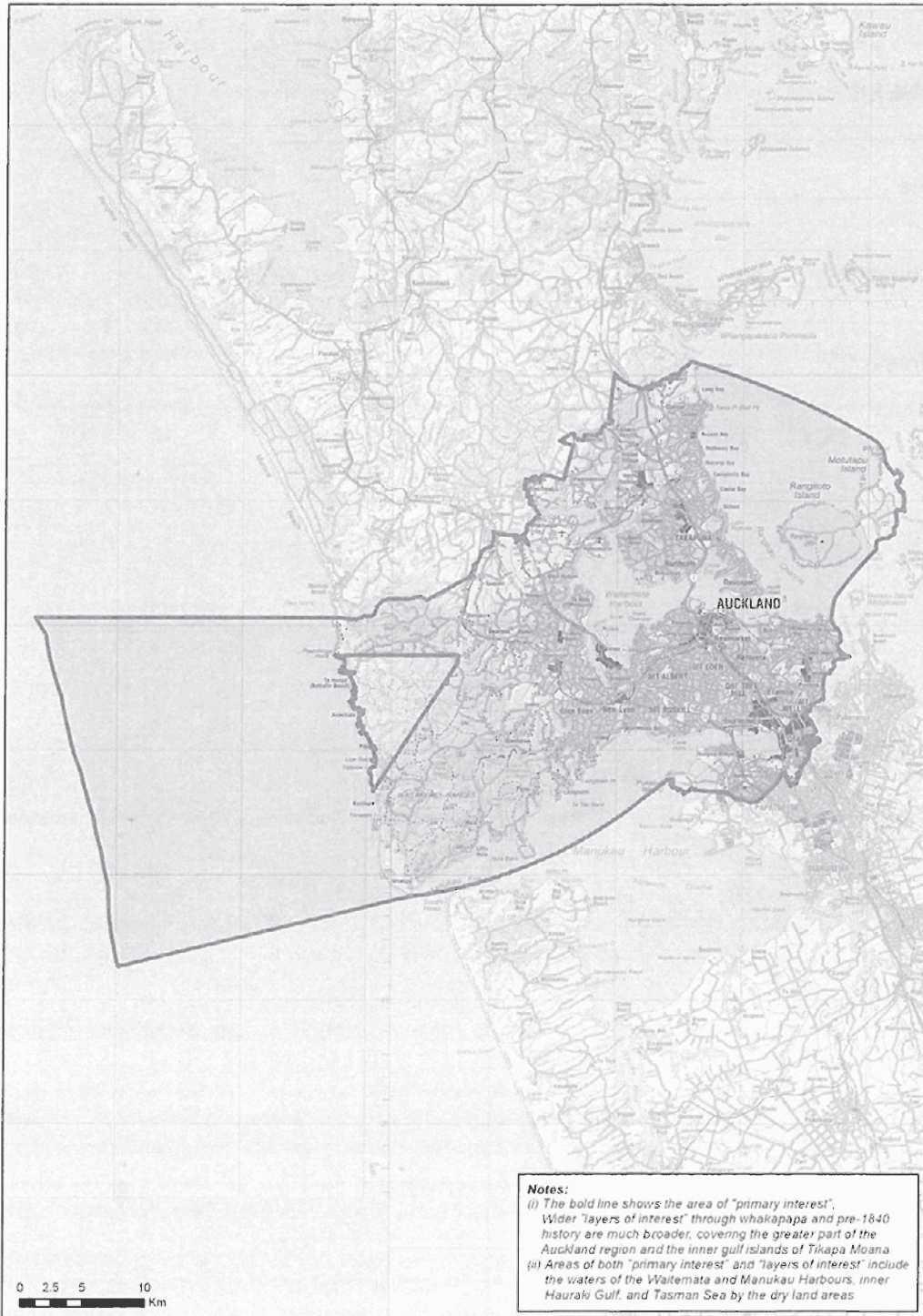
Occupation _____

Address _____

DOCUMENTS

2 PROTOCOLS: DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

ATTACHMENT A: NGĀTI WHĀTUA ŌRĀKEI AREA OF INTEREST



Appendix 16

Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Claims Settlement Act 2013

The following document forms part of the schedules to the Deed of Settlement

Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Te Kawenata Conservation Charter

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA



Omeru Falls, Omeru Pā Scenic Reserve¹

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

TE KAWENATA TAI AO O
NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

Whakarongo ki te tangi a te Kāruhiruhi e tangi nei

Toitū te Mana, Toitū te Whenua, Toitū te Tangata

E toru ngā manu i tau ki runga i te mānia o Kaipara Moana

ko te tangi o te manu tuatahi ko tōkia tōkia tōkia

ko te tangi o te manu tuarua ko kēria kēria kēria

ko te tangi o te manu tuatoru ko whiti whiti whiti ora

Waiho mā te Rito Hou tātou e ārahi, kei rite tātou ki ngā ngaru o te Moana

e papaki ana ki te Takutai Moana

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

Te Kawenata Taiao o Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara

Conservation Charter

TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA – CONSERVATION CHARTER is made between

THE MINISTER OF CONSERVATION (“MINISTER”)

and

THE DIRECTOR-GENERAL OF CONSERVATION (“DIRECTOR-GENERAL”)

and

NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

WHEREAS

- A. Te Kawenata Taiao o Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara – Conservation Charter (“Te Kawenata Taiao”) is part of the cultural redress in the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara settlement referred to in clause 5.4 of the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Deed of Settlement dated 9 September 2011 (“Deed of Settlement”) and relates to the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Area of Interest.
- B. The Minister and the Director-General have certain functions, powers and duties in terms of the Conservation Legislation as set out in section 6 of the Conservation Act 1987, including:
 - to manage for conservation purposes, all land, and all other natural and historic resources (including flora and fauna), for the time being administered by the Department;
 - to preserve so far as is practicable all indigenous freshwater fisheries, and to protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats;
 - to advocate the conservation of natural and historic resources generally; and
 - to the extent that the use of any natural or historic resource for recreation or tourism is not inconsistent with its conservation, to foster the use of natural and historic resources for recreation, and to allow their use for tourism.
- C. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara have exercised and continue to exercise tino rangatiratanga and kaitiakitanga in their rohe in accordance with tikanga o Ngāti Whātua. Accordingly, Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara wish to enter into Te Kawenata Taiao in order to participate with the Crown in conservation governance over the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Area of Interest.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

PURPOSE

1. The purpose of Te Kawenata Taiao is to:
 - 1.1 provide a framework for how Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, the Minister, the Director-General and the Department will establish and maintain a positive, co-operative and enduring partnership regarding conservation in the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Area of Interest;
 - 1.2 provide a framework to improve the quality of conservation management decisions;
 - 1.3 provide a mechanism for the Department to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi as required by section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987, while recognising that compliance with Te Kawenata Taiao does not derogate from the Department's obligations under that section.

Application and implementation of Te Kawenata Taiao

2. Te Kawenata Taiao shall apply within the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Area of Interest ("Te Kawenata Taiao Area").

JOINT OBJECTIVE

3. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, the Minister, the Director-General and the Department are committed to:
 - 3.1 establishing and maintaining a positive and collaborative relationship that will give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi. Those principles provide the basis for an ongoing relationship between the parties to Te Kawenata Taiao to achieve, over time, the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department;
 - 3.2 the protection, and where possible, the enhancement of public conservation lands and Natural Resources in Te Kawenata Taiao Area; and
 - 3.3 enabling Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to exercise their obligations as kaitiaki over public conservation lands in Te Kawenata Taiao Area.

Implementation and Communication

4. For the purposes of implementing Te Kawenata Taiao, the Department will engage with the trustees of Ngā Maunga Whakahii o Kaipara Development Trust ("the Development Trust") as the Governance Entity mandated to represent Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara interests.
5. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will establish and maintain effective communication on a continuing basis including by:
 - 5.1 maintaining a record of key contact persons within the Department of Conservation and the Development Trust, including their address and contact details;
 - 5.2 providing a primary Departmental contact for Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, being the Area Manager, who will act as a liaison person with other Departmental staff.
6. Within the first year of the operation of Te Kawenata Taiao and on a continuing basis the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will discuss practical ways in addition to the

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

provisions contained in Te Kawenata Taiao and the attached Interim Operational Agreement by which:

- 6.1 the Department can be fully informed of the relevant interests of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara within Te Kawenata Taiao Area;
 - 6.2 Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara can exercise kaitiakitanga over ancestral lands, natural and historic resources and other taonga administered by the Department within Te Kawenata Taiao Area;
 - 6.3 Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara can participate in conservation management and activities within Te Kawenata Taiao Area; and
 - 6.4 Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department can continuously improve the process of open, honest communication, and will consider particular initiatives to achieve this including:
 - 6.4.1 inviting Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to observe specific projects within Te Kawenata Taiao Area that may be of interest to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara;
 - 6.4.2 other initiatives that are agreed to by the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara.
7. To give effect to the commitments set out in Te Kawenata Taiao, within Te Kawenata Taiao Area, the Area Manager will meet with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara within 12 months after Settlement Date to document practical ways to operationalise and give effect to the commitments in Te Kawenata Taiao, including clause 6 above. It is intended that this document will further guide the ongoing relationship between Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department at a practical level, and will address, but will not be limited to the following matters:
- 7.1 engagement in Departmental Business Planning processes;
 - 7.2 communication processes including timeframes, meetings, and information sharing on operational and planning matters;
 - 7.3 input into specific conservation activities/projects including species research projects;
 - 7.4 Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara engagement in the decision-making processes for statutory authorisations;
 - 7.5 Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara participation in conservation planning processes;
 - 7.6 marine mammal and wildlife strandings;
 - 7.7 opportunities for Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to provide professional services;
 - 7.8 freshwater quality and fisheries issues;
 - 7.9 Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara participation in the establishment processes for new protected areas;
 - 7.10 cultural materials;
 - 7.11 involvement and cooperation on pest plant and pest animal control;

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

- 7.12 training and employment opportunities;
 - 7.13 visitor and public information;
 - 7.14 cooperation on Resource Management Act issues;
 - 7.15 the identification of opportunities to participate in the review of Conservation Legislation; and
 - 7.16 approaches to Departmental place name changes.
8. In the period between the Settlement Date and reaching agreement on the operational document, the Interim Operational Agreement in Appendix A is to operate.
9. Any operational documents referred to in clause 8 may be amended by mutual agreement.

DISPUTE RESOLUTION

10. In good faith, the Parties agree that every effort must be made to resolve matters arising under Te Kawenata Taiao at a local level between Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Area Manager. However, if this has not been achieved, the matter will:
- 10.1 be referred to the Auckland Conservator, and to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to resolve within a reasonable time period;
 - 10.2 the Party referring the matter will give written notice of the dispute including a description of the main issues;
 - 10.3 if still unresolved, the Parties may agree to refer the dispute to mediation, with the mediator to be mutually agreed and each party to pay their own costs of mediation.

CONSULTATION

11. The basic principles that will be followed by the Department in consulting with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara in each case are:
- 11.1 ensuring that Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara is consulted as soon as reasonably practicable following the identification and determination by the Department of the proposal, or issues, to be the subject of the consultation;
 - 11.2 providing Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara with sufficient information to make informed decisions and submissions in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation;
 - 11.3 ensuring, subject to statutory and policy time constraints, that sufficient time is given for the effective participation of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara in the decision making process and for the preparation of submissions by Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation;
 - 11.4 ensuring that the Department will approach the consultation with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara with an open mind, and will genuinely consider any feedback or concerns that Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara has advised the Department of in relation to any of the matters that are the subject of the consultation, and will consider options to provide for that feedback, and/or the concerns raised; and

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

- 11.5 reporting back to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara on the decision made as a result of any such consultation.
12. When the Department engages with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara on any matter, it will clarify at the outset whether it is seeking to engage Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara as a provider of a professional service, or whether it is seeking Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara's views as part of a consultation process.

REVIEW AND AMENDMENT OF TE KAWENATA TAI AO

13. The Minister and Director-General and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara agree that Te Kawenata Taiao is a living document which should be updated and adapted to take account of future development, including amendments to legislation.
14. The first review of Te Kawenata Taiao will take place no later than ten years from the Settlement Date and at ten year intervals thereafter, unless earlier as agreed to between the Parties.
15. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, the Minister and the Director-General may only vary Te Kawenata Taiao by agreement in writing.

NOTING

16. A summary of the terms of Te Kawenata Taiao must be noted in the Conservation Documents affecting Te Kawenata Taiao Area, but the noting:
- 16.1 is for the purpose of public notice; and
- 16.2 does not amend the Conservation Documents for the purposes of the Conservation Act 1987 or the National Parks Act 1980.

LIMITS OF TE KAWENATA TAI AO

17. Te Kawenata Taiao does not:
- 17.1 restrict the Crown from exercising its powers and performing its functions and duties in good faith, and in accordance with the law and government policy, including:
- 17.1.1 introducing legislation; or
- 17.1.2 changing government policy; or
- 17.1.3 issuing a similar relationship document to Te Kawenata Taiao to, or interacting or consulting with, anyone the Crown considers appropriate including any iwi, hapū, marae, whānau or representatives of tangata whenua.
- 17.2 restrict the responsibilities of the Minister or the Department or the legal rights of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara; or
- 17.3 grant, create or provide evidence of an estate or interest in, or rights relating to:
- 17.3.1 land held, managed or administered under Conservation Legislation; or
- 17.3.2 flora or fauna managed or administered under the Conservation Legislation.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

BREACH OF TE KAWENATA TAI AO

18. A breach of Te Kawenata Tai ao is not a breach of the Deed of Settlement.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

INTERPRETATION

Area Manager means the Warkworth Great Barrier Area Manager, or equivalent

Area of Interest means area defined in clause 11.6 of the Deed of Settlement and represented in the attached map

Conservation Document means a national park management plan, conservation management strategy, conservation management plan, or freshwater fisheries management plan

Conservation Management Strategy has the same meaning as in the Conservation Act 1987

Conservation Legislation means the Conservation Act 1987 and the statutes in the First Schedule of the Act

Crown means Her Majesty the Queen in right of New Zealand and includes, where appropriate, the Ministers and Departments of the Crown that are involved in, or bound by the terms of the Deed of Settlement to participate in, any aspect of the redress under the Deed of Settlement

Department means the Minister of Conservation, the Director-General and the Departmental managers to whom the Minister of Conservation's and the Director-General's decision-making powers can be delegated

Settlement Date means the date that is 20 business days after the date on which the Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara settlement legislation comes into force

Te Kawenata Taiao Area means the Area of Interest

Te Kawenata Taiao o Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara – Conservation Charter means the document called Te Kawenata Taiao o Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and is in the Documents Schedule to the Deed of Settlement. For the avoidance of doubt, it is not a Kawenata for the purposes of section 27A of the Conservation Act and section 77A of the Reserves Act

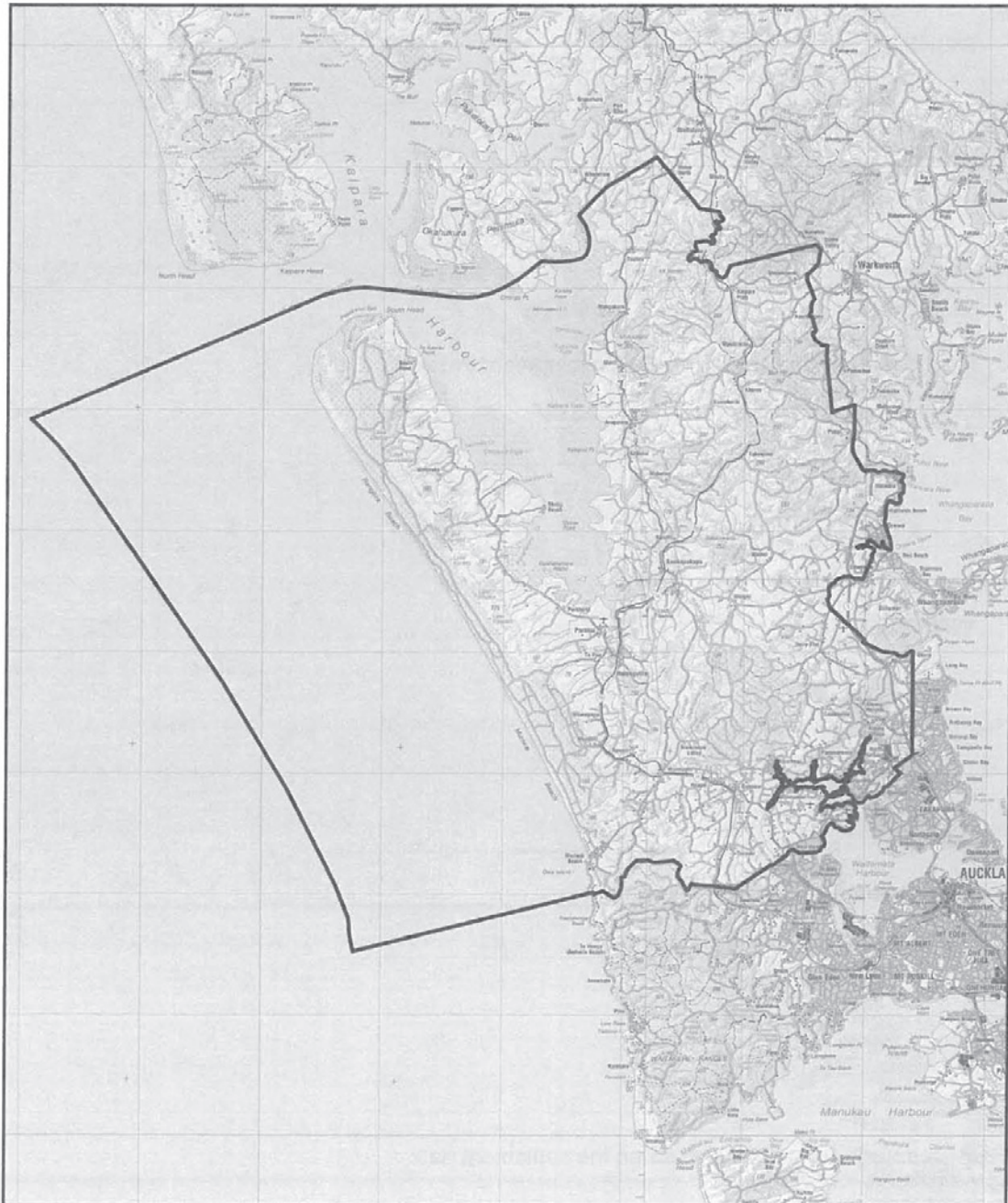
Natural Resources has the same meaning as in Part 1 of the Conservation Act 1987

Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara has the meaning set out in clauses 11.4 and 11.5 of the Deed of Settlement

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

AREA OF INTEREST



DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

Appendix A

Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara/Department of Conservation
Interim Operational Agreement

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Term of Operation.....	19
Implementation and Communication.....	19
Business Planning Process.....	19
Input into specific conservation activities and projects.....	19
Communication.....	20
Statutory authorisations.....	20
Statutory authorisations on Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Land.....	20
Notification.....	21
Process for Statutory Authorisations.....	21
Taonga Statutory Authorisations.....	21
Other categories of statutory authorisations.....	22
Implementation of statutory authorisations.....	22
Concession opportunities.....	22
Pest Control.....	22
Marine mammal and marine wildlife strandings.....	23
Conservation Management Planning.....	23
Species/research projects.....	24
Freshwater Quality and Fisheries.....	24
Freshwater quality.....	24
Freshwater fisheries and habitat.....	24
New Protected Areas.....	24
Cultural Materials.....	25
Training and Employment opportunities.....	25
Visitor and Public Information.....	26
Legislation.....	26
Resource Management Act.....	26
Review of legislation.....	27
Contracting for services.....	27
Change of Departmental Place Names.....	27
Contact Information	27

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

TERM OF OPERATION

1. The Interim Operational Agreement will remain operative until the operational document, set out in clause 7 of Te Kawenata Tai ao, has been agreed.
2. The Parties will use their best endeavours to reach agreement on the operational document within 18 months of the Settlement Date.
3. The Parties may, by mutual agreement in writing, decide at any time that this Interim Operational Agreement no longer meets their needs and will, on a date agreed by the Parties, cease to apply.

IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

4. For the purposes of implementing this Interim Operational Agreement, the Department will engage with the trustees of Ngā Maunga Whakahii o Kaipara Development Trust ("the Development Trust") as the Governance Entity mandated to represent Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara interests.

BUSINESS PLANNING PROCESS

5. The Department's annual business planning process (informed by such things as the Government's policy directives, the Department's Statement of Intent and Strategic Direction, the Nature Heritage Management System and available funding) determines the Department's conservation work priorities throughout the Auckland Conservancy and nationally.
6. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will meet annually at an early stage in the Department's business planning cycle to discuss the following activities, within Te Kawenata Tai ao Area:
 - 6.1 planning and budget priorities;
 - 6.2 work plans and projects; and
 - 6.3 proposed areas of cooperation in conservation projects, and the nature of that cooperation.
7. In the course of the annual business planning process, Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will be able to request specific projects to be undertaken by the Department. Such requests will be taken forward into the business planning process and considered by the Department when it determines its overall priorities.
8. If a specific project is agreed, the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will agree the nature of their collaboration on that project which may include finalising a work plan for the project. If a specific project is not undertaken, the Department will advise Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara of the reasons for this.

INPUT INTO SPECIFIC CONSERVATION ACTIVITIES AND PROJECTS

9. The Department will endeavour to support Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to undertake its own conservation-related projects, for instance by identifying other funding sources or by providing technical advice for those projects.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

COMMUNICATION

10. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will seek to maintain effective and open communication with each other on an ongoing basis on additional operational matters including by:
 - 10.1 discussing operational issues, as required, at the initiative of either party;
 - 10.2 the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara hosting meetings on an alternating basis; and
 - 10.3 sharing of information in an open manner as requested by either party, subject to constraints such as the Official Information Act or Privacy Act.
11. As part of ongoing communication, the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara may agree to review the implementation of Te Kawenata Taiao.
12. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will brief relevant staff and Conservation Board members on the content of Te Kawenata Taiao.

STATUTORY AUTHORISATIONS

13. Statutory authorisations include;
 - 13.1 concessions such as leases, licences, permits, and easements under the Conservation Act 1987;
 - 13.2 permits or authorisations under the Wildlife Act 1953, such as for research, translocations, captive breeding and wildlife transfers;
 - 13.3 access arrangements under the Crown Minerals Act 1991; and
 - 13.4 any other statutory authorisation granted by the Minister or Director-General.

Statutory authorisations on Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara Land

14. In respect of the following listed reserves created on the Settlement Date, the taonga statutory authorisations process (refer clauses 15 – 16 and 21 – 25) will apply to all applications for the Minister of Conservation's authorisation under sections 42(1), 46(1), 46(2), 49 and 50(1) of the Reserves Act 1977:
 - Atuanui Scenic Reserve
 - Makarau Local Purpose (Estuarine Habitat) Reserve
 - Makarau Bridge Local Purpose (Estuarine Habitat) Reserve
 - Parakai Local Purpose (Estuarine Habitat) Reserve
 - Ten Acre Block Recreation Reserve.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

Notification

15. When the Department is approached regarding a proposed statutory authorisation application that falls within Te Kawenata Taiao Area, it will notify Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and encourage the prospective applicant to consult with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara.
16. The Department will provide separate written notification to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara prior to any statutory authorisation being publicly notified.

Process for Statutory Authorisations

17. There are two processes for dealing with statutory authorisations:
 - 17.1 taonga statutory authorisations; and
 - 17.2 other statutory authorisations.
18. Taonga statutory authorisations shall be considered using the process set out in clauses 19 - 25, and all other statutory authorisations shall follow the process set out in clauses 26 - 28.

Taonga Statutory Authorisations

19. The Department recognises that statutory authorisations may potentially affect taonga of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara. Ngāti Whātua taonga include:
 - 19.1 species;
 - 19.2 the Kaipara Harbour, rivers and other waterways in Te Kawenata Taiao Area; and
 - 19.3 wāhi tapu sites.
20. At an early stage during the development of the operational plan, Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department will meet to agree and record those categories of statutory authorisation that are likely to affect taonga of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara ("taonga statutory authorisations").
21. The Parties recognise when dealing with taonga statutory authorisations:
 - 21.1 the benefits of seeking agreement, where possible; and
 - 21.2 that the Department works within statutory and government policy frameworks.
22. When considering a taonga statutory authorisation application, the Department will, in addition to the process set out in clauses 15 and 16 and 26 – 28, and within 10 working days of receipt of the application, discuss with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara:
 - 22.1 the potential impacts that the application may have for Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara's cultural, spiritual and historic values;
 - 22.2 ways to address those impacts; and
 - 22.3 how to proceed with the application.
23. The Department will encourage the applicant to discuss with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, the potential impacts their application may have on Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara cultural, spiritual and historic values and how those impacts might be addressed.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAI AO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

24. Should discussions on the potential impacts of the application (clauses 22 and 23 refer) prove inconclusive, within statutory and policy frameworks (including timeframes), the decision-maker will make an informed decision under the relevant statutory frameworks, taking into account and recording Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara views in writing, including matters where agreement was reached between the parties.
25. The Department will, after making any decision on a taonga authorisation, report back to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara explaining the decision, and in particular, how regard was given to the views of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara throughout the process.

Other categories of statutory authorisations

26. In relation to any other statutory authorisation applications or renewals of applications applied for within Te Kawenata Tai ao Area, the Department will consult with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara with a view to identifying any potential impacts on Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara cultural, spiritual and historic values.
27. The Department has limited time to process concession applications, and therefore the time for Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to indicate views on the concession application will also be limited.
28. The Minister and Director-General will have regard to the views expressed by Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara when considering whether to grant the application.

Implementation of statutory authorisations

29. The Minister and/or the Director-General will ensure, when granting statutory authorisations that give authority for other parties to manage or undertake activities on land administered by the Department, that those parties be required to manage sites of historic significance to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara according to best practice standards of conservation practice for cultural heritage sites.
30. The Minister and/or the Director-General will ensure, when considering granting any statutory authorisations, that the applicant:
 - 30.1 is made aware of any cultural information that Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara has identified as being disclosed "in confidence" during the statutory authorisation process, and if not already in the public domain, that the applicant should obtain the consent of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara for the use of that information; and
 - 30.2 is encouraged to consult with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara when using other cultural information regarding Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara.

CONCESSION OPPORTUNITIES

31. The Department will, if requested by Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, assist the development of concession proposals involving members of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara by providing technical advice on the concession process.

PEST CONTROL

32. Within the first year of the operation of Te Kawenata Tai ao, the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will discuss:

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

- 32.1 species of pest plant and pest animals of particular concern within Te Kawenata Taiao Area;
 - 32.2 the extent to which those pest species may impact on sites of significance to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara;
 - 32.3 ways in which those pest species may be controlled or eradicated.
33. In relation to the species and sites identified, the Department will, as part of its annual business planning processes:
- 33.1 facilitate consultation with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara on proposed pest control activities that it intends to undertake within Te Kawenata Taiao Area, particularly in relation to the use of poisons;
 - 33.2 provide Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara with opportunities to provide feedback on programmes and outcomes; and
 - 33.3 coordinate its pest control programmes with those of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, particularly where Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara is the adjoining landowner.

MARINE MAMMAL AND MARINE WILDLIFE STRANDINGS

- 34. The Department's approach to marine mammal strandings is guided by the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.
- 35. The Department's approach to stranded or dead turtles, sea snakes and great white sharks is guided by the Wildlife Act 1953.
- 36. The Department's management of stranded marine mammals is guided by the Marine Mammal Action Plan. At a Conservancy level the Marine Mammal Stranding Contingency Plan and Guidelines for dealing with other distressed marine wildlife also guides the management of stranded or dead marine mammals, turtles and sea snakes.
- 37. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will finalise a Memorandum of Understanding for the management of marine mammal strandings within Te Kawenata Taiao Area. This Memorandum of Understanding will be considered to be a key component of implementing Te Kawenata Taiao.

CONSERVATION MANAGEMENT PLANNING

- 38. The Department will engage with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara at an early stage, before any public consultation, and throughout the process, when developing any relevant Conservation Management Strategy or Conservation Management Plans within Te Kawenata Taiao Area.
- 39. The Department will obtain the agreement of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to any statements that it proposes for inclusion in any draft Conservation Management Strategy or draft Conservation Management Plan that relate to the cultural, spiritual and/or historic relationship of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara with any place within Te Kawenata Taiao Area. The New Zealand Conservation Authority has the approval role for the final text in any Conservation Management Strategy.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

SPECIES/RESEARCH PROJECTS

40. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will identify species of particular significance to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department will engage with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to discuss opportunities for it to provide input and participate in:
- 40.1 developing, implementing and/or amending the application of national species recovery programmes for those species within Te Kawenata Taiao Area; and
 - 40.2 any research and monitoring projects that are, or may be, carried out (or authorised) by the Department for those species within Te Kawenata Taiao Area.
41. For species that have not been identified as being of particular significance to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, the Department will keep Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara informed of the national sites and species recovery programmes on which the Department will be actively working within Te Kawenata Taiao Area.

FRESHWATER QUALITY AND FISHERIES**Freshwater quality**

42. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara have a mutual concern to ensure effective riparian management and water quality management in Te Kawenata Taiao Area and that freshwater bodies are free from contamination. For Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, the health and wellbeing of rivers within the Kaipara Harbour catchment and other waterways is of primary importance.
43. The Department will take all reasonable steps to prevent the pollution of waterways and the wider environment as a result of the Department's management activities (e.g. ensuring provision of toileting facilities).

Freshwater fisheries and habitat

44. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara have identified that freshwater habitat and all indigenous freshwater species that were historically or are presently within Te Kawenata Taiao Area (including fish and other aquatic life), are of high cultural value and to which they have a close association and interest.
45. The parties to Te Kawenata Taiao will co-operate in the conservation of freshwater fisheries and freshwater habitats. Objectives for freshwater fisheries and habitats will be integrated into the annual business planning process. Actions may include: areas for cooperation in the protection, restoration and enhancement of riparian vegetation and habitats (including marginal strips); and the development or implementation of research and monitoring programmes within Te Kawenata Taiao Area.

NEW PROTECTED AREAS

46. If the Department proposes to establish:
- 46.1 new, or to reclassify existing, public conservation land; or
 - 46.2 a marine protected area under the Department's jurisdiction (e.g. a marine reserve or a marine mammal sanctuary) -

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

the Department will notify Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara at an early stage and engage with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to ascertain Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara's views on the proposal.

CULTURAL MATERIALS

47. For the purpose of Te Kawenata Taiao, cultural materials are plants (including fungi), plant materials, and materials derived from animals, marine mammals, birds or species protected under the Wildlife Act, for which the Department is responsible within Te Kawenata Taiao Area and which are important to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara for maintaining and expressing its cultural values and practices, including and especially access to rongoa.
48. Current legislation requires that a concession or permit is required for any gathering and/or possession of cultural materials.
49. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department will explore opportunities for improving awareness of both parties about mātauranga Māori and scientific values of plants.
50. In relation to cultural materials, the Department will:
 - 50.1 work in partnership with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to develop and agree a process to authorise members of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to access and use cultural materials within Te Kawenata Taiao Area when required for cultural purposes, in accordance with the relevant legislation. Where it is consistent with conservation objectives and relevant legislation, multi-site and/or multi-take authorisations may be granted;
 - 50.2 consult with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara in circumstances where there are competing requests between Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and persons or entities other than those of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes;
 - 50.3 subject to competing requests between iwi being resolved through tikanga or any other special circumstances agreed to by the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, provide for Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of Departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance, or culling of species, or where materials become available as a result of accidental death or otherwise through natural causes.
51. The Department will, as far as practicable:
 - 51.1 identify areas administered by the Department which may be suitable as sites for revegetation planting of plants suitable for cultural use; and
 - 51.2 provide advice, where possible and practicable, to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara for the management and propagation of indigenous plants of interest to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara.

TRAINING AND EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITIES

52. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will work together to identify opportunities for conservation capacity building for Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and Departmental staff.
53. The Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will inform each other of any conservation related educational or training opportunities (such as ranger training courses, short term employment opportunities or secondments). These could include opportunities for the Department's staff to learn about Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara's tikanga and mātauranga and for

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

members of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to augment their conservation knowledge and skills through being involved in the Department's work programmes and/or training initiatives.

54. When opportunities for conservation capacity building are available, the Department and Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara will seek to ensure that the other's staff or members are able to participate.
55. The Department will inform Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara when opportunities for full time positions, holiday employment or student research projects arise within Te Kawenata Taiao Area. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara may propose candidates for these roles or opportunities.

VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

56. The promotion of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara values will include the following measures:
 - 56.1 seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed by Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars;
 - 56.2 consulting with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara on how Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara tikanga, spiritual and historic values are respected in the provision of visitor facilities, public information and Departmental publications;
 - 56.3 taking reasonable steps to respect Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara tikanga, spiritual and historic values in the provision of visitor facilities, public information and Departmental publications;
 - 56.4 ensuring the appropriate use of information about Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara in the provision of visitor facilities and services, public information and Departmental publications by:
 - 56.4.1 obtaining the consent of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara prior to disclosure of information obtained in confidence from Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara;
 - 56.4.2 consulting with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, before the Department uses information relating to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara values;
 - 56.4.3 encouraging Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara participation in the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes by informing Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara of these programmes; and
 - 56.4.4 encouraging any concessionaire proposing to use information provided by or relating to Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara to obtain the agreement (including on any terms and conditions) of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara.

LEGISLATION**Resource Management Act**

57. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department both have interests in the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act 1991. Areas of common interest include riparian management, effects on freshwater fish habitat, water quality management, and protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

DOCUMENTS

1: TE KAWENATA TAIAO O NGĀTI WHĀTUA O KAIPARA

58. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara and the Department will seek to identify issues of mutual interest and/or concern ahead of each party making submissions in relevant processes.

Review of legislation

59. The Department undertakes to keep Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara informed of any public reviews of the Conservation Legislation administered by the Department.
60. Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara may suggest to the Minister of Conservation proposals for amendments to, or for, the review of Conservation Legislation.

CONTRACTING FOR SERVICES

61. Where appropriate, the Department will consider using Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara as a provider of professional services.
62. Where contracts are to be tendered for conservation management within Te Kawenata Taiao Area, the Department will inform Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara.
63. The Department will, subject to available resourcing, and if requested by Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara, provide advice on how to achieve the technical requirements to become a provider of professional services.
64. In accordance with standard administrative practice, wherever Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara individuals or entities are applying to provide services, appropriate steps will be taken to avoid any perceived or actual conflict of interest in the decision making process.

CHANGE OF DEPARTMENTAL PLACE NAMES

65. Subject to legislation, the Department will consult with Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara prior to any name changes for reserves or conservation areas within Te Kawenata Taiao Area being submitted to the New Zealand Geographic Board by the Department.
66. The Department will consult Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara on any new or amended office (e.g. Area Office) names.

CONTACT INFORMATION

67. Unless advised in writing to the contrary, the first contacts for Te Kawenata Taiao are:

67.1 Area Office:

The Area Manager
 Department of Conservation
 Warkworth Great Barrier Island Area Office
 28 Baxter Street
 Warkworth 0910

67.2 Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara:

Ngā Maunga Whakahii o Kaipara Development Trust
 96 Commercial Road
 PO Box 41
 Helensville 0840

Appendix 17

Te Ture Whaimana o Te Āwa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

The Vision

Tōku awa koiora me ōna pikonga he kura tangihia o te mātāmuri.

The river of life, each curve more beautiful than the last.

Our vision is for a future where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities who, in turn, are all responsible for restoring and protecting the health and well-being of the Waikato River, and all it embraces, for generations to come.

The Objectives and Strategies

The Objectives and Strategies component of the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River are listed below.

Objectives for the Waikato River

- a) The restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River;
- b) The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato-Tainui with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural, and spiritual relationships;
- c) The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato River Iwi according to their tikanga and kawa, with the Waikato River, including their economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationships;
- d) The restoration and protection of the relationship of Waikato Region's communities with the Waikato River including the economic, social, cultural and spiritual relationships;
- e) The integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to management of the natural, physical, cultural and historic resources of the Waikato River;
- f) The adoption of a precautionary approach towards decisions that may result in significant adverse effects on the Waikato River, and in particular those effects that threaten serious or irreversible damage to the Waikato River;
- g) The recognition and avoidance of adverse cumulative effects, and potential cumulative effects, of activities undertaken both on the Waikato River and within its catchments on the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River;
- h) The recognition that the Waikato River is degraded and should not be required to absorb further degradation as a result of human activities;
- i) The protection and enhancement of significant sites, fisheries, flora and fauna;
- j) The recognition that the strategic importance of the Waikato River to New Zealand's social, cultural, environmental and economic well-being is subject to the restoration and protection of the health and well-being of the Waikato River;
- k) The restoration of water quality within the Waikato River so that it is safe for people to swim in and take food from over its entire length;
- l) The promotion of improved access to the Waikato River to better enable sporting, recreational, and cultural opportunities;
- m) The application to the above of both maatauranga Maori and latest available scientific methods.

Strategies for the Waikato River

- a) ensure that the highest level of recognition is given to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River;
- b) establish what the current health status of the Waikato River is by utilising maatauranga Maaori and the latest available scientific methods;
- c) develop targets for improving the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River by utilising maatauranga Maaori and the latest available scientific methods;
- d) develop and implement a programme of action to achieve the targets for improving the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River;
- e) develop and share local, national, and international expertise, including indigenous expertise, on rivers and activities within their catchments that may be applied to the restoration and protection of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River;
- f) recognise and protect waahi tapu and sites of significance to Waikato-Tainui and other Waikato River iwi (where they do decide) to promote their cultural, spiritual, and historic relationship with the Waikato River;
- g) recognise and protect appropriate sites associated with the Waikato River that are of significance to the Waikato regional community;
- h) actively promote and foster public knowledge and understanding of the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River among all sectors of the Waikato regional community;
- i) encourage and foster a “whole of river” approach to the restoration and protection of the Waikato River, including the development, recognition, and promotion of best practice methods for restoring and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River;
- j) establish new, and enhance existing, relationships between Waikato-Tainui, other Waikato River iwi (where they so decide), and stakeholders with an interest in advancing, restoring, and protecting the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River;
- k) ensure that cumulative adverse effects on the Waikato River of activities are appropriately managed in statutory planning documents at the time of their review;
- l) ensure appropriate public access to the Waikato River while protecting and enhancing the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.

The following sections of this CMS fulfil the Department’s responsibilities under legislation to implement the Vision and Strategy:

- Long Term Vision for Auckland (2060) (section 1.2)
- Treaty of Waitangi responsibilities(section 1.4)
- Auckland by 2024 (section 1.5)
- Waikato River-Te Awa o Waikato (section 1.7)
- Part 3 (consideration of cultural values and management of activities on public conservation land).

Appendix 18

Criteria for which the Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana wetland was nominated as a Wetland of International Importance.

Firth of Thames/ Tikapa Moana: Criteria 1, 2, 3 and 5

Criterion 1: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it contains a representative, rare, or unique example of a natural or near-natural wetland type found within the appropriate biogeographic region.

Criterion 2: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it supports vulnerable, endangered, or critically endangered species or threatened ecological communities.

Criterion 3: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it supports populations of plant and/or animal species important for maintaining the biological diversity of a particular biogeographic region.

Criterion 4: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it supports plant and/or animal species at a critical stage in their life cycles, or provides refuge during adverse conditions.

Criterion 5: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it regularly supports 20,000 or more waterbirds.

Criterion 6: A wetland should be considered internationally important if it regularly supports 1% of the individuals in a population of one species or subspecies of waterbird.

Appendix 19

Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Deed of Settlement

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

NGĀ MANA WHENUA O TĀMAKI MAKĀURAU

and

TRUSTEES OF THE TŪPUNA TĀONGA O TĀMAKI MAKĀURAU TRUST

and

THE MINISTER OF CONSERVATION

and

THE DIRECTOR-GENERAL OF CONSERVATION

CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

[date]

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT**1. PURPOSE OF RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT**

- 1.1 This Relationship Agreement represents a partnership between the Minister and Department of Conservation and Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau:
- a) to promote the conservation of natural and physical resources and historical and cultural heritage across the Tāmaki Makaurau Region in respect of which the Department of Conservation (“Department”) has statutory responsibilities and the iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau (Ngā Mana Whenua) are mana whenua and kaitiaki; and
 - b) to give effect to the principles of Te Tiriti o Waitangi / the Treaty of Waitangi, as required by section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987.
- 1.2 This agreement will enable a positive, collaborative and enduring relationship between Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department of Conservation, while ensuring the Department maintains and enhances its direct relationships with each of the iwi/hapū.
- 1.3 This document is the Relationship Agreement referred to in Clause x of the Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Deed dated [xxxxx] 2012, that is required to be entered into by the Minister of Conservation, Director-General and Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki, and forms part of the redress in settlement of the historic Treaty of Waitangi claims of the iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau.

2 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES**JOINT OBJECTIVES**

- 2.1 Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau, the Minister and Department of Conservation are committed to establishing an effective partnership to better protect the health, wellbeing, mauri and wairua of the resources and heritage of the Tāmaki Makaurau Region for all generations.
- 2.2 Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department will pursue a coherent and effective conservation relationship spanning tribal rohe and conservancy boundaries.
- 2.3 Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department recognise and respect each other’s autonomy, individual mandates, roles and responsibilities.
- 2.4 Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau and the Department will seek to establish a relationship that emphasises shared objectives consistent with the conservation statutory framework and Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau kaitiakitanga and mana whenua responsibilities for natural and historic resources, and other taonga.

NGĀ MANA WHENUA O TĀMAKI MAKĀURAU

- 2.5 Ngā Mana Whenua has a centuries old spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary and historic relationship with Tikapa Moana, the Waitemata and Manukau Harbours, the motu of those seas, and the whenua, waters, and indigenous flora and fauna within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.
- 2.6 Ngā Mana Whenua has an inter-generational responsibility as mana whenua and kaitiaki under tikanga Māori to preserve, protect, manage and utilise those taonga for all generations.

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

MINISTER, DIRECTOR-GENERAL AND DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION

- 2.7 The Department administers 24 Acts and has functions under a number of other Acts. Its functions include managing “for conservation purposes, all land, and all other natural and historic resources” under the Conservation Legislation. In administering the Conservation Legislation the Department must give effect to the principles of the Te Tiriti o Waitangi/the Treaty of Waitangi, in accordance with section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987.
- 2.8 The Department will continue to maintain and enhance its relationship with each of the iwi/hapū pursuant to the Department’s obligations under section 4 of the Conservation Act and commitments made through this document.

3 STRUCTURE OF AGREEMENT

- 3.1 Part A of this Agreement sets out the framework for the relationship between Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau and the Department on matters relating to the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.
- 3.2 Part B of this Agreement sets out, in accordance with the process outlined in paragraph 4.7, the relationship between each iwi/hapū and the Department on matters relating to places and resources that are of spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary or historical significance to that iwi/hapū.
- 3.3 Part C deals with general matters.

PART A - NGĀ MANA WHENUA O TĀMAKI MAKĀURAU AND THE DEPARTMENT

4 STRATEGIC COLLABORATION

- 4.1 As soon as is practicable after the signing of this Relationship Agreement, the parties will meet to agree long-term strategic objectives for their partnership (“strategic partnership objectives”).
- 4.2 Thereafter, Ngā Mana Whenua will meet with senior staff of the Department (including Conservators, Area Managers and Pou Tairangahau) within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region at least once a year. At these meetings, the parties will determine whether meetings involving other senior staff of the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua are required on particular issues.
- 4.3 The Department undertakes business planning prior to the beginning of each new financial year. This determines the Department’s work priorities and commitments for the year. Business planning processes largely sit with Area Managers, within conservancy and national priority settings. The Department and Ngā Mana Whenua will meet at an early stage in the business planning process to discuss timeframes for the development of annual work programmes, discuss how the strategic partnership objectives will be reflected in the programme and to identify potential projects to be undertaken together or separately which are consistent with the strategic partnership objectives.
- 4.4 If a specific project is undertaken, the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua will determine the nature of their collaboration on that project which may include finalising a work plan for that project. If a specific project is not undertaken, the Department will advise Ngā Mana Whenua of the reasons for this.

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

- 4.5 As part of annual discussions, and as part of ongoing dialogue, the parties will advise each other of:
- a) Any significant changes that have occurred or are proposed (including, legislative, policy or administrative changes) regarding how either party is working in the Tāmaki Makaurau Region, as far as practicable; and
 - b) Potential opportunities for applying for funding for conservation purposes from external sources (either jointly or individually with the support of the other party).

GUIDANCE ON ENGAGEMENT WITH IWI/HAPŪ

- 4.6 As part of strategic collaboration, the Department will seek guidance from Ngā Mana Whenua as to when the Department should engage with each iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua for specific places or resources to meet the Department's obligations under this Relationship Agreement with respect to matters in Part A.
- 4.7 In addition, Schedule 1 of this agreement may be amended by agreement in writing between the Minister and an iwi/hapū after the signing of their Deed of Settlement and after notifying Ngā Mana Whenua, to include agreed undertakings regarding the relationship between the Department and an iwi/hapū in relation to places and resources the Department administers and which are:
- a. of spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary or historical significance to an iwi/hapū; and
 - b. for which that iwi/hapū seeks direct engagement on terms consistent with paragraphs 9-14 of this agreement.

PLANNING DOCUMENTS

- 4.8 In addition to involvement in the Conservation Management Plan for Rangitoto, Motutapu, Motuihe and Motukorea Motu ("Motu CMP") as set out in the Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau settlement legislation, the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua will meet to identify and seek to address issues affecting Ngā Mana Whenua at an early stage (before public consultation, if any, and throughout the process) in the preparation, review or amendment of any other statutory planning document within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.

5 INNER HAURAKI GULF MOTU

- 5.1 The motu of the inner Hauraki Gulf, as referred to in clause 4.8, are of very high spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary and historical significance to Ngā Mana Whenua. Pursuant to the Collective Redress Legislation and clause [x] of the Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Deed, Ngā Mana Whenua will have a role alongside the Department and the Conservation Board in developing and approving the Motu CMP.
- 5.2 Both the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua recognise the benefit of Tāmaki Makaurau iwi/hapū involvement in the management of the inner Hauraki Gulf Motu, including involvement in implementing the Motu CMP. To this end a standing item in strategic objectives and business planning meetings under clause 4 will be the implementation of the Motu CMP.

6 TĀMAKI VOLCANIC FIELD

- 6.1 Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department have management responsibilities, along with the Auckland Council, for the majority of significant features that comprise the

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

Tamaki Volcanic Field. Both parties recognise the value of a strategic engagement about the governance of these features, particularly concerning spiritual and cultural values associated with the maunga and motu.

- 6.2 In recognition of this, Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department will ensure that on an annual basis they meet to discuss strategic governance and management issues common to both the maunga and motu. That annual meeting may be combined with other meetings required under this relationship Agreement and may also involve members of the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority appointed by Auckland Council.

7 MAUNGAUIKA/NORTH HEAD ARRANGEMENTS

- 7.1 The Department will continue to manage Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve until such time as Auckland Council decide whether to assume management responsibilities, a decision which would bring the reserve within the scope of the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority pursuant to section [x] of the Collective Redress Legislation .

- 7.2 While the Department administers Maungauika and responds to statutory authorisation applications, it will in addition to the process set out in clause 11, have regard to:

- a) the spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary and historical significance of Maungauika to the iwi/hapū of the Tāmaki Collective, including each iwi/ hapū statements of association for Maungauika; and
- b) Maungauika being held by Ngā Mana Whenua for the common benefit of the iwi/hapū and the other people of Auckland; and
- c) the future role of Ngā Mana Whenua represented on the Tūpuna Maunga o Tāmaki Makaurau Authority if Maungauika is brought within that body's scope.

- 7.3 If the Department continues to administer Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve 5 years after effective date, because the Auckland Council has not assumed day to day management, the parties will amend by agreement in writing, this section to, consistent with Conservation legislation, broaden the scope of governance issues concerning Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve upon which the Department will engage with the Collective.

8 TIKAPA MOANA /WAITEMATĀ/MANUKAU AND MARINE ISSUES

- 8.1 Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department share aspirations for conservation of Tikapa Moana / the Hauraki Gulf, the Waitematā and Manukau Harbours and other marine areas in the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.

- 8.2 Ngā Mana Whenua consider all species of marine mammal within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region are taonga iho of Ngā Mana Whenua.

- 8.3 All species of marine mammal occurring within New Zealand and New Zealand's fisheries waters are absolutely protected under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. The Department is responsible for the protection, conservation and management of all marine mammals, including the assistance, treatment or disposal of any stranded, sick, injured or dead marine mammal. The Department is also statutorily responsible for the health and safety of its staff, any volunteers under its control, and the public, when it acts to protect, conserve or manage marine mammals.

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

- 8.4 Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department will work together on issues relating to conservation of Tikapa Moana, Waitematā and Manukau Harbours and other marine areas (including marine mammal issues) that may be identified within the partnership strategic objectives or business planning discussions.

9 CULTURAL MATERIALS

- 9.1 The Department will facilitate, in accordance with legislative requirements, access for Ngā Mana Whenua to cultural materials and will consider potential impacts on Ngā Mana Whenua where cultural materials are requested by other persons, recognising at times that such requests may have a regional impact and at other times such impacts may be limited to an individual iwi/hapū.

- 9.2 Discussions between Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department on the access, restoration, enhancement and use of cultural materials may include:

- a) Identification of cultural materials, their current state, and desired conservation outcomes within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region;
- b) Streamlined authorisations process for iwi/hapū members to gather cultural materials (consistent with legislation). This may include multi-site and multi-take permits to Ngā Mana Whenua, which may in turn enable Ngā Mana Whenua to authorise its own members to take and use flora materials and dead protected fauna within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region for cultural purposes in accordance with the permit issued to Ngā Mana Whenua;
- c) Processes for early consultation when there are requests from other persons or entities to take cultural materials;
- d) Opportunities to plant and harvest materials on public conservation land for cultural purposes;
- e) Waiver or reduction of recovery of authorisation costs for cultural materials applications; and
- f) Opportunities for the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua to work collaboratively on cultural materials enhancement within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region (including matauranga/knowledge transfer, education, wānanga, and preservation techniques).

10 TAONGA SPECIES AND HABITAT PROTECTION (INCLUDING NATIONAL PROGRAMMES AND PEST CONTROL)

- 10.1 Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department share aspirations of protecting ecosystems and indigenous flora and fauna within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region. These aspirations will be reflected in the strategic partnership objectives.

- 10.2 The Department aims to conserve the full range of New Zealand's ecosystems, maintain or restore the ecological integrity of managed sites, and ensure the survival of threatened species, in particular those most at risk of extinction. This work involves a number of national programmes.

- 10.3 As part of annual discussions the Department will update Ngā Mana Whenua of any national sites and species programmes operating in the Tāmaki Makaurau Region and will discuss with Ngā Mana Whenua how they wish to be involved in these

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

programmes, particularly where they will progress the strategic partnership objectives.

- 10.4 Preventing, managing and controlling threats to natural, historic and cultural values from animal and weed pests is an integral part of protecting the unique biodiversity of New Zealand. This is done in a way that maximises the value from limited resources available to do this work.
- 10.5 It is envisaged that the strategic partnership objectives will inform the strategic outcomes sought from pest control programmes within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region, including: monitoring and assessment of programmes; and the managed and lawfully authorised use of poisons. Through the annual business planning process, the parties will create actions to progress these strategic partnership objectives.

11 STATUTORY AUTHORISATIONS

- 11.1 The strategic partnership objectives will guide the parties to determine appropriate engagement on statutory authorisations within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.
- 11.2 As part of these strategic objectives, Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department will identify, and keep under review, categories of statutory authorisations that may have high impact on the spiritual, ancestral, cultural, customary, and historic values of Ngā Mana Whenua.
- 11.3 As the Department works within time limits to process applications for some forms of statutory authorisations, it will notify Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau (as part of the meetings referred to in paragraph 11.2) of the time frames for providing advice.
- 11.4 The strategic partnership objectives will guide the parties to determine potential opportunities for Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau to obtain statutory authorisations on public conservation land within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region, including in relation to commercial opportunities.
- 11.5 The Department will actively advise and encourage all prospective applicants within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region to consult with Ngā Mana Whenua before filing their application. The Department will also consult Ngā Mana Whenua at an early stage on such categories of authorisations or renewal of authorisations within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.
- 11.6 For the types of Statutory Authorisations within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region agreed to in clause 11.2, Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department will adopt the following process:
- a. the Department notifies Ngā Mana Whenua of the application, timeframe for a decision and the timeframe for Ngā Mana Whenua response;
 - b. Ngā Mana Whenua, within an agreed timeframe, notify the Department of their response including the nature of their interests in the proposal and their views in relation to the proposal;
 - c. the Department acknowledges Ngā Mana Whenua interests and views as conveyed (providing an opportunity to clarify or correct the Department's understanding of those interests and views), how those interests and views will be included in the decision-making process and any apparent issues or conflict that may arise;

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

- d. the Department will, in making a decision, consider whether it is possible to reconcile any conflict between Ngā Mana Whenua interests and views and other considerations in the decision-making process;
- e. the Department will record in writing as part of a decision document the nature of Ngā Mana Whenua interests and the views of Ngā Mana Whenua as conveyed; and
- f. the Department will communicate its decision to Ngā Mana Whenua as soon as practicable after it is made.

12 STATUTORY LAND MANAGEMENT

- 12.1 The strategic partnership objectives will guide the parties' engagement on statutory land management activities within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region. Ngā Mana Whenua has an ongoing interest in the range of statutory land management activities that are occurring within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.
- 12.2 From time to time, the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua will identify the categories of statutory land management activities that have potential to affect sites of significance to Ngā Mana Whenua, and where consultation is appropriate.
- 12.3 The Department will notify Ngā Mana Whenua at an early stage of proposals for vestings or management appointments for reserves held under the Reserves Act 1977; other management arrangements with third parties; changing reserve classifications; or disposing of reserves.
- 12.4 In addition, from time to time the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua will discuss any desire of Ngā Mana Whenua to be granted a vesting of, or an appointment to control and manage, a reserve under sections 26 or 29 of the Reserves Act for an area of significance.

13 CONSERVATION ADVOCACY

- 13.1 From time to time, Ngā Mana Whenua and the Department will each have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act 1991 and other legislation. The Department's advocacy role includes matters of concern to it under the Resource Management Act.
- 13.2 Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau and the Department will seek to identify any issues of mutual interest and/or concern ahead of each party making submissions in relevant processes.

13A CONSERVATION BOARD

- 13A.1 Pursuant to the Settlement Legislation and clause [x] of the Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Deed a statutory right will be provided for the Rōpū of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau to recommend to the Minister of Conservation three nominees to the Conservation Board whose area of jurisdiction includes Auckland and the islands of the inner Hauraki Gulf as follows –
 - (i) 1 member nominated by the Marutūāhu rōpū entity; and
 - (ii) 1 member nominated by the Ngāti Whātua rōpū entity; and
 - (iii) 1 member nominated by the Waiohuā Tāmaki rōpū entity.]

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT**14 CROSS-ORGANISATIONAL OPPORTUNITIES**

- 14.1 As part of the annual business planning process, the parties will discuss:
- a) Opportunities and processes to share, where appropriate, scientific and cultural resource information, including data and research material (including to assist Ngā Mana Whenua to exercise their role as kaitiaki);
 - b) Opportunities for developing mutual understanding and developing relationships, with respect to conservation, environmental and cultural matters within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region. Options may include wānanga, education, training, development and secondments;
 - c) Opportunities to be involved or to nominate individuals to take part in relevant training initiatives run by both parties, including cadetships; and
 - d) Staff changes and key contacts in each organisation.
- 14.2 Where appropriate, the Department will consider using Ngā Mana Whenua individuals or entities as providers of professional services (such as oral history and interpretation projects). Normal conflict of interest processes will be implemented to avoid a perceived or actual conflict of interest.

PART B – IWI/HAPŪ OF NGĀ MANA WHENUA O TĀMAKI MAKĀURAU AND THE DEPARTMENT**15 BACKGROUND**

- 15.1 The Minister currently has issued a protocol and agreed to a relationship document with Ngati Whatua o Orakei and Ngati Whatua o Kaipara, respectively, via their deeds of settlement. Part A of this Relationship Agreement will operate in addition to these documents.
- 15.2 This agreement, including matters listed in Schedule 1, does not otherwise affect the right of any iwi/hapū to seek through their settlements other forms of redress over special places or resources.

16 MARINE MAMMAL STRANDINGS

- 16.1 Relevant iwi/hapū contacts, as notified by them to the Department, will be advised of marine mammal strandings within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region. A co-operative approach will be adopted by the Department with iwi/hapū to the management of strandings, including recovery of bone, teeth and baleen for cultural purposes and burial of marine mammals.
- 16.2 The Department will make best efforts to inform the relevant iwi/hapū before any decision to euthanase, or collect scientific information from, a stranded marine mammal.

17 TAONGA SPECIES AND HABITAT PROTECTION

- 17.1 The Department and iwi/hapū will discuss opportunities and processes for collaboration with one another on field projects of mutual interest concerning species programmes.

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

- 17.2 The Department will seek to co-ordinate with each iwi/hapū on pest control activities where that iwi/hapū is the adjoining landowner.

18 AREAS OF SIGNIFICANCE

- 18.1 Both parties recognise that there are wāhi tapu and area of significance to iwi/hapū on lands managed under Conservation Legislation.

- 18.2 Iwi/hapū and the Department share aspirations for protecting wāhi tapu, areas of significance and other historic places. The Department and iwi/hapū will work together to conserve, as far as practicable, areas of significance on land managed under Conservation Legislation within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region. This will be done according to iwi/hapū tikanga and professional standards for conservation of historic places.

- 18.3 The Department and iwi/hapū will develop a process for advising one another of areas of significance and wāhi tapu. Information relating to areas of significance to iwi/hapū will be treated in strictest confidence by the Department in order to preserve the wāhi tapu nature of places, unless otherwise agreed by iwi/hapū.

- 18.4 The parties will consult each other in relation to recommendations for public conservation lands containing areas of significance that are to be named in the Tāmaki Makaurau Region.

19 VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

- 19.1 Iwi/hapū and the Department will discuss opportunities to, where appropriate, share knowledge about natural and historic heritage within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region with visitors and the general public.

- 19.2 The parties will encourage respect for and awareness of conservation in, and the relationship of iwi/hapū with, the Tāmaki Makaurau Region, including by:

- a) Raising public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between the parties;
- b) Engaging with each other in the development of appropriate visitor and public information published by either party that relates to values of iwi/hapū in land and resources managed under Conservation Legislation, particularly where that information relates to areas of significance to iwi/hapū; and
- c) The Department obtaining any consent of iwi/hapū for disclosure of information received from and relating to values of that iwi/hapū.

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

PART C – GENERAL MATTERS

20 TERMS OF AGREEMENT

- 20.1 This Relationship Agreement is entered into pursuant to sections [x] of the Collective Redress Legislation and clause [x] of the the Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Deed. The agreement does not override or limit:
- a) direct relationships between the Department and each iwi/hapū;
 - b) legislative rights, powers or obligations;
 - c) the functions duties and powers of the Minister of Conservation, Director-General or any Departmental officials or statutory officers; or
 - d) the ability of the Crown to introduce legislation and change government policy.
- 20.2 The agreement does not have the effect of granting, creating or providing evidence of an estate or interest in, or rights relating to land or any other resource held, managed or administered under the Conservation Legislation or the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011.
- 20.3 The agreement is a public law instrument. While a breach of it by the Department may enable Ngā Mana Whenua to seek a public law remedy, including judicial review, a breach does not entitle Ngā Mana Whenua to damages or monetary penalties (other than legal court costs which may be awarded by a Court).
- 20.4 In accordance with section [x] of the Collective Redress Legislation and section 4 of the Conservation Act, the entering into of this document does not prevent the department from entering into similar arrangements with iwi or groups who are not part of Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau.
- 20.5 A breach of this Agreement is not a breach of the Deed of Settlement.

21 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

- 21.1 If a dispute arises in connection with this Relationship Agreement, every effort will be made in good faith to resolve matters at a local level. This may require the Department's relevant Area Manager to meet with a representative of Ngā Mana Whenua (for matters under Part A) or individual iwi/hapū (for matters under Part B) within a reasonable timeframe to endeavour to find a resolution to the matter.
- 21.2 If this process is not successful, the matter may be escalated to a meeting of the relevant Departmental Conservator and a nominated representative of Ngā Mana Whenua or the relevant iwi/hapū who will meet within a reasonable timeframe.
- 21.3 If a negotiated outcome cannot be reached from this process for a matter under clauses 4-8 of Part A, the parties may agree for the issue to be escalated to a meeting between the Director-General (or nominee) and a nominated representative of Ngā Mana Whenua.
- 21.4 If the Department and Ngā Mana Whenua agree that the matter under Part A is of such significance that it requires the attention of the chair of Ngā Mana Whenua and the Minister, then they may agree to escalate this matter to a meeting of the chair of Ngā Mana Whenua and the Minister (or their nominees). The parties acknowledge this measure will be a means of last resort.

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

22 REVIEW AND AMENDMENT

- 22.1 The parties agree that this Relationship Agreement is a living document that should be updated and adapted to take account of future developments, including the process outlined in paragraph 4.7.
- 22.2 If requested by either party, the first review of this Relationship Agreement will take place no later than three years after the date this Relationship Agreement is signed, and if requested by either party will be reviewed every three years thereafter.
- 22.3 The parties may only vary this Relationship Agreement by agreement in writing.

23 CONSULTATION

- 23.1 Where consultation is undertaken with Ngā Mana Whenua, the Department will:
- a) Ensure that Ngā Mana Whenua or the relevant iwi/hapū are consulted as soon as reasonably practicable following the identification of the proposal or issues to be the subject of the consultation;
 - b) Provide Ngā Mana Whenua or the relevant iwi/hapū with sufficient information and time to make informed comments and/or submissions in relation to any of the matters that are subject of the consultation;
 - c) Approach the consultation with an open mind and genuinely consider any views and/or concerns that Ngā Mana Whenua or the relevant iwi/hapū may have in relation to any of the matters that are subject to the consultation; and
 - d) Report back to Ngā Mana Whenua or the relevant iwi/hapū Governance Entity on any decision that is made.
- 23.2 Where Ngā Mana Whenua participates in consultation under this Relationship Agreement, Ngā Mana Whenua will provide to the Department information on the nature of the Ngā Mana Whenua interest and the views of Ngā Mana Whenua in relation to the proposal or issue upon which they are being consulted.

24 DEFINITIONS

- 24.1 In this Agreement:

Collective Redress Legislation means the Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Redress Act [2013].

Conservation means the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations. In this context 'historic resources' includes land that is part of the cultural heritage of New Zealand.

Conservation Legislation means the Conservation Act 1987 and the statutes in the First Schedule of the Act;

Crown has the meaning given to it in section 2(1) of the Public Finance Act 1989;

Cultural materials means plants, plant materials, and materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds for which the Department is responsible within the

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

Tāmaki Makaurau Region and which are important to iwi/hapū of Ngā Mana Whenua in maintaining and expressing their cultural values and practices;

Department means the Minister of Conservation, the Director-General and the Departmental managers to whom the Minister of Conservation's and the Director-General's decision-making powers can be delegated;

Effective date means the date that is 20 working days after the day on which the settlement comes into effect under section [x] of the Collective Redress Legislation

Iwi/hapū means those iwi/hapū that comprise Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau as defined in the Collective Redress Legislation;

Kaitiaki means mana whenua guardian in accordance with tikanga Māori;

Ngā Mana Whenua or Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau has the meaning set out in Tāmaki Makaurau Collective Deed and Collective Redress Legislation and unless the context requires otherwise will be represented by the Tūpuna Tāonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust;

Tāmaki Makaurau Region has the meaning as indicated in the map in Attachment A;

Tikapa Moana means those parts of the Hauraki Gulf within the Tāmaki Makaurau Region;

Statutory Authorisations means an authorisation granted under the Conservation Legislation including a Concession granted under Part 3B of the Conservation Act 1987;

Statutory Planning document includes any relevant Conservation Management Strategy or Conservation Management Plan under the Conservation Act 1987;

Tikanga Māori includes Māori customary values and practices.

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

SIGNED on [DATE]

SIGNED for and on behalf of
the iwi/hapū of Nga Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau

For and on behalf of Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Ngāti Maru:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Ngāti Pāoa:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Ngāti Tamaoho:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Ngāti Tamaterā:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

For and on behalf of Ngāti Te Ata:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Ngāti Whanaunga:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Ngāti Whātua o Kaipara:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Ngāti Whātua Ōrākei:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Te Ākitai Waiohua

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Te Kawerau ā Maki:

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

DOCUMENTS

2: CONSERVATION RELATIONSHIP AGREEMENT

For and on behalf of Te Patukirikiri

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

For and on behalf of Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Whātua

[Mandated representative name]

[Mandated representative name]

SIGNED by the Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust Limited as the trustee of the Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust

[Trustee names]

SIGNED for and on behalf of HER MAJESTY THE QUEEN in right of New Zealand by the Minister of Conservation:

_____ []

SIGNED for and on behalf of The Department of Conservation _____

[]

Index

- accommodation, 62, 63, 89, 94, 96–97, 103–105, 111, 166, 167
private, 76, 91, 99, 108, 111, 112, 127, 141–42, 150
- active management, 20, 32–33, 58, 67, 70, 73, 78, 91, 100, 115, 153, 167
- Administration Bay, 104, 107, 108
- adverse effects, 11, 16, 22, 30, 44, 51, 53, 57, 58, 63, 67, 69, 85, 90, 94, 99, 103, 104, 106, 107, 115, 126–28, 131–36, 138–43, 145–47, 157
- advocacy, 16, 17, 30, 43, 51, 53, 61, 69, 71, 80, 85, 86, 126, 139, 153, 155
community, 83, 84, 124
- agriculture, 37, 123
- aircraft, 61, 77, 84, 108, 112, 126, 135–39, 146, 147, 153, 164
landings, 58, 63, 67, 69, 77, 78, 86, 91, 94, 99, 107, 108, 115, 120–21, 128, 135–39
- animal pests, 16, 61, 63, 64, 67, 69, 73, 88–89, 93, 102, 136
control of, 20, 28, 68, 74, 77, 85, 90, 94, 105, 107, 135, 155
See also pest control; predators; wild animals
- Aotea Conservation Park, 71, 74, 78
- Aotea Track, 34, 74, 75, 76, 78
- aquaculture, 75, 124, 126
- archaeological sites, 11, 21, 56, 65, 68, 73, 75, 76, 81, 84, 90, 93, 95, 101, 102, 105, 107, 114, 153, 159, 160
See also landscapes
- Argentine ants, 73, 76, 136
- Atuanui/Mt Auckland, 28, 81, 82
- Auckland City, 17, 21, 22, 39, 82, 104, 114, 115, 118
- Auckland Conservation Board, 8, 55, 61, 64, 106, 109, 113, 115, 116, 141, 151
- Auckland Council, 10, 16, 17, 21, 27, 34, 41, 50, 71, 73, 82, 114, 117, 125, 135, 149
working with, 28–30, 34–37, 43, 50, 51, 52, 54, 56–58, 76, 77, 79, 86, 91, 92, 106, 113, 115, 120, 149
- Auckland Transport, 34, 35
- Auckland Visitor Plan, 21, 39
- Auckland Volcanic Field, 27, 28, 30, 32, 33, 101, 105, 114–15
- Australia, 53, 65, 89
- awareness raising, 15, 19–21, 36–38, 43, 48, 51, 53, 61, 62, 74, 83, 85, 97, 103, 106, 107, 124, 132, 143
campaigns, 68, 135, 149
- baches, 17, 32, 89, 93, 101–104, 107, 141
- backcountry destinations, 10, 35, 63, 74, 93, 136, 154
- barracks, 104, 107, 108, 118
- bats. *See* pekapeka/bats
- Beehive (Taungamaro), 19, 20
- biking, 82
See also mountain biking
- biodiversity, 15–17, 26, 41, 154
addressing, 9, 14, 17, 28, 37, 52, 53, 71, 80, 95, 97, 105, 156, 164
threats to, 16, 18, 50, 51, 73
- biosecurity, 16, 20, 29, 37, 53, 61–62, 64, 67, 69, 70, 73, 74, 94, 96, 98, 130, 133, 154
- Biosecurity Act 1993, 10, 154
- birds, 14, 62, 72, 75, 116, 122–28
game, 37, 123, 159
indigenous, 14, 27, 60, 93, 97, 110, 122, 126
island, 19, 26, 60, 65, 75, 96, 102, 110
migratory, 14, 17, 27, 51, 53, 80, 123, 125, 128
sea, 26, 27, 29, 41, 50, 56, 65, 66, 68, 93, 113, 125
shore, 20, 27, 31, 80, 83–86, 102, 123–25, 131
threatened and at risk, 16, 26, 27, 28, 31, 52, 72, 80, 95, 96, 102, 122, 125
wading, 17, 27, 51, 80, 83, 122, 123, 125, 126
See also dotterels; kiwi; nesting sites; pāteke/brown teal; penguins; tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern
- boating, 17, 48, 57, 74, 82, 89, 104, 107, 110–11
- Boulder Bay, 103–105, 107, 109
- Bream Tail, 23, 83
- breeding sites, 17, 51, 53, 65, 123, 127
- Brown, William, 114
- Browns Island (Motukorea), 19, 20, 24, 32, 114–15, 150
- Building Act 2004, 142, 154
- buildings, 21, 32, 41, 62, 75, 88–91, 95, 99, 102, 107, 108, 111, 112, 114, 118–21, 131, 140–42, 150, 154, 159, 160, 168
- bunkhouses, 61, 96–97
- Burgess Island (Pokohinu), 68–70, 138
- burial sites, 60, 110
- bus tours, 118, 121
- business, 14, 15, 17, 29, 36, 39–40, 84, 105
See also commercial activities
- bylaws, 11, 50, 58, 59, 85, 86, 130, 132n, 133–36, 139–40, 150, 154
- cafés, 89, 91, 107, 108, 117, 120
- Campbell, John Logan, 114
- camping, 69, 78–79, 82, 94, 112, 136, 158, 159
freedom, 124, 126, 158
sites, 35, 74, 76, 77, 91, 92, 93, 104, 107, 109, 111, 124
- Cape Rodney-Okakari Point, 18, 34, 49, 51, 55
- car parks, 56, 58, 118, 119, 121, 132, 138, 158
- cats, 60, 73, 75, 76, 124, 126
- chenier plain, 122–28
- Civil Aviation Authority, 135
- climate change, 13, 19, 48

- coastal defence, 17, 20–21, 68, 102, 105
 Historic Reserves, 32, 116–21
- coastal environment, 17–18, 26, 29, 41, 50, 53, 55–57, 68,
 72, 80, 84, 89, 93, 111, 114, 122–27, 132, 138–39
- coastline, 17, 52, 56, 61, 65, 72, 73, 80, 83, 89, 102, 110, 117
- co-governance, 44, 103
- co-management, 44, 45, 84
- commercial activities, 57–59, 61, 62, 76, 96, 98–99, 111,
 135, 143–48, 154
 operators of, 22, 48, 57, 97, 98, 103, 143
- community
 consultation with, 8, 10, 63, 70, 75, 106
 contribution of, 15, 19–21, 27, 28, 33, 36–38, 48, 53,
 73, 76, 85, 87, 89, 93, 95, 110, 119, 126
 groups/trusts, 19, 27, 42, 61, 62, 73, 89, 90, 103–105,
 107, 110, 111, 113, 130–31
 working with, 14, 15, 17, 22, 27, 29–31, 36, 41, 43, 54,
 76, 77, 79, 84, 91, 92, 120–22, 124, 143, 149
See also advocacy
- compliance, 50, 54, 67, 106, 135, 146
- cessionaires, 34, 39, 98, 104, 106–109, 111, 120, 121,
 123, 127, 149, 155
- cessions, 10, 64, 66–67, 75, 76–78, 85, 89, 104, 117,
 118, 123, 128, 130–31, 135, 141, 142n, 147, 151, 154, 155
 criteria for, 58, 61, 63, 67, 69, 77, 78, 86, 90–91, 98–99,
 106–107, 112, 120–21, 127, 130–31, 136–38, 146, 147
 limited, 61–62, 63, 76, 90–91, 96, 104, 106, 108, 112, 150
- conflicts, social, 35, 57, 58, 77, 91, 98, 104, 106, 132–35,
 139, 146
- congestion, 58, 96, 98
- conservation
 concept of, 13, 37, 155
 groups/trusts, 8, 22, 61, 83, 84, 93, 94, 95, 97, 98,
 101–102, 118–19, 124, 126, 127
 support for, 14, 15, 19, 21, 33, 36–39, 48, 75, 82, 97,
 100, 111, 161
- Conservation Act 1987, 7, 8, 11, 22, 41, 42, 45, 74, 129,
 130, 135, 139, 143–44, 147, 148n, 153–60, 163–67
- Conservation Boards, 60n, 155
See also Auckland Conservation Board
- Conservation General Policy 2005, 7, 9, 10, 44, 129,
 131, 141, 144, 146, 154–69
- conservation management plans, 7, 11, 23, 24, 42, 45,
 55, 60, 62, 101, 106, 108–109, 110, 112–13, 114, 115, 116,
 155, 164
- conservation management strategies, 7–11, 155, 156,
 164
- consultation, 8, 10, 24, 28, 60n, 62, 63, 66, 70, 75, 91, 94,
 106, 112, 115, 134, 141, 156
- contamination, 18, 51, 122, 124, 125
- Convention on Biological Diversity, 12, 28, 156, 164
- Convention on Wetlands of International
 Importance. *See* Ramsar Convention
- Cook Islands, 65
- Coromandel, 122
- Crown Minerals Act 1991, 8, 144, 162
- crustaceans, 52, 55, 80, 102
- cultural heritage, 14–15, 22, 24, 32–33, 35, 37, 39, 53, 66,
 74, 76, 84, 91, 97, 108, 116, 127, 130, 133, 134, 142n, 155,
 159, 160, 161, 166, 169
- cultural resources, 14, 24, 35
See also mahinga kai; wāhi tapu
- cultural sites, 32–33, 73, 111, 115, 124, 125, 130
See also landscapes
- customary use, 24, 146, 156, 162
- Davis, Ernest, 114
- Deeds of Settlement, 23, 44
- deer, 16, 73, 82, 147–48, 159, 169
- defence sites. *See* coastal defence
- destination management, 9, 156
- development, 15, 17, 36, 42, 44, 48, 50, 71, 80, 88, 123,
 143, 161
- Director-General of Conservation, 45, 143, 155
- disease, 16, 18, 61, 64, 154, 165
See also kauri dieback disease
- dogs, 20, 82, 84, 107, 118, 124, 126, 139–40, 157
- dotterels, 27, 51, 52, 72, 83, 110, 114, 123, 125
- dunes, 14, 17, 26, 27, 72, 76, 80, 82–85, 132
 lakes, 27, 80, 84, 85
- East Asian-Australasian Flyway Partnership, 123, 127,
 128
- ecological areas/districts, 71, 72, 74, 76, 80, 81, 86, 101,
 126, 143, 165
- ecological corridors, 30, 38
- ecological integrity, 61, 62, 101, 105, 124, 126, 157
- ecology, 13, 26, 41, 55, 57, 60, 124, 127, 154, 157, 163
 health of, 16, 18, 62–64, 66, 67, 73, 85, 91, 93, 107,
 127–28
See also restoration
- economy, 15, 21, 38, 145
 supporting, 22, 38, 42, 75, 76
- ecosystems, 26, 28, 37, 51, 52, 153, 157
 conserving, 14, 16–17, 29–30, 31, 41–42, 44, 51, 62, 64,
 67, 69, 76, 78, 86, 93, 107, 109, 125–27
 freshwater, 30, 44, 107, 143
 harm to, 44, 125, 165
 island, 16, 41–42, 62, 66–67, 101, 109
 marine, 14, 26, 48, 49, 52, 55–57
 services, 30, 122–26, 157

- wetland, 26, 124–28
See also priority ecosystem units; recovery
- education, 18, 37–38, 39, 48, 55, 57, 61, 66, 69, 95–97, 108, 124, 130, 133, 140, 143
 opportunities for, 38, 52, 53, 55, 80, 97, 111
 outdoor, 74, 76, 103–108
- eeling, 143–44
See also tuna/eels
- Electricity Act 1992, 8
- endemic species, 19, 26, 49–50, 65, 66, 68, 73, 76, 157
- engagement, 17, 20, 21, 36–39, 77, 85
- eradication, 14, 20, 41, 61, 64, 65, 66, 68, 73, 75, 76, 78, 81, 85, 102, 130, 154, 158
See also pest control
- erosion, 21, 56, 123, 139, 141
- estuaries, 17, 26, 27, 30, 50–53, 72, 76, 82, 122, 123, 154, 169
- Europeans
 history of, 73–74, 83, 90, 110, 116, 156
 settlements of, 19, 20, 65, 66, 93, 101, 117
- Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), 50, 53, 54
- extraction, resource, 73–74, 76, 135, 145
See also mining
- facilities, 11, 19, 21–22, 54, 56, 58, 61, 62, 63, 67, 74, 77, 84, 93–94, 95–97, 102, 105, 115, 118, 127, 158
 developing, 56, 75, 97, 103, 107, 108, 110, 111, 121, 127, 134, 149
 for less mobile, 103, 106
 related, 141–42, 167
 role of, 34, 57, 76, 97, 111, 112, 120
- fairy tern. *See* tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern
- families, 57, 103, 111
- farming, 14, 15, 19, 56, 72, 73, 75, 83, 93, 95, 101–102, 104–106, 108, 110, 114, 133, 147, 148, 150
- fencing, 82, 84, 107, 109, 123, 127, 148
- ferries, 93, 96, 98, 99, 103, 105, 111, 119, 135
 operators of, 22, 35, 107
- filming, 62, 63, 67, 69, 86, 118, 130, 135, 138, 146
- fire, 68, 81, 82, 114, 115, 132, 133, 142, 149
- Firth of Thames/Tīkapa Moana, 17, 18, 26–28, 122–28
- fish, 16, 26, 30, 80–81, 102, 123, 158
 freshwater, 46, 159
 marine, 50, 51–52, 53, 55
 sports, 37, 144, 155, 158, 167
- fish and game councils, 37, 85, 144, 158
- fisheries, 41, 44, 46, 144, 158, 165, 166
- Fisheries Act 1996, 41, 81, 143, 158, 162
- fishers, 29, 48, 74, 158
- fishing, 18, 48, 50, 56, 65, 68, 69, 74, 75, 81, 82, 124, 126, 135, 144, 162
- flood control, 123–24, 168
- flora
 indigenous, 16, 51, 83, 89, 95, 101, 114, 116, 119, 123, 139
 island, 19, 60, 65, 73, 81, 89, 101, 110
 threatened and at risk, 16, 27, 31, 65, 68, 73, 80, 81, 83, 85, 94, 95, 101, 110, 114, 123
See also forest; plant pests; weeds
- foreshore, 30, 48, 68, 69, 70, 115, 117, 121, 124, 126, 139, 140, 158
- forest
 coastal, 50, 56, 81, 93, 95
 exotic, 80, 90, 91, 92, 110
 health of, 75, 84, 97, 105
 indigenous, 16, 27, 53, 60, 72, 81, 89, 90, 92, 93, 101, 116
 replanted, 92, 94, 95, 102, 103, 105, 109, 110, 111
See also kauri; pine; pōhutukawa
- Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977, 149
- forestry, 80
- Fort Takapuna, 21, 32, 35, 116–17
- four-wheel driving, 82, 104, 132, 133, 158
- Freedom Camping Act 2011, 8, 158
- freshwater fisheries management plan, 7, 45
- frogs, 27, 72
- funding, 37, 45, 61, 95, 102, 103, 131
- Game Animal Council, 37, 148
 Act 2013, 8, 147, 148, 159
- game animals, 148, 159
See also birds; deer; pigs; wild animals
- gardening, 20, 60, 68, 75, 110, 118
- Gateway destinations, 10, 14, 34–36, 76, 90, 103–104, 105, 111, 159
- geology, 16, 19, 29, 49, 65, 66, 116, 120, 127, 163, 165
See also Auckland Volcanic Field; landforms; landscapes
- Germans, 110, 117
- Goat Island Bay, 14, 58, 130
See also Te Hāwere-a-Maki/Goat Island
- goats, 16, 65, 68, 73, 147, 169
- grazing, 68, 75, 77, 89, 102, 108, 115, 122, 123, 126, 127, 128, 130, 141, 150
- Great Barrier Island (Aotea Island), 11, 14, 16, 19, 20, 22, 26, 32, 34, 35, 39, 71–79, 130, 132, 133, 138, 139, 150
- Grey, George, 20, 32, 88–90
- guiding, 61–62, 66, 67, 75, 86, 95–99, 104–106, 108, 112, 117–120, 130, 134
- habitat loss/decline, 16, 19, 30, 36, 44, 50, 51, 77, 80, 83, 122, 123, 124, 143, 144, 167

- harbours, 14, 17, 21, 27, 30, 34, 66, 72, 139
 Hauraki District Council, 122, 124
 Hauraki Gulf/Tikapa Moana, 11, 14, 18, 21, 26, 41, 52,
 72, 76, 104, 125, 132, 143
 inner, 22, 24, 27, 50, 53, 56, 101, 106, 107, 110, 111, 114,
 115, 122
 islands of, 34, 35, 60, 93, 94, 130, 132, 135, 136, 139
 outer, 55, 56
 Hauraki Gulf Forum, 18, 22, 29, 42, 125, 126, 127, 135
 Hauraki Gulf Marine Park, 14, 16, 17, 22, 28, 36, 37, 39,
 41-43, 68, 76, 103, 116, 117, 118, 120, 122, 125
 Act 2000, 7, 17, 42, 43, 102, 156
 Hauraki Plains, 44, 122, 124, 125, 126
 Hauraki Rail Trail, 124
 Hauturu. *See* Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island
 helicopters, 69, 75
 landings, 68, 74, 112, 135-36, 137
 heli-fishing, 74, 77, 136
 Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga, 32-33, 37, 88,
 90, 95, 98
 Act 2014, 8, 11, 153, 160, 169
 High Court, 102
 Hirakamatā-Kaitoke Swamp, 71, 74
 Hirakimatā (Mount Hobson), 72, 73, 74
 historic heritage, 14-15, 20-21, 22, 24, 32-33, 35, 37, 53,
 66, 74, 76, 84-85, 88, 97, 108, 111, 112, 116, 118, 127,
 130, 133, 134, 155, 159, 160, 161, 166, 167
 historic resources, 7, 10, 11, 14, 35, 41, 46, 74, 105, 155,
 156, 160, 166, 168
 historic sites, 17, 19, 20-21, 32-33, 66, 67, 68, 70, 73-74,
 78, 88-92, 100, 101-102, 105, 111, 115, 130, 153, 161
 icons, 10, 32, 34
 history, 20-21, 65, 73-74, 76, 81-82, 88, 91, 94, 104, 110,
 116-18, 120, 156
 Hobbs Beach, 96, 98
 Home Bay, 93, 94, 101, 103, 104, 105, 106, 108
 horse riding, 78, 82, 84, 86, 140
 horses, 108, 132, 140-41
 hot springs, 22, 74
 Hoteo River, 16, 81, 82
 human activities, 28, 30, 35, 53, 54, 65, 122, 153
 See also development; land use; monitoring
 hunters, 149, 158
 hunting, 37, 82, 137, 139, 144, 147-48
 Hunua Ranges, 16, 27, 28, 30, 31, 44, 122, 144
 huts, 22, 74, 76, 93, 138, 140, 155, 158

 Icon destinations, 10, 14, 34-36, 57, 97, 103, 105, 120, 160
 iconic species, 10, 29
 Important Bird Area programme, 28

 indigenous species, 24, 44, 52, 62, 96, 105, 165
 conservation of, 14, 41, 54, 57, 64, 67, 74, 78, 93, 110,
 111, 139, 143, 160
 See also birds; flora, forest
 infrastructure, 58, 67, 95, 96, 103, 105, 107, 111, 112,
 149, 168
 insects, 19, 60, 68, 93
 See also Argentine ants
 Institute of Geological and Nuclear Sciences, 66
 integrated management, 7, 8, 9, 11, 24, 28, 29, 30, 41,
 42, 45, 47, 54, 57, 62, 76, 117, 120, 122, 125, 129, 155,
 156, 160, 165
 groups, 83, 85
 international agreements, 12, 123, 156
 International Council on Monuments and Sites
 (ICOMOS) Charter, 33, 161
 interpretation, 32, 33, 34, 48, 52, 53, 57, 66, 69, 70, 75,
 76, 77, 90, 91, 94, 95-97, 100, 103, 113, 115, 119, 120,
 124, 126, 143, 158, 161
 centres, 104, 105, 108, 118
 opportunities for, 50, 74, 89, 111, 117, 118
 intertidal environments, 17, 18, 27, 30, 49-53, 58, 80,
 83, 86, 122-23, 125, 126, 127, 139
 introduced species, 16, 20, 50, 62, 66, 68, 72, 75, 88-89,
 122, 123, 126, 136, 155
 invertebrates, 30, 51, 93, 95
 islands, 16, 17, 19-20, 23, 29, 41, 97, 136
 See also birds; ecosystems; flora; Hauraki Gulf/
 Tikapa Moana; restoration
 Islington Bay, 101, 102, 103-104, 106
 iwi, 10, 15, 22-24, 45, 46, 151
 significant areas to, 44, 46, 56, 60, 65, 93, 123, 124
 working with, 23-24, 28, 32, 36, 42, 46, 63, 124-27, 149
 iwi authorities, 8

 Kaipara Harbour, 17, 18, 27, 28, 30, 80-87, 138, 144
 kaitiakitanga, 22, 24, 44, 48, 53, 124, 161
 Kaitoke, 72, 73
 See also Hirakamatā-Kaitoke Swamp
 katipō, 83
 kauri, 14, 26, 27, 72, 73, 74
 dams, 22, 74
 gum, 83
 logging, 60, 74, 82
 kauri dieback disease, 16, 28-29, 30, 61, 64, 149
 Joint Agency Response, 29
 Kawau Island, 11, 19, 20, 32, 34, 39, 88-92, 130, 133, 135
 Kawerau a Maki, 95
 kayaking, 74, 82, 93, 94, 103-105, 107, 108, 114
 Kermadec Islands, 14, 16, 19, 20, 26-28, 30, 32, 65-67
 Marine Reserve, 14, 18, 28, 30, 48, 49-50, 53, 54, 67

- kiwi, 20, 88, 93, 95, 96, 102, 110
 kōkako, 14, 27, 72, 76, 78, 95, 97
- Lake Rototoa, 80–81, 82, 86, 144
- land
 Crown, 24, 60, 75, 95, 101, 110, 114, 139, 140, 148n, 149
 legal status of, 30, 56, 68–70, 71, 74, 78, 86, 93, 94, 96,
 98, 102, 114, 117, 118, 121, 123, 125, 127, 128, 129, 165
 management, 56, 86, 150
 private, 37, 41, 71, 104, 122, 135, 136
- land use
 activities, 15, 122, 123–24, 135
 consents, 11, 130
- landforms, 29, 115, 122, 163, 167
- landowners, 15, 36, 89, 134
 working with, 16, 29, 30, 35, 56–58, 73, 77, 124, 126, 149
- landscapes, 15, 17, 19, 27, 41, 62, 71, 72, 74, 76, 77, 81, 89,
 94, 101–104, 108, 110, 111, 115, 116, 120, 127, 157, 163,
 167
 archaeological, 19, 20, 32
 cultural, 28, 32, 62, 82, 91, 103, 105, 107, 120
 historic, 68, 88, 91, 105, 114
 protecting, 29, 80, 84, 107, 119
- law enforcement, 48, 50, 54, 80, 134
- Leigh Marine Laboratory, 56
- Leigh Recreation Reserve, 55, 56
- Leigh Reserves Complex (Wakatūwhenua), 55–59
 management plan, 7, 55, 58, 59
- lighthouses, 32, 68, 69, 70, 95–100
- Little Barrier Island. *See* Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little
 Barrier Island
- livestock, 75, 77, 102, 108, 114, 122, 127, 141
- lizards, 16, 19, 26, 60, 68, 72, 83, 93, 110, 123
- local government, 8, 10, 15, 41, 42, 142
 working with, 14, 15, 17, 29, 30, 36, 84–86, 125–27,
 133, 139–40
- local treasure destination, 10, 35, 111, 119, 120, 161
- Long Bay-Okura Marine Reserve, 18, 49, 50, 53, 54, 139
- Long Bay Regional Park, 50, 53, 54
- Macauley Island, 65–67
- mahinga kai, 19, 24
- Maki, 56
- mana, 44, 56, 162
- mana whenua, 103
- Mana Whakahaere, 45
- mānawa/mangroves, 50, 51, 81, 122, 123, 125
- Mangawhai, 23, 28, 81, 83, 85, 86
- Mansion House, 20, 88–92
- Manukapua, 19, 23, 85
- Manukau Harbour, 17, 18, 27, 28, 30
- Māori, 15, 22, 38, 156, 168, 169
 history, 65, 68, 111, 116, 117, 118, 120, 124
 land, 41, 71
 settlements, 17, 20, 21, 27, 32, 52, 56, 73, 75, 81, 93,
 95, 101, 105, 110, 114, 117, 118, 120
 tradition, 48, 93, 95, 110, 162
 See also iwi; tangata whenua; Treaty of Waitangi
- marine activities, 57–59, 122, 126
- Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011,
 136
- marine environments, 17–18, 26, 28, 29, 41–42, 48–59,
 65, 122–25, 154, 162
- marine mammals, 14, 18, 24, 26, 29, 41, 50, 65, 81, 123,
 143, 150, 162
 Protection Act 1978, 7, 143, 156, 162
 See also Māui dolphin; whales
- marine protected areas, 14, 18, 29, 31, 162
- marine reserves, 18, 29, 41, 48–59, 135, 139, 144, 162
- Marine Reserves Act 1971, 7, 155, 156, 162
- Maritime New Zealand, 68, 69, 70, 95, 97, 98
- Marutūahu, 88
- mātaitai reserve, 41, 162
- mātauranga Māori, 103, 162
- Māui dolphin, 14, 18, 27, 31, 81, 84
 Threat Management Plan, 29, 81, 86
- Maungauika (North Head), 21, 23, 116
- Maungauika/North Head Historic Reserve, 32, 34,
 116–21, 130, 136
 management plan, 7, 116
- mauri, 44, 56, 125, 162
- McKenzie Bay, 101, 104, 105, 107, 109
- Meteorological Service, 65, 66, 88
- Meyer Islands, 65
- migratory routes, 26, 28, 30, 123, 125
- milestones, 9, 31, 33, 35–36, 38, 40, 47, 54, 59, 64, 70,
 78–79, 86–87, 91–92, 94, 100, 108–109, 112–13, 115,
 121, 128, 150, 162
- mining, 20, 32, 74, 123, 124, 144–45, 162
 copper, 20, 32, 88–90
 seabed, 18, 81
- Minister of Conservation, 8, 11, 24, 42, 45, 60n, 71, 102,
 107, 129, 135, 144, 147–49, 154, 155, 159
- Minister of Energy and Resources, 144
- Minister of Māori Affairs, 42
- Minister of Primary Industries, 42
- Ministry for Culture and Heritage, 33
- Ministry for Primary Industries, 28, 29, 30, 86, 125–27,
 143, 144, 149
- Miranda, 122–28, 130, 140, 150
- Mokohinau Islands, 14, 19, 20, 27, 28, 68–70

- monitoring, 19, 20, 23, 48, 53, 54, 55, 58, 59, 62, 66, 68, 70, 72, 125, 138, 149, 151, 155, 163
 human activities, 50, 74, 78–79, 104, 106–107, 130, 131, 133–35, 141, 143, 145
 species, 80, 83, 84
 visitors, 22, 35, 58, 59, 63–64, 99–100
- Motu Manawa-Pollen Island, 18, 48, 49, 50, 51, 53, 54
 Scientific Reserve, 51, 54
- Motuihe/Te Motu-a-Ihenga, 14, 19, 20, 22, 24, 27, 34, 39, 102, 110–13, 117, 135, 138
- Motuora Island, 19, 20, 27, 34, 93–94
- Moturemu, 19, 20, 81
- Motutapu Island, 14, 19, 20, 22, 24, 32, 34, 39, 101–109, 110, 111, 133, 135, 150
- mountain biking, 74, 76, 77, 79, 82, 90, 91, 103, 104, 106–109, 133–34, 150, 158, 163, 168
- Mt Heale, 22, 74
- Muriwai, 28, 81, 82, 85, 86, 140
- museums, 102, 118
- mustelids, 20, 26, 73, 88, 93
- National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA), 51
- National Parks Act 1980, 41, 135, 153–56, 164
- National Rural Fire Authority, 149
- natural character, 17, 71, 80, 84, 125, 126, 163, 167
- natural heritage, 9, 10, 14, 15, 22, 26–31, 39, 74, 85, 130, 133, 134, 163, 166, 169
- natural processes, 21, 48, 57, 85, 157, 163
- natural quiet, 74, 77, 97, 111, 115, 135, 136, 138, 147, 163
- natural resources, 22, 24, 35, 36, 37, 41, 46, 75, 143, 155, 156, 160, 163, 166, 168
- naval sites, 110, 112, 117, 118
- nesting sites, 52, 73, 84, 85, 132, 140
- New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy, 28
- New Zealand Conservation Authority, 8, 60n, 151, 155
- New Zealand Customs, 48, 139
- New Zealand Defence Force, 48, 65, 66, 82, 86, 117, 135, 163
- New Zealand Fire Authority, 149
- New Zealand Land Wars, 20
- New Zealand Police, 37, 133, 139
- New Zealand Threat Classification System, 10, 153, 168
- New Zealand Transport Agency, 37, 54
- Ngā Mana Whenua o Tāmaki Makaurau, 23–24, 27, 95, 101, 103, 106, 109, 110, 112, 114, 115, 116
 Collective Redress Act 2014, 11, 23–24, 95, 101, 103, 110, 114, 116
- Ngāti Kuri, 65
- Ngāti Manuhiri, 23, 52, 55, 56, 57, 60, 62–64, 69, 84, 85, 88, 91, 93, 94, 95
 Claims Settlement Act 2012, 11, 23, 55, 58, 60, 61, 85
- Ngāti Rehua, 60, 69, 72, 73, 75
- Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, 44–45
- Ngāti Wai, 60, 69, 75, 88
- Ngāti Whātua, 81, 83–86
 Settlement Acts, 23, 81n, 85
- non-governmental organisations, 22, 66, 67
- Norfolk Island, 65
- North Head. *See* Maungauika
- North Head Historic Reserve, 34, 116–21, 136
 management plan, 7, 116
- Northland CMS, 80
- nitrification, 16, 18, 122–26
- objectives, 7, 8, 9, 24–25, 26, 29–30, 32–33, 35, 37–39, 42–43, 46, 151
- Okahukura, 23, 28, 81, 82, 84–86
- Okiwi, 72, 77, 78, 150, 151
- Okura, 139, 140
 See also Long Bay-Okura Marine Reserve
- Omaha, 33, 52
- Ornithological Society of New Zealand, 83, 124
- Oruawharo River, 23, 80, 81
- outcomes, 8, 9, 47, 52–53, 57, 62, 66, 69, 76–77, 84–85, 90, 93–94, 97, 102, 104–105, 111, 115, 119–20, 125–26, 164
- overnight stays, 61–63, 76, 77, 89, 90, 93, 94, 96–97, 99, 103–106, 108, 111, 112
- pā, 52, 56, 60, 73, 93, 95, 96, 110, 114, 118, 124
- Pakiri, 28, 83, 139, 140
 See also Te Arai/Pakiri
- Papakanui, 17, 80, 81, 82, 85, 86, 136
- paragliding, 117, 124, 126, 135
- partnerships, 13, 14, 19, 22–25, 26, 27, 29, 30, 34, 35, 36–40, 43, 44, 46, 85, 97, 98, 106, 109, 113, 125, 133, 165
- pasture, 56, 75, 78, 102, 108, 116
- pāteke/brown teal, 16, 26, 72, 77, 88
- pekapeka/bats, 60, 88
- penguins, 52, 75, 96, 110
- permits, 61, 63, 66, 67, 68, 82, 96, 139, 140, 143, 144, 147–48, 154
- pest-free status, 19, 20, 26, 27, 29, 41, 60, 66, 68, 77, 93, 95, 102, 105, 107, 111, 114, 136
- pest control, 16, 30, 37, 41, 48, 51, 53, 73, 78, 79, 83, 97, 111, 154, 164
- petrels, 16, 26, 56, 60, 65, 68, 72, 73, 75, 81, 93

- pets, 139, 141, 148
 See also cats; dogs
 photography, 48, 146
 Piako River, 17, 18, 124
 pigs, 16, 73, 147, 148, 159, 169
 pine, 83, 85, 89, 92
 plant pests, 16, 61, 63, 64, 67, 69, 122, 139
 control of, 14, 27, 28, 62, 64, 65–67, 73, 77, 78, 85, 94,
 95, 100, 105, 107, 109, 114, 128
 See also pest control; weeds
 pōhutukawa, 27, 68, 72, 89, 93, 101, 114, 116
 policies, 7, 8, 9, 47, 53–54, 57–58, 63–64, 66–67, 69–70,
 77–78, 85–86, 90–91, 94, 98–99, 102, 106–108, 112,
 115, 120–21, 126–28, 129–50
 pollution, 18, 48, 124, 125, 126
 population, 13, 15, 36, 72, 75, 76, 89
 Port Fitzroy, 72, 150
 possums, 16, 20, 26, 73, 89, 102, 147, 169
 predators, 19, 55–56, 72, 75, 80, 83, 84, 126, 143
 priority ecosystem units, 10, 16, 29, 31, 44, 53, 54, 62,
 64, 67, 69, 70, 76, 77, 78, 87, 108, 151, 166
 prisoner-of-war camps, 110, 117
 Protected Objects Act 1975, 8
 public access, 14, 15, 21–22, 23, 48, 50, 51, 55, 57, 58, 90,
 102, 104–105, 110–12, 120, 124, 126, 135–40, 143–44,
 146, 147
 improving, 35, 37, 51, 53, 82, 86, 96, 98, 103, 115, 120,
 124, 144
 restricting, 11, 61–63, 66–67, 68–69, 82, 85, 97, 99,
 127–28, 130, 132, 136, 139–40
 See also research; vehicles, motor; watercraft;
 walking
 public benefit, 13, 14, 17, 37, 38, 53, 57, 84, 105, 120

 quarantine, 20, 110, 111, 149

 Rakitu Island (Arid Island), 19, 71, 72, 75, 77–79, 138,
 141, 150
 Ramsar Convention, 12, 41, 122, 127, 128, 131, 166
 rangers, 48, 96
 Rangitoto Island, 14, 19, 20, 21–22, 24, 27, 32, 34, 39,
 101–109, 110, 111, 120, 130, 133, 141
 Wharf, 101–102, 103, 105, 135
 Raoul Island (Rangitāhua), 20, 65–67, 138
 rats, 60, 65, 68, 73, 75, 76, 78, 81, 88
 recovery
 ecosystem, 17, 48, 62, 66
 species, 17, 18, 26, 29, 61, 65, 74, 76, 78, 79, 81, 84
 wild animal, 147

 recreation, 7, 9–10, 11, 17, 22, 39, 41, 48, 53, 61, 69, 74,
 76–78, 82, 84, 85, 89, 93, 111, 118, 122, 124, 126, 130,
 135, 136, 144, 147, 155, 156, 158, 161, 165, 166
 developing, 74, 76, 103, 105, 106, 108, 124, 127
 impact of, 74, 80, 83, 127, 132–34, 139–41
 participation in, 21–22, 34–36, 37, 48, 124, 156
 protecting, 30, 77, 112, 115, 131, 136, 139, 145, 146
 reefs, 50, 51, 52, 53, 55, 154
 coral, 26, 49, 50
 refuges, 15–17, 19, 20, 27, 28, 41, 48, 60, 76, 86
 See also sanctuaries
 regeneration, 27, 56, 68, 72, 77, 89, 94, 97, 101, 105, 108,
 111, 112
 regional authorities, 10, 15, 29, 131, 145, 148
 regional parks, 28, 34, 41, 50, 52, 53, 54, 82, 140
 regulations, 11, 24, 48, 50, 58, 59, 85, 86, 130, 132n,
 133–36, 143, 147, 148, 150, 154, 166
 Rehua, 75
 Reid Homestead, 101, 104, 105, 108
 remoteness, 18, 62, 66, 68, 69, 74, 76, 77, 82–84, 130, 135,
 136, 137, 146
 research, 10, 18, 21, 48, 49–50, 55, 56, 62, 81, 95–98, 100,
 112, 124, 125, 143, 146–149, 155
 access for, 61, 63, 66, 67, 69, 130
 supporting, 30, 51, 52–54, 57, 85, 97, 136, 138, 143
 researchers, 61, 63, 67, 96, 98
 Reserves Act 1977, 7, 11, 66, 74, 135, 136, 143, 153–56,
 164, 167
 Resolution Island, 60
 Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA), 10, 11, 41,
 130, 145, 156, 157, 168
 restoration, 29, 30, 31, 37, 44–46, 51, 76, 79, 85, 94, 103,
 105, 107, 113, 125, 133, 166, 167
 by community, 27, 28, 73, 83, 93–94, 95, 110, 118–19,
 125, 130
 cultural, 33, 91, 97, 103
 ecological, 19, 75, 77, 102, 167
 historic, 19, 33, 34, 37, 91, 97, 98, 100, 105, 118–19
 island, 14, 17, 22, 27, 36, 42, 73, 93, 95, 97, 102, 105,
 110–13
 roads, 51, 82, 89, 91, 102, 104–106, 108, 127, 128, 132–34,
 136, 141, 158, 167, 168
 rohe, 15, 23, 165, 167
 Rodney, 28, 56, 81
 Royal Forest and Bird Protection Society, 83
 Royal New Zealand Navy, 117
 Russia, 21, 116

 safety, 11, 57, 58, 65, 85, 89, 91, 104, 106, 120, 121, 130,
 132, 141, 145
 Samoa, 110

- sanctuaries, 19, 27, 41, 52, 53, 68, 71, 74, 81, 97, 144
See also refuges
- schools, 50, 57, 95, 96, 97, 103, 104, 112
- seabed, 41, 122, 154
- seamounts, 49, 65
- search and rescue, 37, 135, 139
- sedimentation, 15, 16, 18, 50, 51, 52, 122-26
- shellfish, 52, 124, 158, 159
- signage, 11, 96, 119, 133, 140, 158
- South Kaipara (Te Korowai-o-Te-Tonga)
 Air Weapons Range, 82, 86
 Peninsula, 16, 27, 80-81, 82
- special events, 89, 90, 91, 96, 98-99, 103-106, 111, 112, 117-19, 130
- spirituality, 19, 23, 41, 44, 48, 60n, 81, 88, 162
- sporting events, 118, 138
See also special events
- St Johns Redoubt, 20
- stakeholders, 8, 83, 86, 90
- State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986, 8
- Statement of Intent, 9, 10, 26, 151
- Stony Batter, 32, 35, 116, 118-21
- storms, 80, 83
- structures, 19, 21, 58, 60, 66, 89, 95, 98, 111, 118, 121, 124, 126, 127, 131, 141, 149, 159, 160, 167, 168
- Sunde site, 101, 107
- Sunny Bay, 89, 90, 91
- Tahuu, 83
- Tahuhunui, 56
- Tainui, 95, 114
See also Waikato-Tainui
- Takutairaroa Bay, 110-12
- Tangaroa, 15, 48
- tangata whenua, 15, 37, 60, 89, 162, 168
 consultation with, 8, 63, 70, 75, 91, 94, 106
 contribution of, 14, 15, 19, 21, 24, 33, 36, 53, 66, 85, 105
 relationship to areas, 19, 22, 32-33, 41, 42, 48, 73, 81, 93-94, 97, 111, 115, 119, 146, 161
 working with, 14, 15, 17, 22, 24-25, 29-31, 35, 39, 43, 53-54, 57, 76, 77, 84-86, 90, 93, 97, 109, 113, 120, 126, 127, 144
- taonga, 19, 25, 168
- tara-iti/New Zealand fairy tern, 16, 17, 27, 28, 80, 83, 84, 85, 87
- Tasman Sea, 80
- Tāwharanui Marine Reserve, 18, 49, 51-52, 53, 54
- Tawharanui Regional Park, 28, 52, 53, 54
- Te Arai, 28, 56
- Te Arai/Pakiri, 17, 80, 83-87, 144
- Te Araroa Trust, 35
- Te Aupōuri, 65
- Te Haupa (Saddle) Island, 19, 20
- Te Hauturu-o-Toi/Little Barrier Island, 14, 19, 20, 23, 27, 28, 32, 60-64, 72, 138, 149
- Te Hāwera-a-Maki/Goat Island, 19, 55, 56, 58
- Te Henga (Bethells Beach), 16, 34, 35, 141
- Te Kawerau a Maki, 23, 88
- Te Mana o Te Awa, 45
- Te Maraeroa, 60-63
- Te Matuku Bay (McLeods Bay), 52
- Te Matuku Marine Reserve, 18, 48, 49, 52, 53
- Te Oneone Rangatira, 81, 82, 85, 86
- Te Paparahi, 72, 74, 76-79
- Te Uri o Hau, 23, 83, 84, 85
 Settlement Act 2002, 23, 85
- telecommunications, 130, 136, 138, 139, 168
- threatened and at risk species, 16, 26, 27, 44, 66, 68, 69, 72, 73, 83, 96, 97, 136, 143, 151, 153, 168
 conservation, 10, 19, 28, 29-30, 31, 62, 63, 67, 75, 76, 78, 79, 94, 95, 102, 105, 113
See also birds; flora
- tikanga, 44, 156, 161, 168
- timber, 20, 32, 60, 73
- Tiritiri Matangi Island, 14, 19, 20, 22, 24, 32, 34, 39, 95-100, 130, 131
- Toi Te Huatahi, 93, 95
- toilets, 56, 112, 118, 158
- tourism, 7, 10, 11, 21-22, 34, 37, 39, 61, 63, 64, 75, 85, 126, 130, 145, 146, 150, 155, 165
 organisations, 22, 39, 119, 143
- Tonga, 49, 65
- tracks, 61, 74-77, 79, 82, 90, 91, 96-98, 100, 104-106, 108, 110, 117-20, 124, 127, 133-34, 138, 141, 149, 155, 158
- Traherne Island, 51, 54
- tramping, 61, 74, 76, 134, 154, 159
See also tracks; walking
- translocation, 19, 27, 63, 75, 83, 93, 95, 97, 98, 102, 103, 110, 168
- transport services, 35, 37, 50, 75, 112
See also ferries
- Treaty of Waitangi, 45, 46
 settlements, 7, 11, 14, 15, 19, 22-25, 27, 32, 84, 146, 151
- trophic cascade effect, 55-56
- tuahu, 83
- tuatara, 60, 61, 95, 110
- tuna/eels, 124, 143-44
- Tūpuna Taonga o Tāmaki Makaurau Trust (the Trustee), 23-24, 95, 101, 102, 110, 112-13, 114, 115, 116
- University of Auckland, 56-58

- urbanisation, 17, 36, 114
- urbanised environment, 15, 16, 17, 18, 41, 51
- utilities, 133, 136, 138, 139, 168
- vehicles, motorised, 58, 104, 108, 126, 132–33, 146, 163
 access for, 82, 85, 128, 132–33, 167
 off-road, 82–83, 84, 86, 124, 132
See also four-wheel driving; watercraft
- visitor centres, 56, 95, 96, 99, 107, 111, 112, 113, 118, 149, 158
- visitors, 21–22, 32, 42–43, 75, 82
 experience of, 19, 22, 33, 34–35, 39, 52–53, 57, 61–62, 69, 72, 76–77, 86, 89–91, 94, 96–99, 103–106, 108, 111, 117, 119–20, 126, 128, 130, 140, 143
 number of, 21, 34, 39, 50, 52, 54, 55–58, 61–63, 66–67, 68–69, 76, 82, 84, 92, 93, 94, 96–99, 104, 110, 113, 118, 119–20
 satisfaction of, 26, 35, 36, 58, 59
See also monitoring
- volcanic features, 14, 19, 49, 72, 117
See also Auckland Volcanic Field
- volunteers, 19, 61–63, 65, 66, 89, 95–98, 102–105
- von Luckner, Felix, 110
- wāhi tapu, 22, 24, 124, 159, 168, 169
- Waiheke Island, 19, 41, 116, 119, 120, 132
- Waihou River, 18, 124
- Waihunga Moirs Hill, 133, 136
- Waikato, 17, 29, 30
- Waikato Regional Council, 10, 28, 30, 122, 125, 128, 149
- Waikato-Tainui, 44–46
 Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, 7, 44, 45
- Waikato River—Te Awa o Waikato, 44–46
 Iwi, 46
 management plan, 7, 45
- Waikato River Authority, 44–45, 46
- Wairahi Forest, 71, 74
- Wairoa River, 16, 52
- Waitakere Ranges, 16, 27, 31
- Waitemata Harbour, 17, 18, 26, 51, 118
- waka, 52, 56, 65, 83, 95, 102, 114, 124
- Wakatūwhenua, 55, 56
See also Leigh Reserves Complex
- walking, 34–35, 56, 57, 74, 76, 82, 84, 89, 90, 93, 103, 106, 111, 115, 117–20, 124, 154
 access, 53, 74, 112, 126, 127
 guided, 62, 86, 95–99, 120
 multi-day, 22, 74, 75, 76, 106, 108, 109
See also tracks; tramping
- Walking Access Act 2008, 8
- Walking Access Commission, 35, 37
- wallabies, 89–92, 102, 169
- water
 quality, 15, 16, 18, 30, 48, 50, 57, 124
 supply, 82, 85
- water sports, 48, 52, 53, 55, 57, 69, 82, 84, 105
See also boating; kayaking
- watercraft, 58, 61, 62, 63, 67, 70, 82, 96, 98, 135
 access by, 22, 50, 53, 66, 68, 69, 74, 76, 77, 89, 93, 94, 96, 103, 105, 110, 114, 115, 135
 graveyards for, 19, 74, 82, 102, 114
See also ferries
- weeds, 68
 control of, 19, 20, 123, 126, 135, 141, 155
- West Coast North Island Marine Mammal Sanctuary, 27, 81
- wētā, 60, 93
- wetlands, 14, 16, 30, 37, 52, 53, 72, 73, 76, 77, 80, 81, 102, 122–28, 169
 freshwater, 16, 30, 44, 53, 81, 107
 of international importance, 41, 122, 127, 131
See also ecosystems; Firth of Thames/Tikapa Moana
- Whakarua Moutere (North East Islands), 28, 30
- whales, 18, 26, 29, 31, 50, 123, 162
See also marine mammals
- whaling, 20, 32, 65, 74
- Whangaparapara, 74, 76
- Whangapoua, 72
- Wharf (Wai-hao-Rangatahi) Bay, 110–12
- wharves, 67, 93, 96, 112, 135, 150, 158
- whenua rāhui, 23, 60
- Wild Animal Control Act 1977, 7, 147–48, 156, 164, 169
- wild animals, 16, 30, 147–48, 169
See also deer; goats; pigs; possums
- Wildlife Act 1953, 7, 155, 156, 159, 164, 169
- wildlife viewing, 61, 62, 75, 82, 84, 86, 97
- Woodhill Forest, 80, 82, 133, 147
- World Heritage Areas, 14, 28, 30, 32, 33, 65, 169
- World War I, 110, 111, 117
- World War II, 21, 68, 102, 110, 111, 117, 118
- young people, 36, 38
- zoning, 74, 76, 77, 105, 106, 131, 133, 136–39, 145, 146

